VISIT…

Tribology in Practice Series

Lubrication and Lubricant Selection

A Practical Guide

Third Edition

by
A R Lansdown

Series Editors: M J Neale, T A Polak and M Priest

Professional
Engineering
Publishing

Professional Engineering Publishing Limited
London and Bury St Edmunds, UK

First published 2004

This publication is copyright under the Berne Convention and the International Copyright Convention. All rights reserved. Apart from any fair dealing for the purpose of private study, research, criticism, or review, as permitted under the Copyright Designs and Patents Act 1988, no part may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, electrical, chemical, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior permission of the copyright owners. Unlicensed multiple copying of this publication is illegal. Inquiries should be addressed to: The Publishing Editor, Professional Engineering Publishing Limited, Northgate Avenue, Bury St Edmunds, Suffolk, IP32 6BW, UK.

© A R Lansdown

ISBN 1 86058 408 X

A CIP catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library.

The publishers are not responsible for any statement made in this publication. Data, discussion, and conclusions developed by the author are for information only and are not intended for use without independent substantiating investigation on the part of the potential users. Opinions expressed are those of the author and are not necessarily those of the Institution of Mechanical Engineers or its publishers.

About the Author

Dr A R Lansdown trained originally as a chemist, and received his first degree at University College, Cardiff, and his doctorate at Cambridge, UK. From Cambridge he went to Canada as a National Research Council Post-Doctorate Fellow.

In 1956 he joined the Production Research and Technical Service Laboratory of Imperial Oil Limited in Calgary. Here he became involved for the first time in the application of chemistry to various aspects of engineering, especially the flow of fluids through the rock formations of petroleum reservoirs.

In 1961 he returned to Britain to join the Ministry of Aviation, with responsibilities for aircraft lubricants as well as hydraulic fluids and fuels. Like many other lubricant technologists at that time, he soon realized that the purely chemical aspects of lubricant formulation and behaviour could not be divorced from the engineering aspects of lubrication, the realization which was soon afterwards to lead to the concept of tribology as a unifying discipline.

His period in the Ministry of Aviation coincided with the intensive search for high-temperature lubricants and other products for use in supersonic aircraft, and he became particularly interested in synthetic and solid lubricants.

In 1968 he was appointed Manager, and subsequently Director, of the newly formed Swansea Tribology Centre, and retained this post until his retirement in 1988. In addition to the management of the Centre, he also carried out a wide variety of consultancy projects, including a number of plant failure investigations, and these further involved him in analysing the engineering aspects of the failures.

He took an active part in the activities of the Institute of Petroleum and the Tribology Group of the Institution of Mechanical Engineers. He was a member of the Council of the Institute of Petroleum from 1984 to 1990. He was awarded the Tribology Silver Medal in 1986 and became a Fellow of the Institution of Mechanical Engineers in 1993.

Dr Lansdown has widely published in the fields of lubrication and tribology, his book *High Temperature Lubrication* (Mechanical Engineering Publications Limited, 1994) proving to be highly successful.

Since his retirement from the Swansea Tribology Centre he has continued to work as an independent consultant.

Titles from *Tribology in Practice* Series (ISSN 1470-9147)

Total Tribology – Towards an Integrated Approach	Edited by I Sherrington	1 86058 393 8
Tribology – Lubrication, Friction, and Wear	Edited by I V Kragelsky and V V Alisin	1 86058 288 5
Guide to Wear Problems and Testing for Industry	M J Neale and M Gee	1 86058 287 7
Rolling Contacts	T A Stolarski and S Tobe	1 86058 296 6
Handbook of Surface Treatments and Coatings	M Cartier	1 86058 375 X

Other related titles of interest

History of Tribology	D Dowson	1 86058 070 X
Gearing, Transmissions, and Mechanical Systems	Edited by D Su	1 86058 260 5
Lubricants in Operation	U Möller and U Boor	0 85298 830 3
Introductory Guide to Industrial Tribology	J D Summers Smith	0 85298 896 6
High Temperature Lubrication	A R Lansdown	0 85298 897 4
Journal of Engineering Tribology	Part J of the Proceedings of the IMechE	ISSN 1350/6501

For the full range of titles published by Professional Engineering Publishing contact:
Marketing Department
Professional Engineering Publishing Limited
Northgate Avenue, Bury St Edmunds
Suffolk, IP32 6BW
UK
Tel:+44 (0)1284 763277 Fax:+44 (0)1284 718692
e-mail:marketing@pepublishing.com Website:www.pepublishing.com

Contents

Preface to Third Edition xi
Series Editors' Foreword xiii

Chapter 1 Basic Principles of Lubrication 1
1.1 Meaning of lubrication 1
1.2 Friction 2
1.3 Liquid lubrication 4
1.4 Hydrodynamic lubrication 6
1.5 Boundary lubrication 9
1.6 Externally pressurised lubrication 12
1.7 Dry or solid lubrication 13
1.8 Wear 13
1.9 Cooling 14
1.10 Corrosion prevention 14
1.11 Summary 15

Chapter 2 Choice of Lubricant Type 17
2.1 Whether to lubricate or not 17
2.2 The problem of lubricant selection 18
2.3 Basic classes of lubricant 20
2.4 Choosing the lubricant class 22
2.5 Lubricant choice for particular types of component 25
2.6 Lubrication of complex machines 28

Chapter 3 Lubricating Oils 31
3.1 The important properties of oils 31
3.2 Mineral oils 32
3.3 Viscosity 35
3.4 Boundary lubrication 39
3.5 Oil deterioration 41
3.6 Contamination 43
3.7 Compatibility 46
3.8 Corrosion 46
3.9 Synthetic and natural oils and emulsions 47
Appendix – Viscosity Units 55

Chapter 4 Selection of Lubricating Oil 59
4.1 The selection process 59
4.2 Choosing the correct oil viscosity 59
4.3 Boundary lubrication requirements 62
4.4 Other additives 65
4.5 Selection of base oil 66

4.6 Automotive engine oils 70
4.7 Vehicle transmission lubricants 76
4.8 Metalworking lubricants 77
4.9 Process fluids as lubricants 79
4.10 Rationalization of lubricating oils 80
4.11 Summary 82

Chapter 5 Oil Supply Systems 83
5.1 Advantages of oil supply systems 83
5.2 Total loss systems 84
5.3 Ring, disc and splash lubrication 89
5.4 Oil mist or fog systems 91
5.5 Oil circulation systems 93
5.6 Oil changing problems 96
5.7 Selection of the appropriate system 98

Chapter 6 Oil Changing and Oil Conservation 99
6.1 Oil changing 99
6.2 Oil resources and conservation 101
6.3 Oil deterioration in use 103
6.4 Establishing the oil change period 108
6.5 Changing the type of oil 109
6.6 Carrying out the oil change 113
6.7 Handling the old oil 117
6.8 Disposing of emulsions and water-contaminated oils 119
6.9 Laundering 121
6.10 Re-processing for fuel use 123
6.11 Re-refining 125

Chapter 7 Greases and Anti-seizes 127
7.1 The nature of greases 127
7.2 Composition of greases 127
7.3 Grease manufacture 131
7.4 Mechanism of action of greases 132
7.5 Properties of greases 133
7.6 Advantages and disadvantages of grease 141
7.7 Selection and applications of greases 143
7.8 Methods of applying greases 150
7.9 Anti-seize and anti-scuffing compounds 151

Chapter 8 Dry Bearings and Solid Lubrication 153
8.1 Mechanism of solid lubrication 153
8.2 Advantages and disadvantages of solid lubricants 156
8.3 Graphite 157
8.4 Molybdenum disulphide and similar compounds 160
8.5 Other inorganics 164

8.6 PTFE and similar polymers 165
8.7 Nylons 167
8.8 Acetals 169
8.9 Polyetheretherketones (PEEK) 169
8.10 Other polymers 169
8.11 Metals as solid lubricants 170
8.12 Composites 171
8.13 Diamond-Like Carbon (DLC) 173
8.14 Selection of solid lubricants 173
8.15 Designing for solid lubricants 174
8.16 Some applications of solid lubricants 177
Appendix – Theory of Friction of Solid Lubricants 180

Chapter 9 Gas Bearings 181
9.1 Principles of gas bearings 181
9.2 Properties of the gas 182
9.3 Advantages and disadvantages of gas bearings 185
9.4 Examples of gas bearing use 186

Chapter 10 Sealing of Lubricants 189
10.1 Principle of sealing 189
10.2 Static seals 190
10.3 Semi-static seals 191
10.4 Rotary seals 193
10.5 Sealing reciprocating shafts 199
10.6 Seal materials 200
10.7 Handling and fitting 201

Chapter 11 Lubricant Testing and Specifications 203
11.1 The object of testing 203
11.2 Functional tests 204
11.3 Chemical and physical tests 209
11.4 Standards and specifications 218
11.5 Automotive engine oil specifications 221
11.6 Drawing up a specification 224
11.7 Precision of tests 226

Chapter 12 Lubricant Monitoring 229
12.1 The objects of lubricant monitoring 229
12.2 Monitoring the quality of the lubricant 230
12.3 Wear monitoring 236
12.4 Field tests 246
12.5 Application to grease 249
12.6 Selecting and designing a monitoring programme 249
12.7 Investigating failures 252

Chapter 13 Lubricant Handling and Storage **253**
13.1 Care in lubricant handling 253
13.2 Lubricant packaging and delivery 253
13.3 Storage 255
13.4 Dispensing and applying lubricants 258

Chapter 14 Health and Safety **263**
14.1 Overall safety of lubricants 263
14.2 Flammability and explosions 264
14.3 Accidents involving lubricants 268
14.4 Health aspects of lubricants 269
14.5 Environmental impact 276

Bibliography **277**

Index **279**

Preface to the Third Edition

It is now 21 years since the first edition of this book was published (Lansdown, 1982, *Lubrication: A Practical Guide to Lubricant Selection,* Pergamon Press), and seven years since the second edition (Lansdown, 1996, *Lubrication and Lubricant Selection: a Practical Guide,* MEP). Even in that seven years there have been important changes in some aspects of lubricant technology, notably in automotive engine lubricants.

A major cause of those changes has been the increasing international concern for the environmental impact of all sorts of technologies, not least lubricant technology. An attempt has therefore been made in this edition to present as accurate as possible a picture of the current position, particularly with regard to the rapidly changing technical, testing, specification and regulation situation of engine lubricants.

The aim of the book is to present a technical subject in as simple and non-technical a way as possible. The layout is similar to that of the previous editions. The first chapter gives a brief introduction to the basic theory of lubrication, but a knowledge of the theory is not essential to understanding the remainder of the book.

The next eight chapters are concerned mainly with the selection of lubricants and their methods of application and use. The last five chapters then describe associated subjects which are important for the efficient use of lubricants, namely sealing, testing, monitoring, handling, and health and safety.

Series Editors' Foreword

Almost every aspect of industry and many fields of science and medicine require a practical understanding of tribology. The *Tribology in Practice Series* aims to be accessible and industry-relevant – bringing the latest developments in tribological research, as well as established ideas and techniques, to bear on real engineering problems.

We are pleased to include in the Series *Lubrication and Lubricant Selection* by A R Lansdown – an established and useful work now in its third edition. In keeping with the aims of the Series, this book gives guidance on the principles and practice of lubricant selection and application. It covers oils, greases and solid lubricants, with information on their properties and the methods by which they can be tested. As well as providing guidance on the choice of lubricant for any particular application, it can also be used to guide lubricant rationalization between different machines in an industrial plant, where a wide range of lubricants has been suggested by their different manufacturers. Designers will also find it helpful in the design of lubrication systems.

As a Series, *Tribology in Practice* is particularly concerned with design, failure investigation, and the application of tribological understanding to the products of various industries and to medicine. We also plan to include reviews of areas of research in the subject, which will be useful both for research workers and engineers in industry.

The link with the IMechE through its publishing operation, Professional Engineering Publishing, is appropriate as tribology has its natural home within this branch of engineering. The scope of the series is as wide as the subject and applications of tribology. Wherever there is wear, rubbing, friction, or the need for lubrication, then there is scope for the introduction of practical, interpretative material. The Series Editors and the publishers would welcome suggestions and proposals for future titles in the Series.

M J Neale
Neale Consulting Engineers, UK

T A Polak
Neale Consulting Engineers, UK

M Priest
University of Leeds, UK

Chapter 1

Basic Principles of Lubrication

1.1 Meaning of lubrication

This book is intended as a practical guide to lubricants and lubrication, and the succeeding chapters will deal almost entirely with practical subjects. A knowledge of the theoretical aspects of lubrication is not essential. The proper selection and application of lubricants will, however, be made easier if a little of the basic theory is understood, and this chapter will try to explain the basic theory as briefly and simply as possible.

When one surface moves over another, there is always some resistance to movement, and the force which opposes movement is called friction. If the friction is low and steady, there will be smooth, easy sliding. At the other extreme the friction may be so great, or so uneven, that movement becomes impossible or the surfaces can overheat or be seriously damaged.

Lubrication is simply the use of a material to improve the smoothness of movement of one surface over another, and the material which is used in this way is called a lubricant. Lubricants are usually liquids or semi-liquids, but may be solids or gases or any combination of solids, liquids and gases.

Generally speaking the smoothness of movement is improved by reducing friction, but this is not always the case. There may be situations in which it is more important to maintain steady friction than to obtain the lowest possible friction. Some examples are: the control of chatter in a machine tool slideway or grinding operation, control of strip movement in metal rolling, and elimination of brake squeal or clutch judder in a car.

In addition to reducing or controlling friction, lubricants are usually expected to reduce wear and often to prevent overheating and corrosion and these secondary requirements will be considered later.

1.2 Friction

In most cases dry friction between two bodies closely follows two laws which are usually called Amontons' Laws, although in fact they were first described by Leonardo da Vinci in about 1500.

The first of these laws states that the friction between two solids is independent of the area of contact. If for example a brick slides over a flat surface, then according to this law the friction will be the same whether it is sliding on its base, its side or its end.

The second law is that the friction is proportional to the load exerted by one surface on the other. To continue the example of the brick, if a second brick is placed on top of the first the friction will be doubled, with a third brick the friction will be trebled, and so on.

It is this second law which makes it possible to define the coefficient of friction. If the friction is proportional to the load then, in other words, the friction F is equal to a constant multiplied by the load W.

$$F = \text{constant} \times W$$

or

$$\frac{F}{W} = \text{constant}$$

This constant is the coefficient of friction, usually written 'μ'. The coefficient of friction depends mainly on the materials which are in sliding contact, and can vary from 0.003 to 3.0 or more.

The coefficient of friction between two bodies is in fact not quite constant. It often varies with change in load, and usually varies with sliding speed. The static friction, which is the force needed to start one body sliding over another, is almost always greater than the dynamic friction, which is the force needed to keep it moving at the same speed once sliding has started.

The friction between two dry surfaces arises from two main basic sources, adhesion and deformation, and the more important of these is adhesion.

It is difficult to imagine that, for example, two smooth pieces of cast iron can stick together in the same way as adhesive tape, but in fact all materials will stick together to some extent. This may be easier to imagine if we remember that even the smoothest engineering surfaces are rough when viewed under a high-powered microscope. This roughness means that two solid surfaces which are touching one another are only in contact at the peaks of their asperities. This is shown in exaggerated form in Fig. 1.1.

The asperities are very small, something like a millionth of a square millimetre or a thousand-millionth of a square inch in area. If two surfaces touch, even with a load of only a few grams, the load will be carried entirely on a small number of these asperities, and the actual contact pressure on the asperities may be as high as 1400 MN/m^2 (200 000 lb/in^2). Such enormous

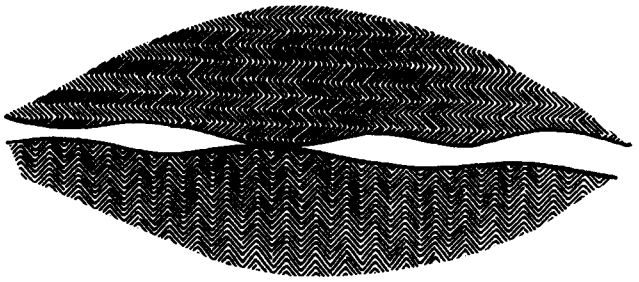


Fig. 1.1 Contact of two solid surfaces

pressures can squeeze the asperities on hardened steel or cast iron surfaces out of shape, and even make them weld together.

Under such pressures it is easy to imagine asperities sticking together, even if they do not actually weld. Once they have stuck together, force is needed to separate them, and the lateral force required determines how great the adhesive friction will be.

The other main component of friction is the deformation friction. It is usually small, and it is obvious why this must be so. The deformation which takes place when two surfaces rub together must be either elastic (temporary) or plastic (permanent). If the deformation is elastic, then the energy which is used to produce deformation will be recovered when the surface resumes its original shape. There will be no net loss of energy and therefore no friction. If the deformation is plastic then there will be a permanent change in shape, and the amount of change which can be tolerated in any engineering component is limited.

There is in fact one further complication in that when some substances deform elastically, there is a delay, or 'hysteresis', in their return to their original shape. When this happens, the energy used in producing deformation will be released after contact ceases, but this may be too late to be returned to the sliding system. There will then be a net energy loss and resulting friction. This can be important for some plastics and especially some rubbers. For example, 'high-hysteresis' rubbers for vehicle tyres are deliberately formulated to produce high-hysteresis friction. This is because tyres lose most of their adhesive friction when wet, and high hysteresis ensures that the deformation friction is sufficient to provide good grip on wet roads.

For accuracy it should perhaps be noted that when two asperities adhere they will often separate by a rupture, or tearing, inside one of the surfaces. This results in a very small amount of material being transferred from one surface to the other, so that there is in fact some deformation taking place. The primary influence, however, is adhesion, and if this is reduced or eliminated, the resulting deformation will also be reduced or eliminated.

The first requirement of all lubrication is therefore the elimination or

reduction of the force required to shear the adhesive junctions formed between asperities. This can be done either by interposing between the asperities a material which is more easily sheared, or by using a chemical which will alter the shear stress of the asperities themselves.

The material interposed between asperities may be a gas, a liquid or a solid, but if it is a gas or a liquid, or a semi-liquid such as a grease, then a third type of friction is introduced. This is viscous friction, the force necessary to shear a viscous fluid.

1.3 Liquid lubrication

The way in which liquids lubricate can be simply explained by considering the example of a plain journal bearing, as shown in Fig. 1.2. As the shaft (journal) rotates in the bearing, lubricating oil is dragged into the loaded zone and the pressure and volume of the oil in the loaded zone both increase. The pressure rise, and the thickness of the oil film, will depend on the shaft speed and the lubricant viscosity. The relationship between speed, viscosity, load, oil film thickness and friction can be understood by considering a graph such as the one in Fig. 1.3.

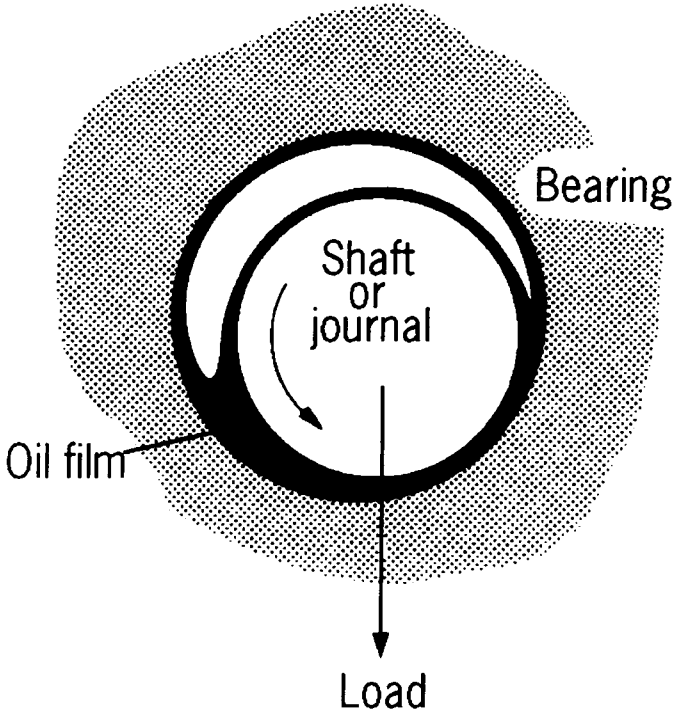


Fig. 1.2 Lubrication of a plain journal bearing

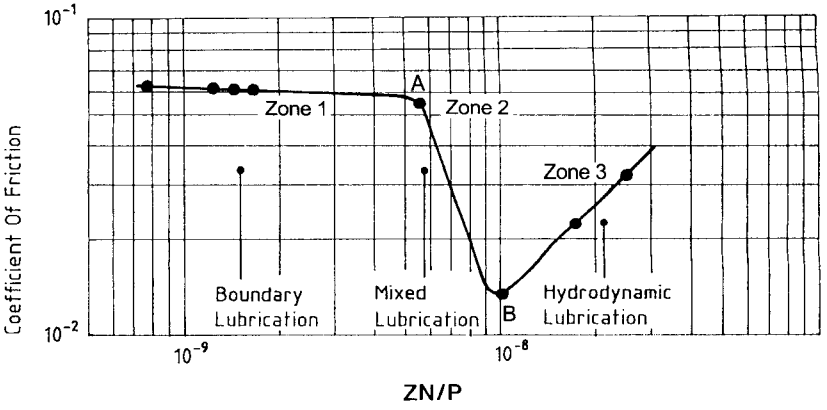


Fig. 1.3 Stribeck curve

In this graph the coefficient of friction is plotted against the expression *ZN/P* where

$$\frac{ZN}{P} = \frac{\text{oil viscosity} \times \text{shaft speed}}{\text{bearing pressure}}$$

There are three distinct zones in the graph, separated by the points A and B. At B the coefficient of friction is at its minimum, and this is the point at which the oil film is just thick enough to ensure that there is no contact between asperities on the shaft and bearing surfaces. With smoother surfaces B will be further to the left. In Zone 3, to the right of B, the oil film thickness is increasing, because of increasing viscosity, increasing speed or decreasing load, and the coefficient of friction increases as the oil film thickness increases. Zone 3 is the zone of 'hydrodynamic' lubrication.

As conditions change from B towards A, the oil film thickness decreases so that the asperities on shaft and bearing rub against each other. The amount of rubbing, and the friction, increase as the oil film thickness decreases.

At point A the oil film thickness has been reduced virtually to nil, and the load between shaft and bearing is being carried entirely on asperity contacts. In Zone 1, to the left of A, the coefficient of friction is almost independent of load, viscosity and shaft speed. Zone 1 is the zone of 'boundary' lubrication.

Zone 2, between A and B, is known as the zone of 'mixed' lubrication. The shaft load was traditionally considered to be supported by a mixture of oil pressure and asperity contacts, so that the lubrication was a mixture of 'hydrodynamic' and 'boundary' lubrication. The term 'mixed lubrication' may in fact be even more appropriate than was originally thought, because modern theories suggest that in different systems there may be a mixture of four or more different types of lubrication present in this zone.

The different lubrication zones also have an important influence on wear. Wear is a very complicated subject, with several different forms, more than one of which may be present at the same time, and it will be discussed briefly in Section 1.8. Generally speaking the amount of wear which takes place depends on the severity with which two surfaces rub against one another.

In Zone 3 there is no contact between the surfaces and therefore there is no wear. As the oil film becomes thinner in moving through Zones 2 and 1, there is increasingly severe contact between the surfaces and therefore a greater tendency to wear.

As far as lubricant selection is concerned, the two important zones in Fig. 1.3 are 1 and 3, the zones of boundary lubrication and hydrodynamic lubrication, because finding the best solutions for Zones 1 and 3 will also provide the best solution for Zone 2.

1.4 Hydrodynamic lubrication

Hydrodynamic lubrication simply means lubrication which is achieved by movement of a liquid. In the case of the plain journal bearing which has been used as an illustration, the rotation of the shaft causes lubricant to move into the loaded zone. Since the shaft and bearing surfaces come closer together in the loaded zone, the entry into this zone is tapered, like a curved wedge.

As the oil is forced to move into the narrower part of the wedge, the pressure increases, and it is this 'hydrodynamic pressure' which supports the shaft load. Increasing load reduces the oil film thickness while increasing hydrodynamic pressure increases the oil film thickness. The hydrodynamic

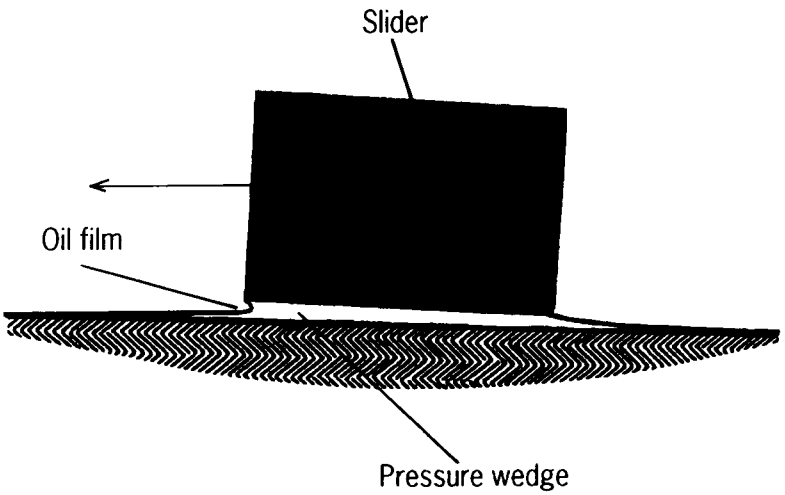


Fig. 1.4 Pressure wedge in a slider bearing

pressure in turn is determined by the viscosity of the oil and the speed at which it is squeezed into the wedge-shaped zone.

A similar pressure wedge is necessary in almost all systems which rely on hydrodynamic lubrication. For example, in a straight sliding bearing the wedge may be produced by a tilting of the slider, as shown in Fig. 1.4. Alternatively a sort of 'mini-wedge' may be obtained by radiusing, chamfering or relieving the leading edge of the slider. In some cases a wedge may be generated on a perfectly flat slider because the centre of the sliding face warms up in use and expands, thus producing a 'thermal crowning'. Any or all of these types of wedge may be present, for example in a pad-type thrust bearing, but some type of wedge is usually essential to produce hydrodynamic lubrication.

The one exception is where one bearing surface is moving towards the other, so that the lubricant between the two surfaces is squeezed, and forced to move out of the space between them. The viscosity of the lubricant then tends to prevent the lubricant from being squeezed out. The higher the viscosity of the lubricant, the greater is its resistance to being squeezed out of the bearing, and therefore the greater the protection against damage to the bearing surfaces. This is known as a squeeze film effect.

For most users it is sufficient to remember that the oil film thickness depends on the speed of the bearing surfaces and on the oil viscosity. *The viscosity is the only property of the oil which is important in hydrodynamic lubrication.*

In hydrodynamic lubrication higher speed gives better lubrication, and very low speed may cause lubrication failure.

Ideally in pure hydrodynamic lubrication the oil film should be just thick enough to ensure that there is no contact between the asperities on the two surfaces. In other words, the oil film thickness should be greater than the sum of the asperity heights. In Fig. 1.3 this ideal point is B. However,

---

Hydrodynamic lubrication is described mathematically by the Reynolds equation:

$$\frac{\delta}{\delta x}\left(h^3\frac{\delta P}{\delta x}\right)+\frac{\delta}{\delta z}\left(h^3\frac{\delta P}{\delta z}\right)=\eta\left(6U\frac{\delta h}{\delta x}+6h\frac{\delta U}{\delta x}+12V\right)$$

where

h is the lubricant film thickness,
P is the pressure,
x and z are the coordinates,
U and V are the speeds in directions x and z, respectively,
the terms $6U(\delta h/\delta x)$ and $6h(\delta U/\delta x)$ describe the rate at which the oil is being squeezed into the wedge,
η is the oil viscosity.

because the speed and load of a bearing, and the temperature (and therefore the viscosity) of the oil, cannot be kept absolutely constant, it has been usual to aim at a point just to the right of B. This will ensure that the friction is very close to the minimum possible, but will also ensure that the wear is kept to a minimum.

In practice, new bearing surfaces will often be rougher than is desirable, and a small amount of contact may be permitted. This will allow wear to take place until the roughness is reduced, or the surfaces are 'run-in' or 'broken-in'. However, the aim has usually been to design the bearing system so that once it is run-in, the oil film thickness is greater than the sum of the asperity heights.

This traditional approach has been intended to minimize or eliminate wear at the expense of a slight increase in the average friction. Recently the increasing importance of reducing fuel consumption, especially in vehicle engines, has led to a change of emphasis. The target in vehicle engines is now to achieve the lowest possible total friction.

This result is obtained by the use of less viscous lubricating oils, calculated for example to ensure average operation at, or even to the left of, point B in Fig. 1.3, instead of to the right of point B. This provides the lowest possible viscous friction, and the effects in increasing adhesive friction and wear are minimized by the use of suitable additives in the oil. This topic is further discussed in Chapter 4.

A special type of hydrodynamic lubrication can take place in certain heavily loaded contacts, such as in ball or roller bearings and many types of gear. If the geometry and the type of movement are suitable, lubricant can be trapped in the entry zone to such a contact, and become subjected to very high pressures as it is squeezed into the confined space in the most highly loaded part of the contact.

These pressures have two important effects. They cause the viscosity of

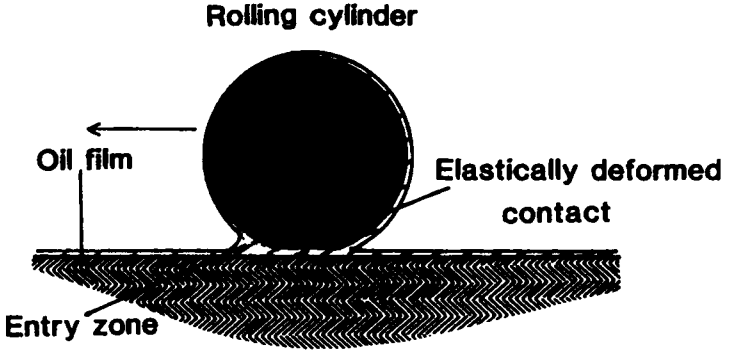


Fig. 1.5 Elastohydrodynamic lubrication of a cylinder on a flat surface

the lubricant to increase considerably, thus increasing its load-carrying capacity. At the same time they cause the loaded surfaces to deform elastically in such a way as to spread the load over a greater area. Since the load-carrying capacity is controlled by elastic and hydrodynamic effects, the phenomenon is known as elastohydrodynamic lubrication. Figure 1.5 gives an impression of how elastohydrodynamic lubrication takes place.

Several different equations have been produced to enable the film thickness in elastohydrodynamic lubrication to be calculated.

For most users it is sufficient to remember that *the important property of the lubricant is once again its viscosity.*

Although, technically, hydrodynamic lubrication refers to a form of lubrication by liquid, it can also be applied to lubrication by gas, provided that the load and speed conditions are suitable for the very low viscosity of gases. However, elastohydrodynamic lubrication cannot be obtained with gases.

1.5 Boundary lubrication

Whenever the lubricant film thickness becomes too small to give full fluid film separation of the surfaces, surface asperities start to contact one another, and lubricant properties other than the bulk viscosity start to become important. In Zone 1 in Fig. 1.3, the oil film has become so thin that there is no hydrodynamic contribution and only boundary lubrication is effective.

In most normal situations asperities are initially coated with a film of oxide, such as iron oxide on iron or steel, aluminium oxide (alumina) on aluminium, and so on. When such asperities rub together, their tendency to adhere is relatively mild. However, if the oxide film is removed by severe rubbing then the exposed metal surfaces have a very powerful tendency to adhere. Thus if the bearing surfaces retain their oxide films the contact between asperities will give moderate friction and mild wear. If they lose their oxide films there will be high friction and severe wear. In either case

---

One of the earliest and best known of these equations is the Dowson–Higginson equation:

$$h = \frac{2.65(\eta_0 U)^{0.7} R^{0.43} \alpha^{0.54}}{E^{0.03} p^{0.13}}$$

where

η_0 is the viscosity of the lubricant in the entry zone,
R is the effective radius,
E is a material parameter,
P is a contact pressure parameter,
α indicates the extent to which viscosity increases with pressure.

the object of boundary lubrication is to reduce friction and wear, and there are several ways in which this can be done.

1.5.1 *Adsorption*

All solid surfaces tend to attract a thin film of some substance from their environment. Such films may be only one or a few molecules thick, and are said to be 'adsorbed' onto the surface. The process is shown diagrammatically in Fig. 1.6, in which molecules of a long-chain alcohol are depicted adsorbed onto a metal surface.

The strength of adsorption depends on the electronic structure, and 'polar' molecules (those in which there is a variation in electronic charge distribution along the length of the molecule) tend to adsorb with their molecules perpendicular to the surface.

Thicker or more strongly adsorbed films will give greater protection to the bearing surface, so that the preferred boundary lubricants for adsorption onto a metal bearing surface are long-chain, polar organic chemicals; these will be considered later in Chapter 3.

Adsorption is a reversible process, and an adsorbed substance can be desorbed, if heated to a critical temperature, or displaced by a substance which is more strongly adsorbed. This latter effect is valuable in boundary lubrication, because the most strongly adsorbed substances present in the lubricant will be preferentially adsorbed, and in a well-formulated lubricant these will be the more effective boundary lubricants.

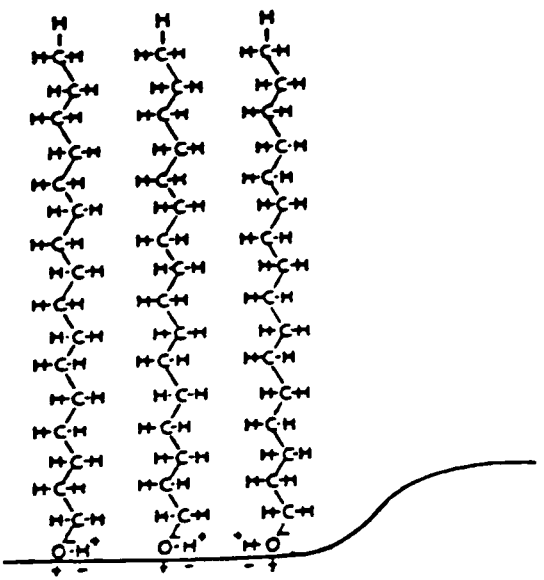


Fig. 1.6 Adsorption of a long-chain alcohol

A useful by-product of adsorption is believed to be the so-called 'Rehbinder effect', which is a reduction of the modulus and yield stress of metals in the presence of an adsorbed film. As a result of this effect, lower stress will be developed when asperities collide. In particular, during the running-in of new bearing surfaces, the removal of excessive asperities will take place more mildly.

1.5.2 *Chemisorption*

After adsorption of some substances onto a metal surface, an exchange of bonding electrons can take place with the metal or oxide surface to produce a new chemical compound. Such substances are said to be 'chemisorbed', and the example in Fig. 1.7 is the chemisorption of stearic acid on an iron-containing surface as iron stearate.

Chemisorbed materials are more strongly bound to the metal surfaces than are adsorbed materials, and the chemisorption process is not easily reversible. Long-chain molecules again orient themselves perpendicular to a surface, and such films can give very effective boundary lubrication.

1.5.3 *Chemical Reaction*

Adsorbed and chemisorbed films are very effective in reducing friction and mild wear under light or moderate rubbing. They are fairly easily removed mechanically under severe rubbing conditions and are therefore not very effective in preventing severe wear or seizure. The natural oxide layer reduces severe wear and seizure, but once it has been removed by rubbing, the re-oxidation of the surface may be too slow to be helpful.

In order to handle such situations, more reactive chemicals can be added to the lubricant to react with the bearing surfaces and produce protective films. Suitable films include chlorides, sulphides, phosphides and phosphates; any chemical which will react with a bearing surface to produce such substances will be effective in producing protective films. The problem is that really reactive chemicals such as hydrochloric or phosphoric acid will continue to react, and will thus corrode away the metal surface.

The solution is to use organic compounds containing sulphur, phosphorus or chlorine, which may adsorb or chemisorb on oxidized metal surfaces but will react rapidly with freshly exposed metal surfaces from which the oxide film has been removed. For example, tri-xylyl phosphate will chemisorb onto oxidized bearing steel, but under severe rubbing will react with freshly exposed steel to produce surface layers of iron phosphate or phosphide.

In this way the reaction of the chemical with the bearing surface can be limited to the minimum necessary for lubrication, and corrosion is controlled. Even so, some of the more powerful chlorine-containing extreme-pressure

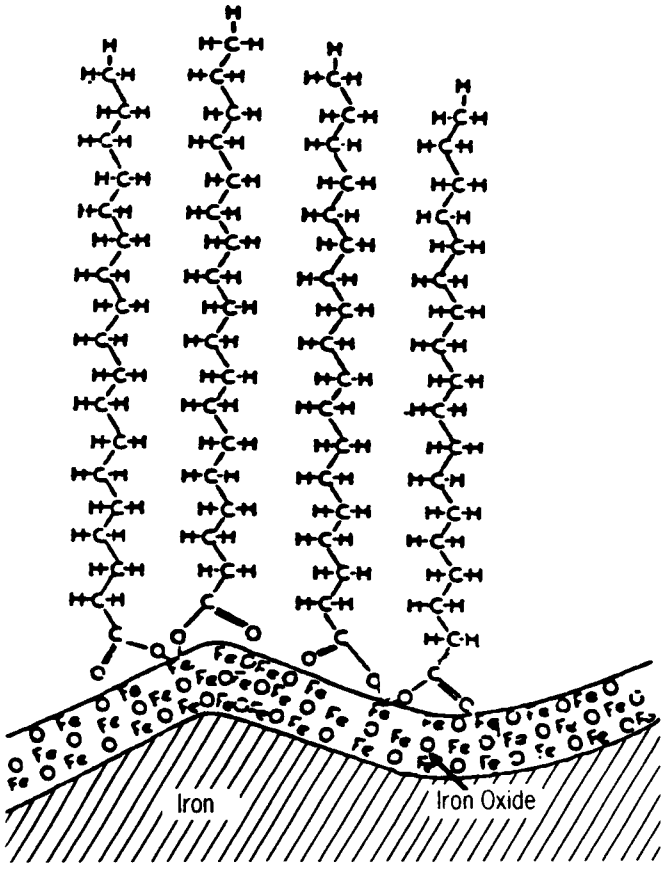


Fig. 1.7 Chemisorption of stearic acid on iron

additives will attack some metals, and should only be used where rubbing conditions are very severe, such as in metal cutting.

The effectiveness of such films is indicated by the fact that processes such as phosphating and sulphiding are applied to new rubbing surfaces to prevent seizure during running in.

1.6 Externally pressurized lubrication

In Section 1.4 it was explained how the pressure necessary to give full fluid film separation of loaded bearing surfaces is produced by the movement of the surfaces. The same effect can be obtained by forcing the lubricant into the bearing under an externally applied pressure, and this will enable full fluid film separation to be achieved where the viscosity or speed would be insufficient to support the load hydrodynamically.

The basic theory of externally pressurized (sometimes called hydrostatic)

lubrication is very simple. The average pressure P required is equal to the load W divided by the effective bearing area A:

$$P = \frac{W}{A}$$

In practice the design of hydrostatic bearings must also take into account the need to maintain stability and to control lubricant flow.

External pressurization may be used with a liquid lubricant or even a grease, but is also commonly used with a gas, where it can offset the problems associated with the very low viscosity of gases.

1.7 Dry or solid lubrication

A solid lubricant is basically any solid material which can be placed between two bearing surfaces and which will shear more easily under a given load than the bearing materials themselves. The coefficient of friction in dry lubrication is related to the shearing force and the bearing load:

$$\mu = \frac{\text{shear force}}{\text{load}}$$

In practice certain other properties are needed for a good solid lubricant, such as chemical stability, ability to adhere to a bearing surface and so on. The subject is described more fully in Chapter 7.

1.8 Wear

There are several different types of wear, having different causes and effects, and the subject is too complicated to be explained in detail in this book. In practice the most common forms of wear are either adhesive or abrasive, and it may be helpful to explain briefly the nature of adhesive wear and abrasive wear, and how they are affected by lubricants.

Adhesive wear is caused by exactly the same type of adhesion as was described in Section 1.2. The severity of adhesive wear depends on the size of the adhesive forces, and the resulting damage may consist of the transfer of only a few molecules, transfer of a whole asperity, fatigue fracture of an asperity, breaking away of a fragment due to overstressing, or melting of the surface.

A lubricant which reduces the adhesive forces between two surfaces will obviously tend to reduce adhesive wear. Referring again to Fig. 1.3, the lubricant will completely eliminate wear in Zone 3, and reduce it in Zone 2.

The situation in Zone 1 is not quite so clear-cut. Lubrication will normally reduce wear in this zone, and may even virtually eliminate it in special cases. Where the contact load or speed, or both, are very high a severe form of adhesive wear called scuffing may take place, and the resulting damage may

be worse than it would be without any lubricant. The use of various additives can be particularly effective in Zone 1, and this subject is explained in Chapter 3.

Abrasive wear, or simply abrasion, is the wear which is caused by a hard rough surface cutting or ploughing material from a softer surface. The rough surface may be continuous as with the surface of a grindstone, in which case the wear is called two-body abrasion. Alternatively it may consist of separate particles such as sand or carborundum powder, in which case the wear is called three-body abrasion.

In either case the use of a lubricant is more likely to increase wear than to reduce it. There are two situations in which a lubricant can help. The first is where the lubricant is able either to prevent abrasive particles from entering the contact zone or even to flush particles out of the system. The second is where the lubricant film is thick enough for the abrasive surface or abrasive particles to pass through the loaded zone without contacting the other surface. In other situations the lubricant may increase wear by holding the abrasive particles together in the form of a grinding paste, and can actually increase the amount of wear debris produced by each abrasive contact.

It follows that if wear is taking place in a machine it is important to try to establish what sort of wear it is, before making any decision about lubrication. One way of identifying the type of wear is to examine the wear debris, and this is discussed in Chapter 11.

1.9 Cooling

The cooling effect of a lubricant arises in two ways. Reducing friction will reduce the amount of heat generated in a bearing; in this way any material, liquid, solid or gas, which reduces friction will also act as a coolant.

More often, however, the cooling effect is produced by removing excess heat from one part of the system and transferring it to some other part where it can be lost to the outside air or to a separate cooling system. For this purpose the important factors are a high specific heat of the lubricant and a high flow rate. Liquids are better coolants than gases because of their higher specific heats. Greases and solids are quite ineffective because of lack of flow.

1.10 Corrosion prevention

It is probably because mineral oils are very efficient in preventing corrosion that there is a tendency to expect all lubricants to do the same. In fact most liquid lubricants and greases will give some corrosion protection, but some of the synthetic lubricants and vegetable oils are less efficient in this respect than mineral oils.

Lubricants which contain water, such as soluble cutting oils and fire-

resistant emulsions, may be actively corrosive, and solid lubricants can vary from mildly protective to mildly corrosive. Lubricants which are initially non-corrosive, or even protective, can also become contaminated with water or acids in service so that they become corrosive.

When wear and corrosion take place together, the combination is called corrosive wear, and the resulting loss of material can be much greater than when both effects occur separately. This is because a corroded surface may be much less wear-resistant than an uncorroded surface, and because a worn surface may be much more easily corroded than an unworn surface. Corrosive wear is usually cured more easily by preventing corrosion than by trying to prevent the wear.

It is important to assess the corrosion risk in any system, and to ensure that, where necessary, lubricants are formulated with corrosion inhibitors. This subject is discussed in more detail in Chapter 3.

1.11 Summary

To sum up, lubricants are used to give smooth sliding and to prevent overheating and damage to moving surfaces; lubricants may be liquids, solids or gases.

The most important property of a liquid lubricant is its viscosity, but where contact between the moving surfaces cannot be completely prevented, the boundary lubricating properties will also be important.

Lubricants can often also assist in cooling and in preventing corrosion of the lubricated parts.

Chapter 2

Choice of Lubricant Type

2.1 Whether to lubricate or not

It may seem strange in a book on lubricant selection to discuss the option of not using a lubricant at all, but it would certainly be wrong to assume that every mechanism with moving parts must require lubrication. There are several possible reasons for not using a lubricant, and several possible means by which this may be achieved. Among the possible reasons for not using a lubricant are the following.

(a) Avoiding the cost of the lubricant itself, and any costs associated with purchasing it, storing it and making sure that it is always present in the machine in satisfactory condition.
(b) Making the system simpler, and as a result sometimes more reliable, by eliminating the need for components such as pumps, seals, filler caps, grease nipples or drain points.
(c) Avoiding contamination of products, or the working environment and the increased fire risk often associated with lubricants.
(d) Avoiding a build-up of abrasive debris on exposed components.

Probably the simplest technique for avoiding the use of lubricants is to manufacture components from materials which will run smoothly and with an acceptable wear rate when rubbing against each other without added lubricant.

Several such materials are described in Chapter 8. Their main disadvantages are likely to be higher unit cost and lower strength, but there are many thousands of successful applications, especially in the automotive industry.

Where the relative movement between two components is limited in amplitude, as in reciprocating, vibrating or oscillating motion, it is often possible to use an elastomeric material to accommodate the movement and

avoid any relative sliding. A simple example is the use of a rubber block in place of a universal coupling to accommodate misalignment in a rotating shaft. A similar system which was widely used for many years in motor vehicles consisted of a disc of laminated, rubberized fabric to accommodate misalignment between the drive shaft and the differential. Some other examples are described in Chapter 10 in connection with sealing.

The limitation on such applications will often be imposed by the temperature build-up within the elastomeric component at higher speeds, loads and amplitudes. In some cases a metal bellows can be used instead of a rubber item, and metal bellows are commonly used to cope with relative expansion and contraction of exhausts or other connections in diesel generator sets.

Magnetic suspensions have been known for many years as a means of avoiding sliding contact between components. Magnetic bearings are now available commercially to handle considerable loads and speeds with great reliability. They have the advantages of eliminating friction and wear. Their disadvantages are their higher initial cost than comparable lubricated bearings, the complications of power supply and control systems, and the vital importance of ensuring continuity of the power supply.

One final example of techniques to avoid the use of added lubricant is the use of a fluid (gas, liquid or semi-liquid) which is present for some other purpose. Such fluids include the atmosphere and a wide variety of process fluids, and these are described in more detail in Chapters 4 and 9. Unless the viscosity of the available fluid happens to be suitable for hydrodynamic lubrication, external pressurization may be necessary, and this additional complication has to be balanced against the perceived advantages of avoiding the addition of a lubricant. However, in some cases even a low-viscosity fluid can be useful by reducing friction and wear to acceptable levels and by cooling rubbing surfaces.

To sum up, there are many alternatives to the use of an added lubricant. They all have advantages and disadvantages which can usefully be considered in planning any new system. However, it is probably true to say that in the vast majority of cases the use of a conventional lubricated bearing will be found to provide the simplest solution and the lowest whole-life cost.

2.2 The problem of lubricant selection

If there were only a few lubricants available, the problem of lubricant selection would hardly arise. The available oil, grease or solid lubricant would be used, and one would put up with its disadvantages and whatever life it gave. This was generally the situation before the mid-nineteenth century, and people used such things as mutton-fat, goose-grease, crude oil from seeps, natural graphite or even molybdenite (crude natural molybdenum disulphide), whichever happened to be locally available.

Nowadays the variety of lubricants is enormous. Most lubricant manufacturers can supply scores of different mineral oils, many different greases and several different synthetic oils, and there are hundreds of manufacturers, as well as specialized suppliers of anti-seizes and dry lubricants.

This great variety means that many of the simpler machines can be lubricated satisfactorily by any one of hundreds of different lubricants. For example, a door hinge or latch may work properly with a wide range of mineral oils, synthetic oils, greases or dry lubricants (or even, for quite a while, with none at all). Even much more complicated machines may not be very critical in their lubricant needs. It may be because of this that machines are often completely designed and built before any thought is given to their lubrication.

The choice is in fact often a subconscious one, following previous practice or what is felt to be normal practice for the particular type of machine or component. For example, it would be almost automatic to use oil in a machine-tool gearbox or grease in an isolated ball-bearing. In most cases no problem arises, and the machine operates satisfactorily with the lubricant chosen as an afterthought. However, there have also been instances where not one of the hundreds of available lubricants was suitable. When that happens, there may be an urgent and expensive rush to develop a suitable lubricant or to re-design the machine. It is not unknown for a large or expensive machine to have to be scrapped because it could not be lubricated satisfactorily.

More often it may be found that while the lubrication of the various components is acceptable, there are operating problems relating to the choice of lubricant, such as high lubricant consumption, leakage, short lubricant life or excessive fuel consumption.

The problem of lubricant selection should therefore be considered early in the design of a machine, but it is a fact of life that machines often reach their users with lubrication problems still unsolved. Other factors may lead to a reassessment of the lubricant requirements of a machine. New and better lubricants will often become available, or the original lubricant become unavailable. A machine may be modified, or used for a different purpose, or moved into a different environment. The selection of lubricants is therefore an important subject for users of machines, as well as their manufacturers, to understand.

In spite of what has been said in the last few paragraphs, there are good technical and commercial reasons for using in a new machine the lubricants which have been specified by the manufacturer. It is normally only when a problem arises, or a change in operation is considered, that the lubricant selection needs to be reassessed. The one important exception to this is where rationalization of the lubricant supply becomes desirable, and this is considered in Chapter 4.

In choosing a lubricant for a particular application the object should be to obtain the lowest overall long-term cost, but this definitely does not mean using the cheapest available lubricant. It is no good using a cheap oil if, as a result, the oil or the machine breaks down, or the maintenance staff have to spend too much time checking and replacing the oil. In other words, reliability is likely to be far more important than the initial price of the lubricant.

A very useful guide to the selection of lubricant class is published by the Engineering Sciences Data Unit as Data Item No. 03016 *Selection of Lubricant Class*.

2.3 Basic classes of lubricant

Lubricants are usually divided into four basic classes. These are:

(a) *Oils*. A general term used to cover all liquid lubricants, whether they are mineral oils, natural oils, synthetics, emulsions or even process fluids.
(b) *Greases*. These are oils which contain a thickening agent to make them semi-solid, but it is sometimes convenient to include the anti-seize pastes and the semi-fluid greases under the same heading.
(c) *Dry lubricants*. These include any lubricants which are used in solid form, and may be bulk solids, paint-like coatings or loose powders.
(d) *Gases*. The gas usually used in gas bearings is air, but any gas can be used which will not attack the bearings, or itself decompose.

The broad properties of these four classes are summarized in Table 2.1, and their detailed properties will be described in later chapters.

The advantages and disadvantages of oils stem from their ability to flow easily. Thus on the credit side, it is very easy to pour them from a container, to feed them into a bearing by dripping, splashing or pumping, and to drain them out of a machine when no longer fit for use. Most important of all, with proper design the bearing itself can be made to feed oil into the loaded zone. Other advantages are the cooling of a bearing by carrying away heat, and cleaning it by removing debris.

On the debit side, oil can equally easily run away from a bearing, leak out of a container or machine, migrate away over the surrounding surfaces and even evaporate if the bearing is hot and well-ventilated. In addition, because it is liquid it does not form an effective seal against dirt or moisture getting into the bearing.

Greases behave in many ways as oils do, but are used where the disadvantages of easy flow outweigh the advantages. Thus greases do not easily leak out of a machine or container, or migrate away, and will form an effective seal against contaminants. On the other hand, greases are much less easy to feed into a bearing, and are almost completely useless for cooling.

The advantages and disadvantages of solid lubricants are rather like the

Table 2.1 Properties of basic lubricant types

	Lubricant property	*Oil*	*Grease*	*Dry lubricant*	*Gas*
1.	Hydrodynamic lubrication	Excellent	Fair	Nil	Good
2.	Boundary lubrication	Poor to excellent	Good to excellent	Good to excellent	Usually poor
3.	Cooling	Very good	Poor	Nil	Fair
4.	Low friction	Fair to good	Fair	Poor to good	Excellent
5.	Ease of feed to bearing	Good	Fair	Poor	Good
6.	Ability to remain in bearing	Poor	Good	Very good	Very poor
7.	Ability to seal out contaminant	Poor	Very good	Fair to good	Very poor
8.	Protection against atmospheric corrosion	Fair to excellent	Good to excellent	Poor to fair	Poor to good
9.	Temperature range	Fair to excellent	Good	Good to excellent	Excellent
10.	Volatility	Very high to low	Generally low	Low	Very high
11.	Flammability	Very high to very low	Generally low	Generally low	Unlimited variation
12.	Compatibility	Very bad to good	Fair to good	Excellent	Generally good
13.	Cost of lubricant	Low to very high	Fairly high to very high	Fairly high	Generally very low
14.	Complexity of bearing design	Fairly low	Fairly low	Low to high	Very high
15.	Life determined by	Deterioration and contamination	Deterioration	Wear	Ability to maintain gas supply

extremes for greases, where the lubricant will not flow at all. Similarly the advantages and disadvantages of gas lubricants are like the extremes of oils, where the flow properties are almost too good. Solid lubricants and gas lubrication have very specialized advantages and disadvantages, and are generally used only in special situations.

2.4 Choosing the lubricant class

There are several different ways in which to approach the problem of selecting the class of lubricant to use in a particular system. Probably the usual way is to use the sort of lubricant which is considered normal for the device or combination of devices being used.

There is no doubt that this approach will succeed in the majority of cases. It may well fail if any of the conditions, speed, load, temperature, etc., are markedly different from those which are normal for such a system, but even when it succeeds it may not necessarily be the best solution to the selection problem. To make sure that the lubricant class selected is the best for the application it always worth considering the alternatives.

One alternative approach is to identify the conditions which are expected to apply to the machine or components, and to relate these to the capabilities of the various lubricant types. If done properly, this approach must succeed in choosing a class of lubricant which is technically suitable, but it will not necessarily be the most convenient or give the lowest whole-life cost.

A third approach is to consider the simplicity of the various alternatives. A lubrication system should never be made more complex than it needs to be in order to work properly. The simplest possible technique will often be the most reliable as well as the cheapest. One way to select a lubricant, and a lubrication system, will therefore be to start with the simplest possible arrangement and only to alter it where this is necessary to overcome problems.

The simplest form of lubrication consists of a small quantity of plain mineral oil or grease in place in a bearing, with no feed system. This will satisfy the needs of a vast range of lubricated systems, from door hinges and locks to sewing machines and bicycles. It will fail when the speed, load or temperature is too high, the life needed is too long or the oil becomes too dirty with wear debris or other contaminants. When that situation arises the problem of lubricant selection starts. It may then be necessary to use a different oil, a grease, a dry lubricant, a gas lubricant or a lubricant feed system. Ideally, of course, the decision to use a more sophisticated system should be made in advance by analysis of the conditions which are expected. However, if conditions arise in service which were not anticipated, changes may have to be made as a result of service experience. Table 2.2 shows some of the possible choices when the use of a small quantity of plain mineral oil is no longer good enough.

Table 2.2 Possible lubricant choices when a small quantity of plain mineral oil ceases to cope with the bearing requirements

Problem	*Possible solution*
1. Load too high	• More viscous oil
	• Extreme-pressure oil
	• Grease
	• Dry lubricant
2. Speed too high (which may make temperature too high)	• More oil or oil circulation
	• Less viscous oil
	• Gas lubrication
3. Temperature too high	• Additive or synthetic oil
	• More viscous oil
	• More oil, or oil circulation
	• Dry lubricant
4. Temperature too low	• Less viscous oil
	• Synthetic oil
	• Dry lubricant
	• Gas lubrication
5. Too much wear debris	• More oil, or oil circulation
6. Contamination	• Oil circulation system
	• Grease
	• Dry lubricant
7. Longer life needed	• More viscous oil
	• Additive or synthetic oil
	• More oil, or oil circulation
	• Grease

The two main factors affecting the choice of lubricant class are usually the speed and the load. Figure 2.1 shows the speed and load limits for different types of lubricant. The boundaries in Fig. 2.1 are rather arbitrary and are therefore drawn very thick. The actual limit of load and speed for a particular application will depend on the type of component involved, as well as the nature of the particular lubricant. For example, the maximum specific load for a grease at low speeds can vary from 2000 kN/m^2 (about 280 lb/in^2) for a plain soft grease to 7000 kN/m^2 (about 850 lb/in^2) for an extreme-pressure (EP) grease or molybdenum disulphide grease. Similarly the upper speed limit for dry lubricants is shown as about 500 mm/s (about 100 ft/min) because they are generally poor conductors of heat and tend to overheat at higher speeds. Where a dry lubricant such as lead has better thermal conductivity, it may be usable at higher speeds.

The figure should therefore be considered as a broad guide to the limitations of the different classes, and not as a set of precise limits.

Gas lubrication has not been shown in Fig. 2.1 for simplicity, and its scope

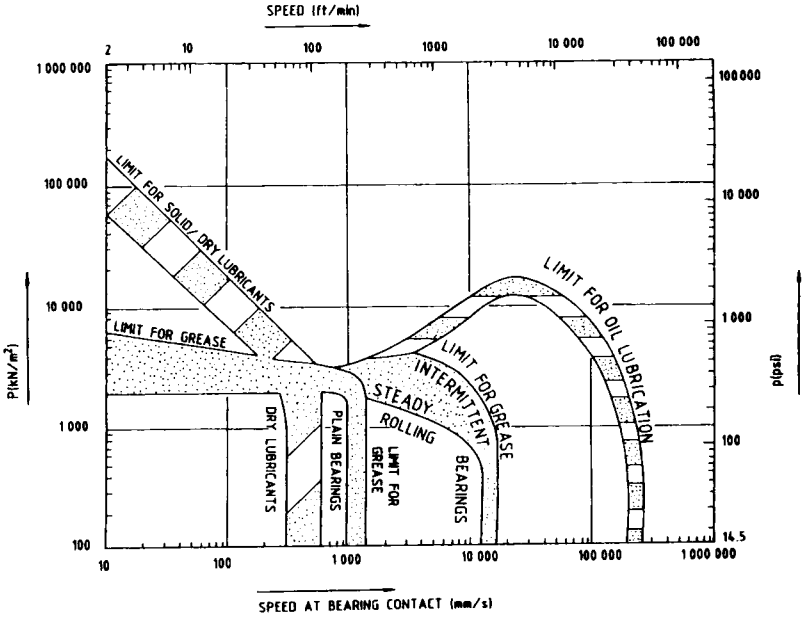


Fig. 2.1 Speed and load limits for different lubricant classes

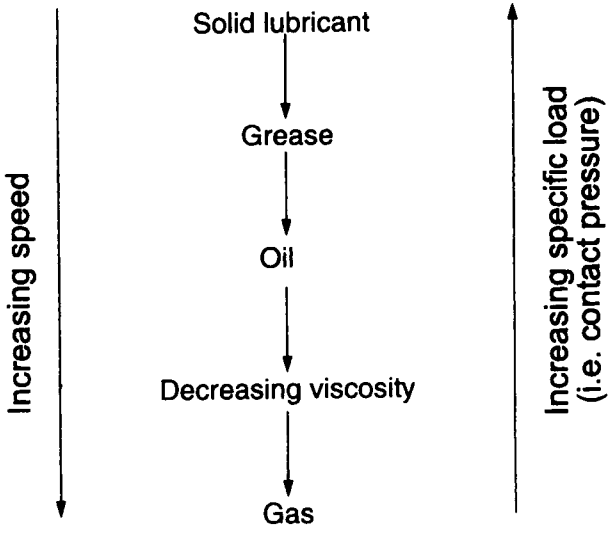


Fig. 2.2 Effect of speed and load on lubricant choice

is described in Chapter 9. However as a general rule gas lubrication tends to be used at high speeds and low loads.

There is in fact a general tendency to move to lower viscosity at high speed and to higher viscosity at high load, as shown diagrammatically in Fig. 2.2. It must be remembered, however, that this is a very much simplified picture, and should only be considered as a very general guide.

Other factors may in certain cases completely outweigh those mentioned above. For example, in high vacuum a solid lubricant may be the only one which will not evaporate, while in textile manufacture a white solid lubricant or a gas might have to be used to avoid all risk of contamination of the product.

2.5 Lubricant choice for particular types of component

The alternative has already been mentioned of choosing the class of lubricant on the basis of normal practice for the components concerned, and changing the choice where the operating conditions make it necessaary. The following section will show how the various requirements are considered in relation to the properties of the lubricants and to the usual practice for several types of component. A general summary of the extent to which different components need different lubricant properties is given in Table 2.3.

Table 2.3 Requirements of different components

	Type of bearing				
Lubricant property	*Plain journal*	*Rolling bearing*	*Closed gears*	*Open gears, ropes*	*Clock and instrument*
1. Boundary lubricating properties	*	*	***	***	**
2. Cooling	**	**	***		
3. Low friction	*	*	**	**	**
4. Ability to remain in bearing	*	**		***	***
5. Ability to seal out contaminants		**		**	
6. Temperature range	**	**	**	*	
7. Protection against corrosion	**	**	*	***	

*** Greatest importance; **less importance; *little importance;

2.5.1 *Plain bearings*

Ideally plain bearings are lubricated by a fluid lubricant, where full fluid film lubrication gives complete separation of the bearing surfaces, so that friction is low and no wear takes place. If the speed is high, oil will be preferred, because it will give lower friction and can carry away the frictional heat. At lower speeds grease may be acceptable, because there will be no heating problem and the grease will be easier to retain in the bearing. If there is a problem of contamination by dust or dirt, grease will be better at sealing out the contaminants, but if the speed is so high that oil has to be used, then it may be necessary to use a full oil circulation system and filter the oil to remove the dirt.

At extremely high speeds in small bearings, gas lubrication may be preferred, but the construction requires very precise machining, and the load will be limited.

If the temperature is too high or too low for oil or grease, dry lubrication may be the best solution, but dry lubricants always wear away in use so that their life is limited, and their friction may be higher than with oil or grease. Solid lubricants are often preferred for very high loads and very low speed, such as in bridge bearings.

2.5.2 *Rolling contact (ball or roller) bearings*

Probably far more rolling bearings are lubricated by grease than by oil. This is because grease has the advantage of providing a very effective seal in the bearing covers. This prevents loss of lubricant or entry of contaminants, while at the same time maintaining an adequate supply of lubricant to the moving surfaces. Once again, oil must be used at the higher speeds, but grease can be used to much higher speeds in rolling bearings than in plain bearings, as shown in Fig. 2.1.

Gas lubrication cannot be used for rolling bearings, but dry lubrication can, and some of the techniques used are described in Chapter 8.

2.5.3 *Enclosed gears*

Enclosed gears are usually oil lubricated. For most applications plain mineral oils are satisfactory, but at higher speeds lower viscosities and anti-oxidant additives should be used. Hypoid gears and heavily loaded spiral bevel gears will need EP additives, while worm gears benefit from low-friction additives. At low speeds greases are sometimes used, especially in small gears, and thixotropic oils or semi-fluid greases have been increasingly used in recent years.

As with rolling bearings, gas lubrication cannot be used in gears, but Chapter 8 describes ways in which dry lubrication can be used.

Enclosed gears are always supported by bearings, and the same lubricant must usually satisfy the needs of the bearings and the gears.

2.5.4 *Steam turbines*

Steam turbines are oil-lubricated, and have very critical requirements for oil properties. The temperatures are high, speeds are high and water is present. Reliability is particularly important because a steam turbine may be very large, is often a major central feature of complex plant and is expected to operate for long periods, often years, without maintenance or oil change.

Due to the high temperature and speeds there is a strong tendency for oxidation, so that highly refined oils with anti-oxidants are used.

Condensation of the steam leads to water contamination, and because of the high temperature and speed, this tends to form an emulsion. Centrifugal separators are used to remove the water, but the oil must be formulated for easy separation, and must be kept clean by filtration and generally clean housekeeping. Since water is present, there is also a tendency for rusting, and rust inhibitors are added to protect the metal surfaces in the system.

High speed also tends to cause foaming, which can be harmful in two ways. Firstly, if foam enters a bearing it will be a less effective lubricant, and bearing damage may result. Secondly, because foam occupies a larger volume than the oil which is in it, any excessive foaming will lead to loss of oil from the system. Steam turbine oils are therefore formulated to minimize foaming.

2.5.5 *Open gears, ropes and chains*

Although oils are usually used on open gears, wire ropes and chains, it is important to make sure that the oil is not thrown off with high speed or sudden acceleration. The oils used are therefore viscous and 'tacky', and are bituminous or contain 'tackiness' additives. Greases will often give acceptable lubrication, but tend to be too expensive for large-scale use in these applications.

2.5.6 *Clock and instrument pivots*

Traditionally clock and instrument pivots have been lubricated by a small quantity of oil in the bearings. Originally this was vegetable oil, replaced during the nineteenth century by mineral oil. Synthetic oils are now preferred, formulated to give low viscosity with low volatility and some boundary lubrication capability. The loads and speeds are so low that, according to Fig. 2.1, any of the lubricant types should be suitable. For these applications, however, very low friction is needed, and a low-viscosity oil is most suitable.

For some instruments in which low friction is particularly important, such

as gyroscopes in inertial navigation systems, gas bearings are now being used.

2.5.7 *Hinges, locks, latches, etc.*

These devices are just a few common examples of the vast numbers of small, simple moving components in which sliding or rubbing takes place. They are usually low speed, but some, such as spring-loaded latches or switches, firing pins in guns, or circuit breakers, may move very quickly for a brief time.

The contact pressures may be surprisingly high, especially in those devices containing some type of spring/trigger arrangement, such as circuit breakers and spring latches. It may be vital, therefore, to ensure that some lubricant is present, otherwise switches may break, door locks and bolts stick and guns jam.

Apart from the general rule that light oils are preferred where rapid motion takes place, the choice of lubricant may not be critical, and the so-called 'general purpose' oils are widely used for these unspecialized uses. In fact the choice of lubricant is often decided for some reason not directly concerned with the quality of lubrication; examples are as follows.

(a) The interior mechanisms of door locks and car window winders will usually be grease-lubricated in manufacture because they are so inaccessible that they are hardly ever re-lubricated, and grease will last longer than oil.
(b) Door hinges and latches of refrigerators and washing machines use dry lubricants to avoid contamination of food or clothes.
(c) Switches and circuit breakers either use dry lubricants or are coated with metals which will not stick, because oils or greases can cause interference with the electrical contacts.

2.6 Lubrication of complex machines

A complex machine may include a large number of different lubricated components. An internal combustion vehicle engine will contain pistons, cylinders, plain bearings, gears, cams, cam followers, tappets, valves and belt or chain drives. A steel rolling mill will contain motors, gears, universal couplings, plain bearings, rolling bearings, pistons, cylinders and the contacts of the rolls themselves.

In selecting the class of lubricant for such complex machinery, a further important consideration is the extent to which it is necessary, desirable or possible to use a common lubricant for several or all of the components present. In the case of the rolling mill the decision is likely to be to use at least three, and probably more, different lubricants. In the case of the internal

combustion engine the decision will almost always be to use a single oil for all the components, although two different oils may be used for the cylinders and the bearings of a large marine diesel engine. However, if we consider a complete vehicle as a single machine, there will probably be at least four different lubricants in use.

There is a wide range of choices available to the designer, but the absolute limit on choice is that the lubricant must be suitable for each component in which it is used.

This chapter has indicated the factors which need to be considered in deciding whether a component should be lubricated with an oil, a grease, or even a solid or gas. The following chapters will try to show in greater detail the properties of the various types of grease, oil, solid or gas, and how to choose and apply them.

Chapter 3

Lubricating Oils

3.1 The important properties of oils

The most important single property of a lubricating oil is its viscosity, and the reason for this is explained in Chapter 1. As far as lubrication is concerned the only other important factor is the boundary lubrication performance. If at any instant the combination of viscosity and boundary lubrication is satisfactory, then the oil will perform its lubrication function properly.

In practice, many other factors must be taken into account, to make sure that the oil continues to lubricate properly over the required life, or to make sure that nothing else goes wrong with the system, and so on. The following are some of these other factors.

(a) *Thermal, or temperature, stability.* If an oil becomes hot in use, then it is important that the heat does not make it break down so much that it ceases to lubricate properly.

(b) *Chemical stability.* An oil can be attacked by oxygen from the air, or by water or by any other substance with which it comes into contact, and such attack can make it unsuitable for use. Chemical stability simply means the ability to resist chemical attack, and must be assessed in relation to the substances which the oil is expected to contact. Chemical stability is related to temperature because the speed of a chemical reaction increases with temperature.

(c) *Compatibility.* This is a more general term referring to any interaction between the oil and other materials present. For example, an oil may cause the rubber of a seal to swell, shrink, soften or harden.

(d) *Corrosiveness (corrosivity).* Corrosion is a particular type of incompatibility, in which the oil, or something in the oil, attacks a metal. An oil which is completely non-corrosive when new may become corrosive after a period of use.

(e) *Thermal or heat conductivity*. Thermal conductivity is important where the oil is required to conduct heat away from the bearing.

(f) *Heat capacity (specific heat)*. Specific heat is important because it determines the amount of heat which the oil can absorb from the bearing or carry away by convection or circulation.

(g) *Flammability*. It is obviously important that the oil should not catch fire under the conditions in which it is used. This is particularly important in some industries such as aviation and coal-mining. (Confusingly, in English the word 'flammability' means exactly the same as 'inflammability'; to avoid confusion the former is used throughout this book.)

(h) *Toxicity*. This is a very broad term, meaning almost every respect in which a substance can affect health. It will be discussed in Chapter 14.

(i) *Environmental effects*. Any adverse effects on the environment are of rapidly increasing concern, and this is discussed further in Chapters 11 and 14.

(j) *Availability*. It is obvious that an oil must be available before it can be used. However, where a piece of equipment is to be used in widely different parts of the world, availability may be both important and difficult.

(k) *Price*. It is also obvious that price is an important aspect of lubricating oil, or of almost anything else, but it is not a simple matter. A single bearing failure in a critical position may cost more than a company's whole lubricant bill for a year. So, while price competition cannot be ignored, the choice of the right type of oil should never be ignored for price reasons alone. Only where different oils meet the same specification can a choice be based on price alone; even then it is important to make sure that the specification is fully relevant to the application for which the oil is being selected.

All these factors will be considered in more detail later in this and subsequent chapters.

Mineral oils are easily the most widely used lubricating oils and so they are often the standard with which other oils are compared. They will therefore be used to illustrate much of the rest of this chapter. It may be helpful to consider first what mineral oils are, and some of the terms used in describing them.

3.2 Mineral oils

The word 'mineral' originally meant relating to mines, and if an oil well is thought of as a sort of small-bore mine, then the name is very appropriate. Mineral oils generally mean oils obtained from petroleum, although they can also be obtained from similar sources such as oil shales and tar-sands.

The mineral oils used for lubrication were originally just the fractions, obtained from distillation of petroleum, which had a suitable viscosity for

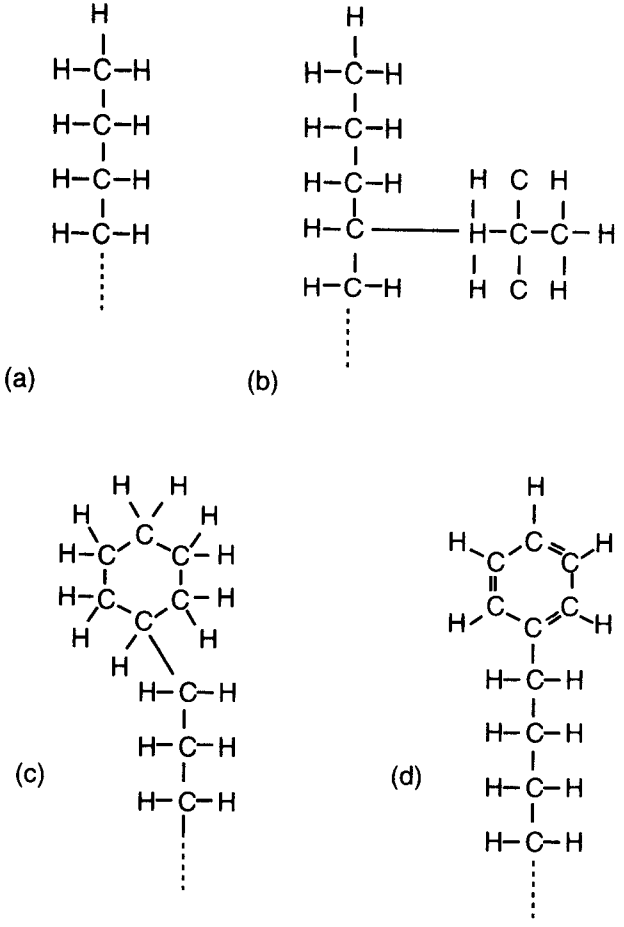


Fig. 3.1 Main types of hydrocarbon

lubrication. They were in fact much the same as heavy fuel oils. During the last 60 years their manufacture has become much more sophisticated, with 'sweetening' of petroleum to remove sulphur compounds, vacuum distillation, hydrogenation, solvent extraction, dewaxing, isomerization and so on.

The chemical compounds making up mineral oils are mainly hydrocarbons, which contain only carbon and hydrogen. These are of three basic types. The majority in any lubricating oil are paraffins, as shown in Figs 3.1a and b, in which the carbon atoms are in straight or branched chains, but not rings. The second most common type are naphthenes, in which some of the carbon atoms form rings, as shown in Fig. 3.1c. Finally there is usually a small proportion, perhaps 2–8 percent, of aromatics, in which carbon rings are again present, but the proportion of hydrogen is reduced, as shown in

Fig. 3.1d. The number of carbon atoms in a ring and the number of rings give special properties to aromatic compounds. (The picture of alternate single and double bonds is a conventional oversimplification, since resonance between several different electronic bond arrangements gives special stability and other properties.)

Apart from these three types of hydrocarbon, there may be small quantities of compounds present which also contain other elements, such as oxygen, sulphur, nitrogen, phosphorus and metals. (These compounds are sometimes present in resinous substances known as asphaltenes.)

For the user there are a few points which are worth remembering about these various types of compound.

(a) If the proportion of carbon present in naphthene rings is not much less than the proportion in paraffin chains, the oil is called 'naphthenic', and is now commonly referred to as a Group I oil.
(b) If the amount of carbon present in paraffin chains is much higher than the amount in naphthene rings, the oil is called a 'paraffinic' oil, and is often referred to as a Group II oil.
(c) Although the amounts of aromatics and asphaltenes present are always small, they can play an important part in boundary lubrication and oxidation stability.

Different sources of petroleum and different degrees of refining will result in different proportions of the various components; the object of the most severe modern refining processes is to provide lubricant base oils with a high proportion of branched-chain paraffins.

Cracking processes will reduce the average molecular weight of the hydrocarbons present and open up some or all of the naphthene rings. Reforming will alter the proportion of branched-chain paraffins. Mild hydrotreating will remove sulphur, oxygen and nitrogen compounds, while severe hydrotreating will eliminate 'unsaturated' double bonds and aromatic groups.

Table 3.1 Compositions of typical mineral oils

Constituents	*Napthenic (Group I) (%)*	*Paraffinic (Group II) (%)*	*Highly Refined Paraffinic (Group III) (%)*
Carbon atoms in paraffin chains	50	63	95
Carbon atoms in naphthene rings	40	33	3
Carbon atoms in aromatic rings	10	2	0.1
Sulphur (by weight)	1	0.5	0.1
Asphaltenes	2	1	—

Together these processes can produce base oils which consist almost entirely of branched-chain paraffins. These may be known as 'highly-refined' or 'severely-refined' oils, or alternatively as Group III oils. They are still mineral oils, but in some respects their properties are more like those of synthetic hydrocarbons.

Typical compositions of Group I, Group II and Group III oils are shown in Table 3.1. Depending on the source of the crude oil and on the severity of the refining, mineral base oils are now available ranging in character from the traditional paraffinic or naphthenic oils to the most severely refined types.

3.3 Viscosity

The viscosity of a liquid is its resistance to flow. Under the same conditions, a liquid with low viscosity will flow more quickly than a liquid of high viscosity. Water is a liquid of low viscosity while syrups and molasses are liquids of high viscosity.

Viscosity is measured in several different units, and the relationship between the common units is explained in the Appendix at the end of this chapter. For practical purposes, attempts are being made to concentrate on the unit of 'kinematic viscosity'. In the SI system this unit is the millimetre^2 per second (mm^2/s), but the centistoke is a compatible unit and is still more widely used. In this book viscosities will generally be given in centistokes. Water at 20 °C has a viscosity of approximately 1 cSt, while a 15W40 motor oil may have a viscosity of about 200 cSt when it is poured out of a can at 20°C.

The viscosity of any liquid decreases as the temperature increases, but the rate at which it changes varies with the type of oil. Figure 3.2 shows the variation of viscosity with temperature for several different mineral and synthetic oils.

In selecting the best oil viscosity for any application, it is the viscosity at the usual operating temperature which is most important. However, if the equipment will need to make a cold start, it is also important that the viscosity at starting temperature is low enough for the machine to be started easily. It follows that it is important to know how much the viscosity will change with temperature. The best way to show this is by a graph such as that in Fig. 3.2, but a much more widely used method is by means of its 'viscosity index,' or VI.

The viscosity index of an oil is calculated from its viscosities in centistokes at 40 and 100 °C.

$$\mathrm{VI} = \frac{100(L-U)}{L-H}$$

where U is the viscosity of the oil sample in centistokes at 40°C,

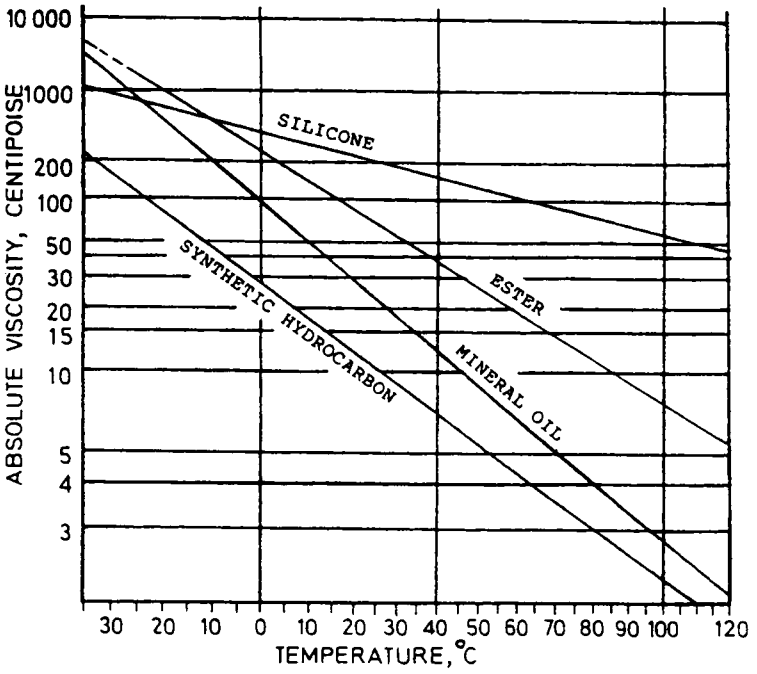


Fig. 3.2 Variation of viscosity with temperature

L is the viscosity at 40 °C of an oil of 0 viscosity index having the same viscosity at 100 °C as the sample,

H is the viscosity at 40 °C of an oil of 100 viscosity index having the same viscosity at 100 °C as the sample.

The normal range of VI is from 0 to 100, but the measurement range is often extended to much higher values. If an oil has a viscosity index of 0, its viscosity changes rapidly with change in temperature. If it has a viscosity index of 100, its viscosity changes less with change in temperature.

Among the mineral oils, the highest natural viscosity index is obtained with paraffinic oils and the lowest with naphthenic oils. Oils having a natural VI above about 80 are called HVI (high viscosity index) oils, and would be classified as Group II. Those with a natural VI below about 30 are LVI (low viscosity index) oils while the intermediate oils are MVI (medium viscosity index) oils, and both would probably be called Group I. Highly refined mineral oils may have a VI as high as 130, and are called VHVI (very high viscosity index) oils. Severely refined oils may have a VI as high as 150 and are called UHVI (ultra-high viscosity index) oils. Both of these would be called Group III oils.

Theoretically a high viscosity index is only useful if a machine must operate

over a wide range of temperatures. In practice there is a tendency to use only high viscosity index base oils for manufacturing the better quality oils, so that an oil with a low viscosity index may also be inferior in other respects.

It is possible to increase the VI of an oil by dissolving in it a polymeric 'VI improver' (such as a polybutene or a polyacrylic). In the past most multigrade engine oils, such as 20W50, have been treated in this way. The VI of modern VHVI or UHVI oils may be high enough to provide multigrade properties without the use of any VI improver, but the widest grade ranges, such as 10W40, will still contain some VI improver.

Before leaving the subject of viscosity index improvers one cautionary note should perhaps be given. When an oil contains a polymeric viscosity index improver, its apparent viscosity will depend on the rate at which it is being 'sheared' or made to flow. Figure 3.3 shows how the viscosity of such an oil changes with shear rate.

In the standard viscosity measurements used for oils the shear rate is low, so the quoted viscosity and VI represent the behaviour of the oil at low shear rate. In a bearing, however, the shear rate may be very high, so the effective viscosity of a polymer-containing oil may be much lower. The high quoted viscosity will apply when the oil moves slowly, such as in passing through feed pipes. One important effect of this is that on shutting down an engine, the VI-improved oil drains very slowly from the hot bearings, pistons,

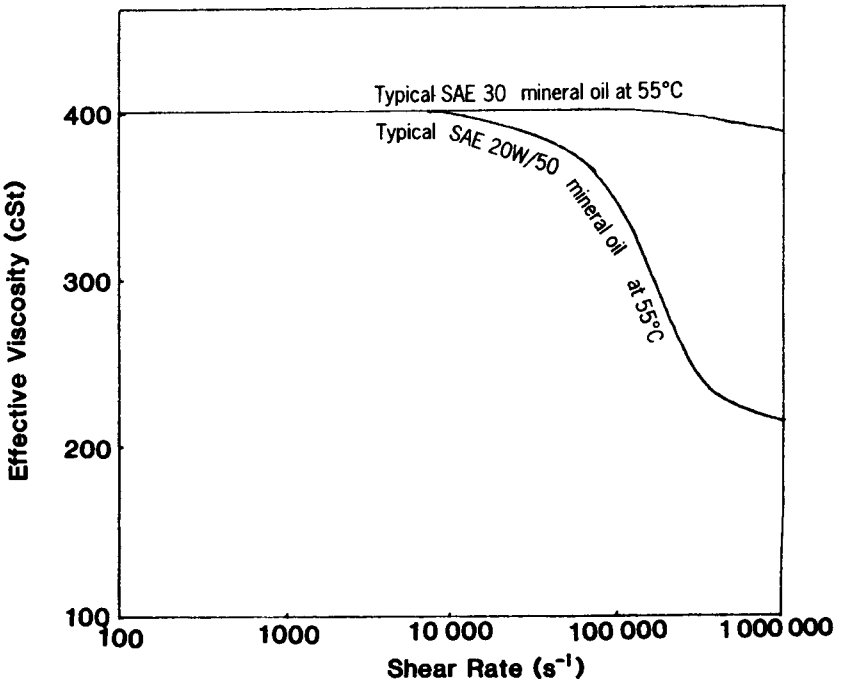


Fig. 3.3 Effect of shear rate on viscosity

cylinder walls, and so on; consequently on re-starting the engine a better lubricant film is present.

There is, however, a disadvantage. If a multigrade oil is to have a viscosity at –15 °C equivalent to an SAE 15W oil, then the base oil must have a lower viscosity, since the viscosity will be increased by the polymer. When the oil is then sheared rapidly in a high-speed bearing, it may behave as if its viscosity is the same as that of the base oil. In other words, in a fast bearing at 100 °C the 15W40 oil may be behaving like an SAE 10W oil, rather than a SAE 40 oil.

In a car engine, for which these oils are intended, this will almost certainly cause no problems, since multigrade oils are intensively tested in car engines. However, if it is proposed to use a multigrade engine oil in some other type of application, this effect of high shear rate in the bearing should be taken into account. It could produce the opposite result to the one intended.

Early VI improvers tended to become ineffective at shear rates above 10^4/s and such shear rates are commonly found in plain bearings. VI improvers are now available which retain their effectiveness at shear rates as high as 10^6/s, so that the problem of shear thinning is less common. However, it is not clear whether the early VI improvers have yet been completely replaced by the more shear-stable types.

VI improvers also break down slowly in service and become less effective, so that the high initial VI of an oil containing a polymeric VI improver will not be fully maintained. Modern shear-stable VI improvers have reduced this problem but not completely eliminated it.

At low temperatures the viscosity of a mineral oil may increase very rapidly, as the various liquid molecules approach their freezing points. With paraffinic mineral oils there is also a tendency for waxy molecules to separate out and to thicken the oil like a jelly or grease. This tendency can be reduced by dewaxing the oil, or by adding to it a very small quantity of a polymer called a 'pour point depressant'.

Certain other viscosity units such as Redwood No. 1 seconds, Saybolt Universal seconds and degrees Engler are still sometimes used, and their relationships to centistokes are explained in the Appendix at the end of the chapter. In addition the SAE (Society of Automotive Engineers) viscosity grade system is so widely used that it is reproduced in Table 3A.1 in the Appendix.

In practice the selection of oil viscosity is often not too critical. If an oil is used with a viscosity higher than the selection procedures suggest, the effect is to increase the resistance to movement in the bearing because of the higher viscous friction or drag. As a result of this the system becomes warmer, and as the temperature goes up the oil viscosity goes down. The end result is that the system settles down at a slightly higher temperature and a slightly higher oil viscosity. This result is likely to be unacceptable only if the resulting temperature is too high, or the available power is limited.

3.4 Boundary lubrication

Boundary lubrication was introduced in Section 1.5 of Chapter 1. The need for boundary lubrication arises when two surfaces are not completely separated by an oil film, and contact takes place between asperities on the surfaces. This can happen if the oil viscosity is too low, or the bearing speed too low, or the bearing load too high. It can also happen if for some reason the bearing becomes partially starved of lubricant, or if the surfaces are not designed to produce a converging wedge, such as in a spool valve, a flat-face sliding valve or a machine-tool slideway.

Boundary lubrication therefore becomes important whenever the lubricant film thickness is similar to, or less than, the combination of the surface roughnesses. The type of additive needed to provide boundary lubrication depends on the conditions present in the particular system.

The rubbing contact may be fairly gentle, such as in a bearing which is stopping or starting, or in a valve which has no wedge action but is only lightly loaded. Under those conditions mild wear takes place entirely within the surface oxide, and many oils will provide adequate boundary lubrication, especially if they contain naphthenes, sulphur, aromatics or asphaltenes. If this is not adequate, then a mild adsorbed or chemisorbed 'anti-wear additive' will probably be all that is needed. Table 3.2 lists a number of different anti-wear additives, and most high-quality lubricating or hydraulic oils are likely to contain between 0.1 and 0.5 percent of such an additive.

In other cases the rubbing contact may be severe, either because the load is very high, or because under moderate load the sliding speed is high. Examples are metalworking techniques where the contact pressures are high enough to deform or cut metals, and hypoid gearboxes where the contact pressures are high and the amount of sliding is also high. In such cases the surface oxide may be completely removed, so that a more powerful 'extreme-pressure additive' will be needed. Table 3.3 lists a number of different extreme pressure additives.

Another boundary lubrication problem is concerned, not with wear but with friction, and this has been of growing importance in recent years. Some

Table 3.2 Some anti-wear additives

Ethyl stearate
Stearic acid
Tri-*para*-cresyl phosphate
Tri-xylyl phosphate
Rapeseed oil
Methyl stearate
Zinc di-ethyl dithiophosphate
Dilauryl phosphate

Table 3.3 Some extreme-pressure additives

Sulphurized mineral oil
Sulphurized fatty oils
Sulphurized oleic acid
Cetyl chloride
Phosphosulphurized fatty oils
Mercaptobenzothiazole
Sulphurized terpenes
Alkyl and aryl polysulphides
Chlornaphtha xanthate
Chlorinated paraffinic oils
Chlorinated paraffin wax

of the earliest bearing friction problems were in railway wagon axle boxes when these universally employed plain bearings and were lubricated with mineral oils. Excessive frictional heating led to 'hot boxes' and seizure. The problem was solved by incorporating a proportion (typically 10 percent) of a vegetable oil to the mineral oil to produce a 'compounded oil'. Most modern railway axles now use roller bearings, and the need for compounded oils has lessened.

Worm gears also need friction-reducing additives, and traditionally also used compounded oils, but a more effective solution is to use polyglycols instead of mineral oils. The introduction of vehicle automatic transmissions led to a vital need for friction-control additives to control the smoothness of engagement of the lubricated clutches. A great deal of research and development followed, and similar friction modifiers found applications in other lubricated clutches and in limited-slip differentials.

The greatest pressure for the use of friction-control additives has come from the need to reduce the fuel consumption of road vehicles. The use of lower viscosity engine oils has increased the relative importance of boundary friction, and this has led to a need for friction-control additives in the engine oil.

There are of course some corresponding disadvantages to the use of boundary additives. They add to the cost of lubricants, because they themselves are costly, and because there are technical problems and additional effort in dispersing them in the oil. They are also less stable, so that they may reduce the service life of the oil.

The most important disadvantage with extreme-pressure additives is that they react with the bearing surfaces, so producing some degree of corrosion. The best of them only react while they are actually preventing bearing seizure, and are inert the rest of the time. Some of the more powerful ones used in metalcutting fluids are more highly corrosive.

These problems will be mentioned again later. In general it can be said

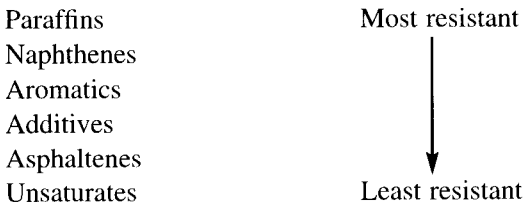
that small concentrations of mild anti-wear additives are probably harmless, but that ideally no boundary lubricant additives should be used where they are not needed, or in higher concentrations than are needed.

3.5 Oil deterioration

It was said earlier that provided the viscosity and boundary lubrication properties of an oil are satisfactory then the oil will perform properly. However, the properties of the oil will not remain unchanged indefinitely, and a major factor in oil formulation is to maintain the required properties for the necessary period of service.

3.5.1 *Oxidation*

The most important form of chemical breakdown of oils and additives is oxidation. Most chemical substances react more or less slowly with oxygen, and because lubricating oils usually operate in contact with air, the various chemicals present tend to react slowly, but continuously, with the oxygen in the air. The rate of oxidation varies considerably between different compounds, but as a rule they follow this order of decreasing resistance to oxidation.



The effects of oxidation are to produce aldehydes and acidic compounds, which can cause corrosion, together with an increase in viscosity, and eventually lacquering, tarry deposits and insoluble oxidation products. All these effects are undesirable, so a major objective in the refining of mineral oils is to remove the unsaturates, aromatics and asphaltenes, all of which reduce the oxidation resistance of the oils.

It is unfortunate that the asphaltenes, unsaturates and, to a lesser extent, naphthenes and aromatics, which reduce oxidation resistance also tend to improve boundary lubrication. It follows that an oil which has been only mildly refined will have poor oxidation resistance and relatively good boundary lubrication. Its oxidation resistance can be improved by the use of anti-oxidants, but the effect of boundary lubrication additives may be limited.

On the other hand, a severely refined oil will have good oxidation resistance but poor boundary lubrication. Its boundary lubrication can be improved considerably by the use of additives, but anti-oxidants will be less effective.

Table 3.4 Some examples of anti-oxidants

Type	*Example*
Metal organophosphates	Zinc diethyl dithiophosphate
Amines	Phenothiazine
	N-phenyl-napthylamine
	Diphenylamine
Hindered phenols	2, 6-di-*tert*-butyl-4-methyl phenol
Organic phosphites	Tri-*n*-butyl phosphite
Organometallics	Zinc-di-*n*-butyldithiocarbamate

Refining is therefore a compromise, and the severity of refining will be chosen to give the optimum balance of properties for a particular grade of lubricant. Overall, the modern tendency is to use a high level of refining to produce a base oil with good oxidation resistance and a high viscosity index. The other required properties are then obtained by the use of additives.

In spite of the good oxidation resistance obtained with modern base oils, most mineral oil lubricants contain anti-oxidants. They are more widely used than any other class of additive; even oils which are loosely described as 'non-additive' will in fact usually contain a small amount of anti-oxidant.

Anti-oxidants are additives which reduce the rate of oxidation of an oil. The oxidation of most mineral oil components and additives proceeds by a

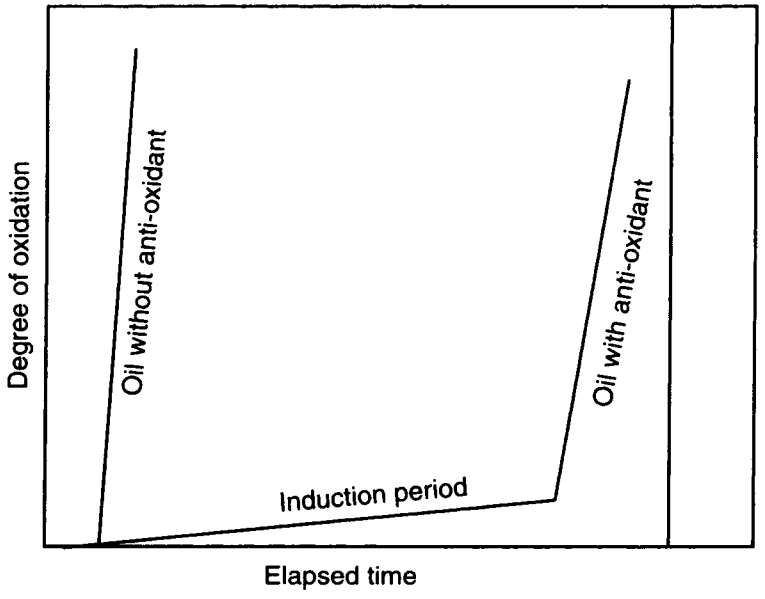


Fig. 3.4 Oxidation of a mineral oil

sort of chain reaction involving organic peroxides, and most anti-oxidants act by reacting with an organic peroxide and so blocking the chain. Some of the commoner anti-oxidants are listed in Table 3.4.

Due to this very specific blocking action of anti-oxidants, they continue to prevent oxidation as long as they are present, even in very small concentration. Ultimately, however, they become completely used up, and there is nothing left to inhibit oxidation. The oil then starts to oxidize rapidly. The effect is shown schematically in Fig. 3.4. The important thing to remember is that oxidation is very slow until all the anti-oxidant is used up, but may then take place very quickly. Ideally an oil should be changed just before the anti-oxidant is used up and there are techniques which make this possible.

3.5.2 *Thermal stability*

Even if there is no oxygen present, an oil cannot be heated above a certain temperature without starting to decompose. This type of breakdown is called thermal degradation, and it causes discoloration of the oil and a change in viscosity. The thermal stability cannot be improved by the use of additives, but it can be improved in the refining process by removing those same compounds which lower the oxidation resistance.

Figure 3.5 gives an impression of the temperature limits for the use of mineral oils. The rates of oxidation or thermal degradation increase with temperature, so that higher temperatures can be tolerated if the required life is shorter. There is therefore no absolute temperature above which an oil cannot be used, unless it boils.

The lower temperature limit shown in Fig. 3.5, is imposed by the increase in viscosity as the temperature decreases. Again there is no absolute limit because the maximum acceptable viscosity depends on the power which is available to move the lubricated parts. However, a useful guide to the minimum possible temperature is the pour point, i.e. the temperature below which the oil will not pour.

From all this it can be seen that for long service at high temperatures highly refined oils with anti-oxidants should be used. For lower temperatures less highly refined oils may have some advantages, as well as being cheaper.

3.6 Contamination

Apart from chemical breakdown, oils may deteriorate in service because of contamination, and there are many different possible contaminants, including:

- water from condensation or combustion;
- unburned fuel in an engine;
- wear debris;

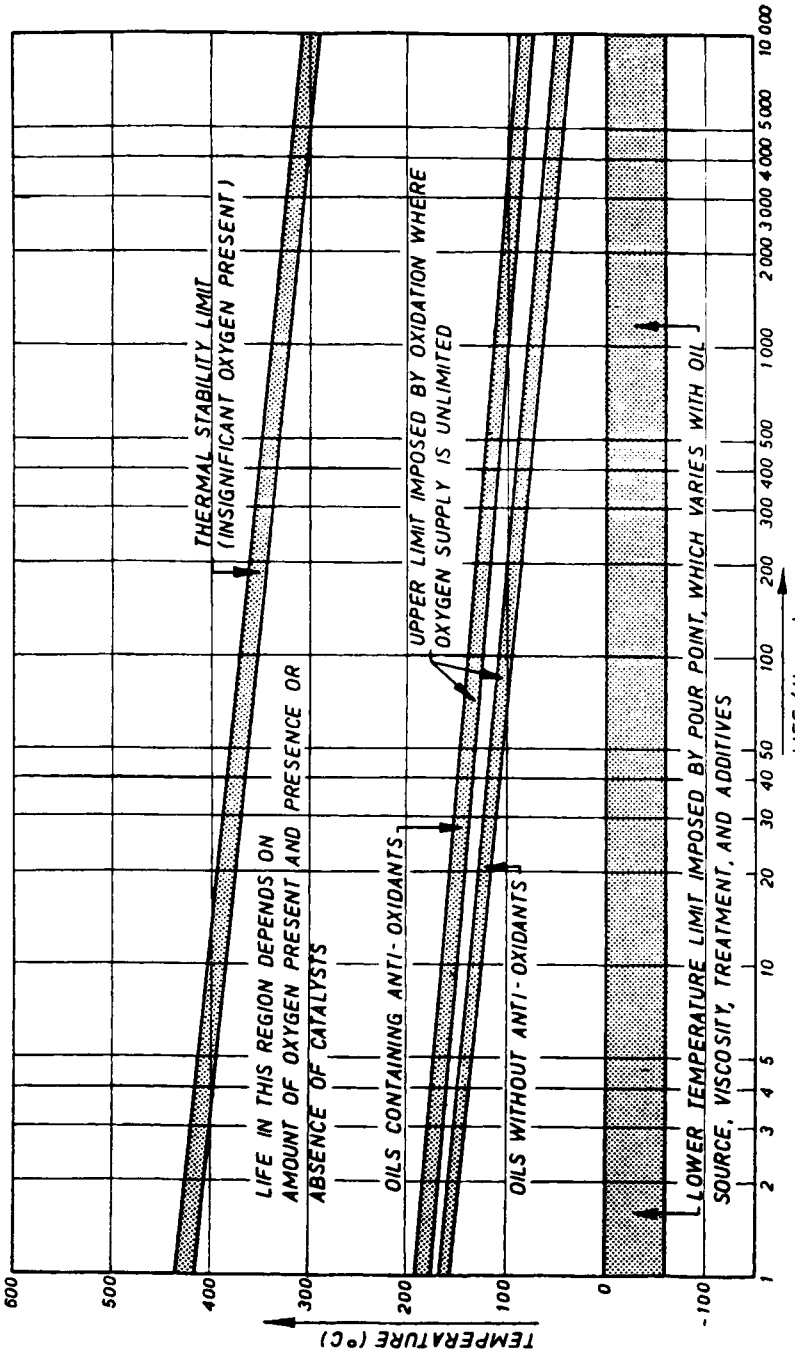


Fig. 3.5 Temperature limits for use of mineral oils

- dust from the atmosphere;
- process liquids;
- chemicals in chemical plant;
- soot from faulty fuel combustion;
- breakdown products of the base oil;
- corrosion products;
- breakdown products of additives;
- organic debris from microbiological attack.

Not only are all these contaminants undesirable in themselves, but any of them can cause further deterioration and more contamination and two or more of them may act together to cause more damage than they would separately. Examples of this combined, or synergistic, action are:

- dust, corrosion products and wear debris can increase wear and thus produce more wear debris;
- acidic breakdown products and water can produce a corrosive mixture and thus generate more corrosion products;
- acidic breakdown products and water can form a surface-active mixture which will emulsify with the oil and block feed holes and filters;
- the same emulsion makes an ideal medium for microbiological growth (bacteria and fungi) which feed on the oil itself;
- soot and the debris from microbiological growth can block feed pipes and filters.

It is therefore important to remove all types of contaminant as thoroughly as possible, and even then contamination may sometimes make it necessary to change the oil sooner than would otherwise be needed.

There are several techniques available for coping with contamination problems.

(a) *Controlling entry of contaminants.* The entry of contaminants such as atmospheric dust and moisture, chemicals and process liquids can be reduced or even eliminated by efficient sealing or by filtration of air supplies.

(b) *Removal of contaminants.* In a circulating oil system, solid or liquid contaminants can be removed by filtration or centrifuging. In general, filtration is more effective for solid particles, and centrifuging for liquids. Ferrous particles can be removed by a magnetic plug, and such a device can be combined with a filter.

(c) *Dispersing contaminants.* Certain solid contaminants, such as soot and oil breakdown products, tend to accumulate together and form large particles which can block oilways or filters. It may sometimes be preferable to keep the contaminants dispersed in the oil by using dispersant or detergent additives, so that the particles are too fine to cause any problems. In general

dispersion of contaminants is less satisfactory than removing them, but will sometimes be more practical.

(d) *Neutralization.* Acidic products from oil breakdown or from burning of sulphur-containing fuels may be neutralized by basic additives such as calcium compounds in order to prevent corrosion.

Eventually, however effective the cleaning techniques, a time comes when the contamination interferes with the quality of the lubrication, and this is one of the main factors which make oil changes necessary.

3.7 Compatibility

Lubricants must always be compatible with the other materials present in the system. In other words the lubricants and the other materials should not have any undesirable effect on each other.

Some of the most important compatibility problems arise between lubricating oils and rubbers, which must be used for seals and flexible hoses. Other problems can arise between oils and plastics, adhesives and paints; some synthetic oils will even attack metals.

Less highly refined mineral oils, or those which are oxidized, and some of the common additives will attack certain metals, especially when hot. Ordinary corrosion is considered later, but there is also a form of attack in which a metal, especially copper, can be dissolved in an oil and re-deposited in some other part of the system. For this reason copper, brass and bronzes should be avoided if possible in situations where they would come into contact with hot oil.

Compatibility problems with synthetic oils are much more difficult, and will be discussed later.

3.8 Corrosion

Clean mineral oils are mainly non-corrosive, and will in fact give very good protection against corrosion by atmospheric moisture. Oxidation products and some additives will attack steel and bearing metals such as copper, bronze, tin and aluminium, especially if there is water present and if the oil is hot. Water is often present, and an oil will do little to prevent corrosion by free water.

Oils which are to be used in situations where there could be a particular risk of corrosion will often have an inhibitor added to them. In the lubrication industry it is usual to differentiate between 'corrosion inhibitors', which are used to prevent corrosion of non-ferrous metals, and 'rust inhibitors', which are used to prevent corrosion, or rusting, of ferrous metals. Table 3.5 lists some types of corrosion inhibitor and rust inhibitor.

Table 3.5 Some examples of corrosion and rust inhibitors

Corrosion inhibitors
Metal diorganodithiophosphates
Metal dithiocarbamates
Sulphurized terpenes
Phosphosulphurized terpenes
Rust inhibitors
Alkenylsuccinic acids and derivatives
Alkylthioacetic acids
Amine phosphates
Substituted imidazolines
Sulphonates

3.9 Synthetic and natural oils and emulsions

So far this chapter has concentrated mainly on mineral oils, as these are by far the most widely used oils. They have the advantages of relative cheapness, high stability, availability in a wide range of viscosities and good boundary lubrication. However, any liquid can be used as a lubricant under certain conditions, and such varied liquids as liquid sodium or potassium, sea water, molten glass, silicones and animal fats have all been used successfully.

Some of the reasons for using a different base oil in place of a mineral oil have been briefly considered in Chapter 2. They include:

- temperature too high for mineral oil;
- temperature too low for mineral oil;
- lower flammability needed;
- compatibility problems, e.g. with natural rubber;
- contamination problems, e.g. with food.

Many of the alternative types of oil are synthetic, or in other words they are manufactured from various feedstocks by chemical processes. They are often described simply as synthetic oils, but the term is always ambiguous and can be misleading and dangerous because different types of synthetic oil are very different from each other in their performance and properties. It follows that whenever a synthetic oil is mentioned, it should be made clear what type of synthetic it is. Particular problems which can arise if the type of synthetic oil is not identified include incompatibility with non-metallic materials and failure to mix with other oils.

In spite of this danger, suppliers of synthetic oils have generally failed to identify the types of synthetic oil used in their products. The reason for this is not at all clear. Lubricant suppliers are usually prepared to specify whether their mineral oils are paraffinic or naphthenic, although this is rarely

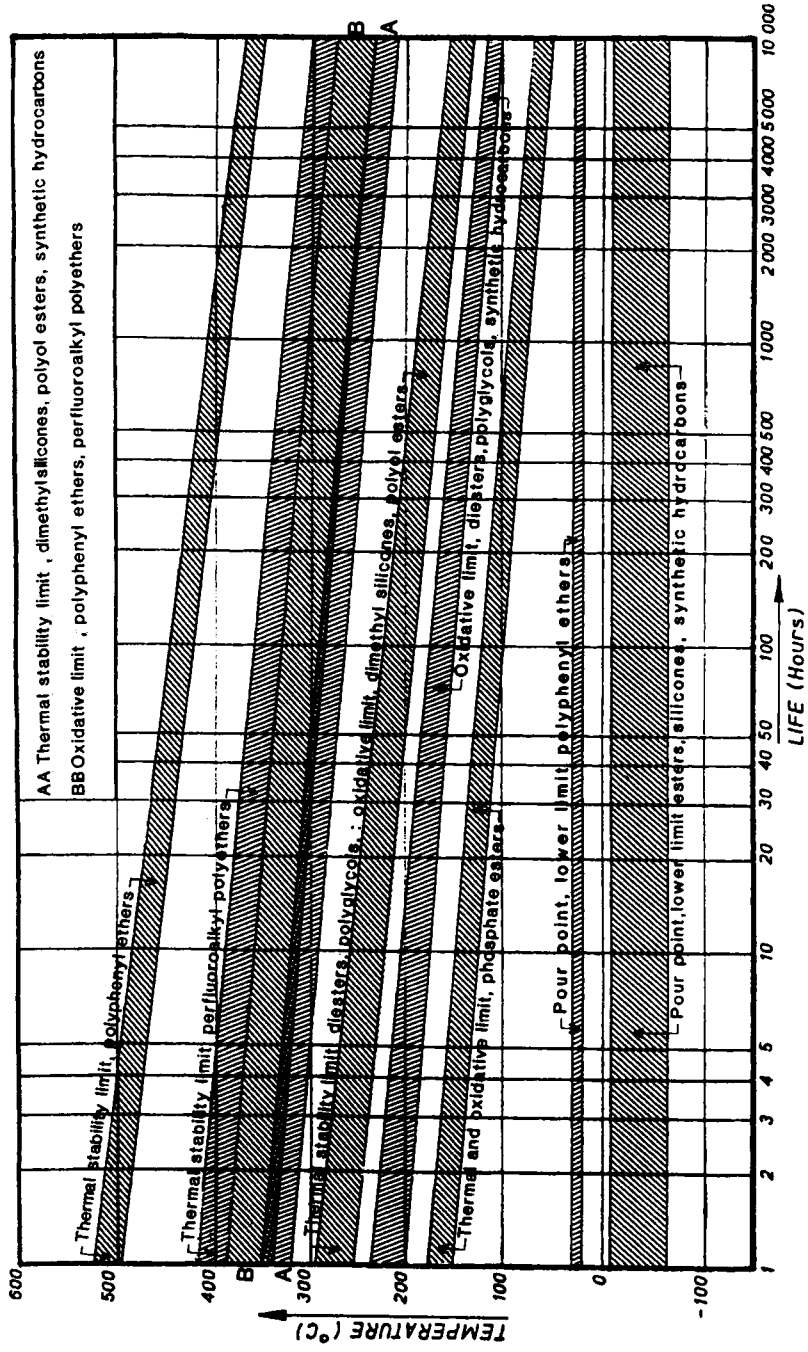


Fig. 3.6 Temperature limits for some synthetic oils

hazardous. However, they will often not provide the much more critical information about the types of synthetic oil present.

The widely used synthetic oils include hydrocarbons, di-esters, polyol esters, phosphate esters, silicones, polyglycols and, to a much smaller extent, polyphenyl ethers and perfluoroalkylpolyethers. Silicones are normally referred to as silicones, and not as synthetics. Phosphate esters are also often, but not always, specified as such. Polyglycols may be described specifically enough to avoid confusion.

The biggest risk of confusion therefore arises with the synthetic hydrocarbons, di-esters and polyol esters, but these differ so much in their effects on rubber seals and hoses that any use of the wrong oil could be disastrous. It is therefore a useful step forward that, particularly in the field of automotive lubricants, synthetic hydrocarbons are now widely referred to as Group IV oils, while esters are called Group V oils. However, this terminology is still not universally used in other fields of lubrication.

Figure 3.6 shows approximate temperature limits for some synthetic oils.

3.9.1 *Synthetic hydrocarbons*

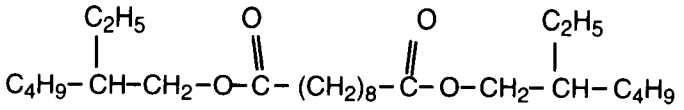
There are several classes of synthetic hydrocarbon, but the most important are branched-chain paraffins generally similar to that shown in Fig. 3.1b and known as polyalphaolefines (PAO). Their properties and performance are very similar to some of the most highly refined mineral oils and for many purposes they can be considered almost indistinguishable from them.

The major use of polyalphaolefines is in engine oils for motor vehicles. Their inherent oxidation resistance is good and their boundary lubrication not very good, like those of the highly refined mineral oils. With the proper additives they can be considerably improved, and they then have a much better life and performance than conventional mineral oils, especially at higher temperatures.

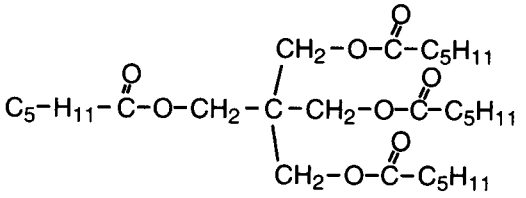
Also, like the very highly refined mineral oils, they tend to shrink rubber seals and hoses, or at best not to swell them, and it can be useful to blend with them a small proportion of a synthetic ester to give the small rubber swell which is desirable for good sealing.

3.9.2 Di-esters and polyol esters

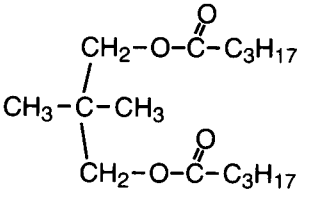
In terms of the total volume used, di-esters and polyol esters comprise the most important class of non-hydrocarbon synthetic oils, as they are almost universally used for aircraft gas turbine engine lubrication. The earliest jet engines were lubricated with mineral oils, but some of the temperatures were too high for reliable operation. Many possible alternative oils were tested, but the best were found to be di-esters; by about 1960 almost all jet engines were lubricated with di-esters.



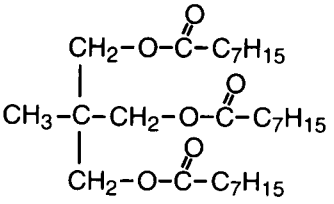
Typical Di-Ester (di-2-ethylhexyl Sebacate)



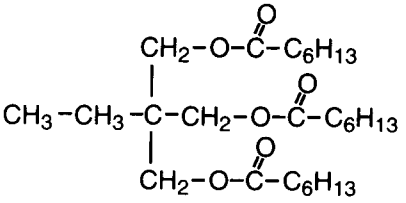
Pentaerythritol Tetrahexanoate



Neopentyl Glycol Dinonanoate



Trimethylolethane Trioctanoate



Trimethylolpropane Triheptanoate

Fig. 3.7 Typical di-ester and polyol esters

Di-esters are a class of 'carboxylic esters', containing the carboxylic group –0–C=0; a typical example is di-2-ethylhexyl sebacate, shown in Fig. 3.7.

As aircraft gas turbine engines became more powerful and aircraft speeds higher, the engine operating temperatures rose until di-esters were also inadequate. A new class of carboxylic ester oils was then developed with better thermal stability. These are called 'polyol esters' or sometimes 'complex esters', and a typical example is trimethylolpropane triheptanoate. Figure 3.7 shows four polyol esters used in lubricants.

Di-esters are used as base oils for high-temperature greases and as components of synthetic vehicle engine oils. They are also becoming more widely used for high-temperature applications in industry, such as hot-rolling oils in steel rolling. They can be used at higher temperatures than mineral oils, have very good lubricating characteristics and are readily available in a variety of viscosities.

Polyol esters are now extensively used in aircraft jet engines and are readily available in a few different viscosity grades. Apart from their good high-temperature properties, they also have very good lubricating characteristics, but they are not yet widely used outside aviation.

3.9.3 *Phosphate esters*

These oils are the esters which are produced by reaction between alcohols and phosphoric acid. They are quite widely used for their outstanding fire resistance, especially in high-fire-risk situations such as aircraft hydraulic systems, coal mines and hot metal processing. They are chemically similar to some of the best anti-wear additives, and consequently have excellent boundary lubricating behaviour. They are available in various viscosity grades and are used as base oils for fire-resistant greases. Their main disadvantages are poor thermal stability in contact with metals, which limits them to temperatures not much higher than 130 °C, and their powerful solvent action on many paints, plastics and rubbers.

3.9.4 *Silicones*

Silicones are polymeric substances based on a chain skeleton containing alternate silicon and oxygen atoms. They are available in a very wide range of viscosity grades, from those which are less viscous than gasoline to those which are as viscous as asphalt. They are generally used for their good high-temperature stability, which enables them to be used over 200 °C. Their other advantages include chemical inertness, water repulsion and electrical insulation. They are often used as base oils for high-temperature greases. Their main disadvantage is that they are poor boundary lubricants, especially for steel against steel. The phenyl silicones are better in this respect, and the

chlorinated and fluorinated silicones even better, but these are not used very widely.

3.9.5 *Chlorinated biphenyls*

The chlorinated biphenyls have very good fire resistance and chemical inertness, but are mediocre boundary lubricants. They have been used mainly in hydraulic systems and compressors in situations where there is a serious fire risk, but have recently been largely discontinued for toxicity reasons.

3.9.6 *Polyglycols*

Polyglycols are long-chain polymeric liquids. They are stable to about 200 °C, but their greatest advantage is that when heated above that temperature they decompose cleanly without producing any undesirable decomposition products.

There are two different types, alkyl-terminated and hydroxy-terminated. The latter type is water-soluble and is used for lubrication of pumps handling petroleum products or other solvents, since it resists washing out by the solvents.

3.9.7 *Fluorinated ethers and fluorocarbons*

These oils have the highest thermal stability and chemical inertness of any oils, and can be used continuously at temperatures over 300 °C. Like the silicones however, they are poor boundary lubricants and at present they are very expensive.

3.9.8 *Polyphenyl ethers*

Polyphenyl ethers also have excellent thermal stability and can be used continuously up to 300 °C. They are better boundary lubricants than the silicones and fluorinated ethers, but are still only mediocre. One important disadvantage is that they are solid at normal temperatures, but a polyphenyl ether oil has been used successfully as the engine lubricant in the advanced Lockheed SR-71 reconnaissance aircraft.

3.9.9 *Natural oils*

These include vegetable oils and animal fats, and were for many centuries the only commonly used oils. They are usually excellent boundary lubricants, but they are much less stable than mineral oils, and tend to break down to give sticky deposits. Rapeseed oil is still used by itself or as an additive to mineral oils to give improved boundary lubrication, and is used in some hot

metalforming processes because it does not cause carburization of steel. Castor oil is used as a hydraulic fluid in a few aircraft and is still available for some older aircraft rotary engines and racing car engines. It has very good boundary lubrication and excellent compatibility with natural rubber, but its use for engines and hydraulic systems is now very small.

However, one advantage of natural oils and fats is that they are more readily biodegradable than mineral oils and most of the synthetic oils. Biodegradability is increasingly considered important for protection of the environment from pollution, and a test for biodegradability such as the OECD 301 test is widely used, and in some cases required by law, for assessing different lubricants.

As a result, there has been a major interest in developing all sorts of lubricants, including greases and hydraulic fluids, based on vegetable oils such as rapeseed oil, castor oil and palm oil. One important objective of such developments is to improve oxidation stability, either by chemical modification or the use of effective anti-oxidants.

One obvious application of these oils is in the food industry, where they have always been used, but in the last 15 years their use has expanded into a much wider range of industries, and even an engine oil based on vegetable oil has been developed.

3.9.10 *Emulsions*

The oils described so far have been true solutions or pure liquids. This means that their molecules are fully and uniformly mixed together and will not separate out on standing, or even on powerful centrifuging.

If some water is simply added to a mineral oil, or an ester or a silicone, it will form a separate layer because it is insoluble in them. It is possible, however, to disperse water in an oil, or an oil in water, in the form of tiny droplets, and the resulting dispersion is called an emulsion. To prevent the droplets from combining together and separating out, the emulsion must be stabilized, and this is usually done by the use of a surface-active material such as a soap or detergent. The molecules of the surface-active material concentrate at the surfaces of the dispersed droplets. Due to their electronic structure they produce an electrical double layer in which all the droplets carry the same charge, either positive or negative, while the liquid around them carries the opposite charge. Since all the droplets have the same charge they repel each other, and do not combine, or coalesce.

An emulsion therefore consists of small droplets of one liquid uniformly dispersed in a second liquid, neither liquid being soluble in the other. The emulsion is electrically stabilized by some type of surface-active substance.

In practice the emulsions used in lubrication usually contain water and a mineral oil as the two mutually insoluble liquids. The earlier types always consisted of oil dispersed in water, but in recent years emulsions of water in

oil have been developed, and these are known as invert emulsions. Since the oil is the continuous phase in invert emulsions, their lubricating properties are generally those of the oil, and are very good. The water droplets help to prevent fire by their powerful cooling effect, and by quenching fires with steam. However, they have relatively little effect on lubrication except for limiting the temperature of use, usually to less than about 80–85 °C.

3.9.11 *Liquefied glasses, metals and salts*

These materials can all be used as lubricants at temperatures over 300 °C, but they involve handling problems because they are solid at normal temperatures. Liquid glasses are used in some hot metalforming processes, but other applications of all of them are highly specialized.

Appendix to Chapter 3

Viscosity Units

Viscosity is defined in two different ways and is measured in many different ways, but they can all be related to each other. The relationships between four different viscosity units can be seen in Fig. 3A.1.

Kinematic viscosity

This is the viscosity most often quoted by lubricant manufacturers and users. It is measured by means of a number of different capillary tube devices in which the oil flows through the tube under gravity. (See Section 11.3.)

It is most often quoted in centistokes (cSt), and water at 20 °C has a kinematic viscosity of approximately 1cSt. The SI unit is the metre^2 per second, and

$1\,\text{cSt} = 1\,\text{mm}^2/\text{s}.$

Dynamic viscosity

This is the viscosity which has to be used in calculations for bearing design. It is therefore the preferred viscosity for use by bearing specialists and design engineers. It is equal to the kinematic viscosity of the liquid multiplied by its density at the same temperature, and can be measured directly by certain specialized viscometers.

The proper SI unit is the Newton second per metre^2, or Pascal second, but it is usually expressed in Poise or centipoise (cP). Because the density of water at 20 °C is close to 1, its dynamic viscosity is also close to 1.

$$1\,\text{cP} = 10^{-3}\,\text{N s/m}^2 = 10^{-3}\text{N/m}^2\,\text{s}$$
$$= 10^{-3}\,\text{Pa s}$$

Redwood viscosity

Technically Redwood viscosity is not a viscosity but a flow time. It is the number of seconds taken for 50 ml of the oil to flow through a cup-shaped funnel. The method was once an Institute of Petroleum standard method, but has now been discontinued in favour of kinematic viscosity.

Saybolt viscosity

The Saybolt viscosity is also technically a flow time and not a viscosity, being measured in a similar manner to the Redwood viscosity. The method was once an ASTM standard method, but has now been discontinued in favour of kinematic viscosity.

Engler viscosity

The Engler viscosity is again based on flow time through a cup-shaped funnel, but the result is quoted in degrees, depending on the ratio of the flow time for the oil sample to the flow time for water at the same temperature. It is used almost only on the European continent, and is gradually being discontinued in favour of kinematic viscosity.

SAE viscosity grades

Apart from the above five, there is one other viscosity classification which is very widely used and must be described. This is the American Society of Automotive Engineers, or SAE, system. Lubricating oils are classified by the SAE on the basis of their viscosity at low temperature or 100 °C, or in the particular case of the high shear test, at 150 °C, as shown in Tables 3A.1 and 3A.2.

Oils which can be described simply in terms of one of the SAE numbers are called single-grade oils, e.g. SAE 20W or SAE 90. Oils which meet a low-temperature requirement as well as a higher 100 °C requirement are called multigrade. For example, an engine oil with a low-temperature cranking viscosity of 6500 cP at –25 °C and viscosity of 10.0 cSt at 0 °C is a 10W30 multigrade oil.

Table 3A.1 SAE viscosity grades for engine oils

SAE viscosity grade	*Low-temperature cranking cP maximum at °C*	*Low-temperature pumping cP maximum at °C. No yield stress*	*Low shear rate cSt at 100°C* Minimum	Maximum	*High shear rate cP at 150°C minimum*
0W	6200 at –35	60 000 at –40	3.8	—	—
5W	6600 at –30	60 000 at –35	3.8	—	—
10W	7000 at –25	60 000 at –30	4.1	—	—
15W	7000 at –20	60 000 at –25	5.6	—	—
20W	9500 at –15	60 000 at –20	5.6	—	—
25W	13 000 at –10	60 000 at –15	9.3	—	—
20	—	—	5.6	<9.3	2.6
30	—	—	9.3	<12.5	2.9
40	—	—	12.5	<16.3	2.9*
40	—	—	12.5	<16.3	3.7**
50	—	—	16.3	<21.9	3.7
60	—	—	21.9	<26.1	3.7

* Grades 0W40, 5W40,10W40; ** grades 15W40, 20W40, 25W40.

Table reproduced with the kind permission of the Society of Automotive Engineers, USA.

Table 3A.2 SAE viscosity grades for axle and manual transmission lubricants

SAE viscosity grade	*Maximum temperature (°C) for viscosity of 150 000 cP*	*Kinematic viscosity cSt at 100°C* Minimum	Maximum
70W	–55	4.1	—
75W	–40	4.1	—
80W	–26	7.0	—
85W	–12	11.0	—
80	—	7.0	<11.0
85	—	11.0	<13.5
90	—	13.5	<24.0
140	—	24.0	<41.0
250	—	41.0	—

Table reproduced with the kind permission of the Society of Automotive Engineers, USA.

Chapter 4

Selection of Lubricating Oil

4.1 The selection process

The criteria for deciding whether to use a lubricating oil in a machine or component have been described in Chapter 2. This chapter will proceed further to explain how to choose which oil to use.

The factors to be considered follow from the important features of lubricating oils described in Chapter 3, and include the following stages:

- selection of the type of base oil;
- choosing the oil viscosity;
- defining the boundary lubrication requirements;
- other required properties and additives.

Logically the type of base oil should be chosen first, since this choice affects the boundary properties and the other properties and additives required. However, over 90 percent of lubricating oil consumption consists of mineral oils, so the factors involved in selecting mineral oil viscosity, boundary lubrication and other properties will be explained first, followed by the reasons for choosing other types of base oil.

There are special considerations involved in the selection of engine oils and metalworking fluids. These will therefore be discussed in separate sections.

4.2 Choosing the correct oil viscosity

Although the viscosity is the most important single property of an oil, in many cases the choice is not very critical, and some fairly simple guidelines and examples will be sufficient. It is only for applications where the choice of the right viscosity is critical that the Reynolds equation (Section 1.4,

Table 4.1 Viscosity ranges for various applications

Oil type	*Viscosity range (cSt) at operating temperature*
Clock or instrument oil	5–20
Sewing machine oil	10–25
Motor oil	10–50
Turbine oil	10–50
'General purpose' household oil	20–50
Hydraulic oil	20–100
Roller bearing oil	10–300
Plain bearing oil	20–1500
Gear oils:	
Spur, helical, bevel:	
Low speed	200–800
Medium speed	50–150
High speed	15–100
Hypoid gears	50–600
Worm gears	200–800
Open gear lubricants	100–50 000

p. 7) and the Dowson–Higginson equation (Section 1.4, p. 9) and similar equations need to be used; such cases are best referred to specialists.

The full range of lubricating oil viscosities runs from about 3.0 cSt to about 1500 cSt at the common reference temperature of 40 °C. Table 4.1 lists typical viscosity ranges for a number of different types of oil.

Note that it is the viscosity at the operating temperature which is most important. If an instrument is to work satisfactorily at 100 °C, then the oil should have a viscosity of the order of 10 cSt at 100 °C. On the other hand, if the instrument is to work properly at –30 °C, then ideally the oil should have a viscosity of 10 cSt at –30 °C. This means that two very different oils will be needed. The oil for high-temperature use will probably have a viscosity at ordinary room temperature of about 300 cSt, while the one for low-temperature use would have a viscosity at room temperature of about 2 cSt, if such an oil could be found.

In Table 3A.1 the viscosity of the SAE W (W for winter) oils is quoted at low temperatures because they are intended for use in cold climates, where the critical requirement is to be able to start the engine at low temperature, even if the use of a low-viscosity oil results in some wear at the normal running temperature. On the other hand, the SAE 50 oil is intended for use in hot climates where the main problem is not to ensure a low enough viscosity to start the engine, but to ensure a high enough viscosity to give effective lubrication at a high running temperature. Its viscosity is therefore defined at 100 °C. The object of a multigrade oil such as 10W40 is to try to satisfy both cold starting and hot running requirements.

Table 4.2 Factors affecting choice of viscosity

Low viscosity	*Intermediate viscosity*	*High viscosity*
High bearing speed ←	→	Low bearing speed
Low load ←	→	High load
Fully enclosed ←	Some air access →	Well ventilated
Full oil circulation ←	Splash or drip →	No oil feed
Very small bearings ←	→	Large bearings

Some of the applications in Table 4.1 can use a wide range of possible viscosities. Table 4.2 shows the most important factors which determine which part of the range is suitable for a particular application.

Many graphical guides to viscosity selection have been published. Figure 4.1 is an example for plain bearings, such as plain journal bearings and tilting pad thrust bearings. Most manufacturers of ball and roller bearings publish similar graphs relating to their own products. Figure 4.2 is a guide for rolling bearings, while Fig. 4.3 is a simple guide for gear oils.

Having selected the right oil viscosity for the operating temperature, it must then be adjusted to one of the standard reference temperatures, such as 40, 50, or 100 °C in order to decide what viscosity grade is needed. This

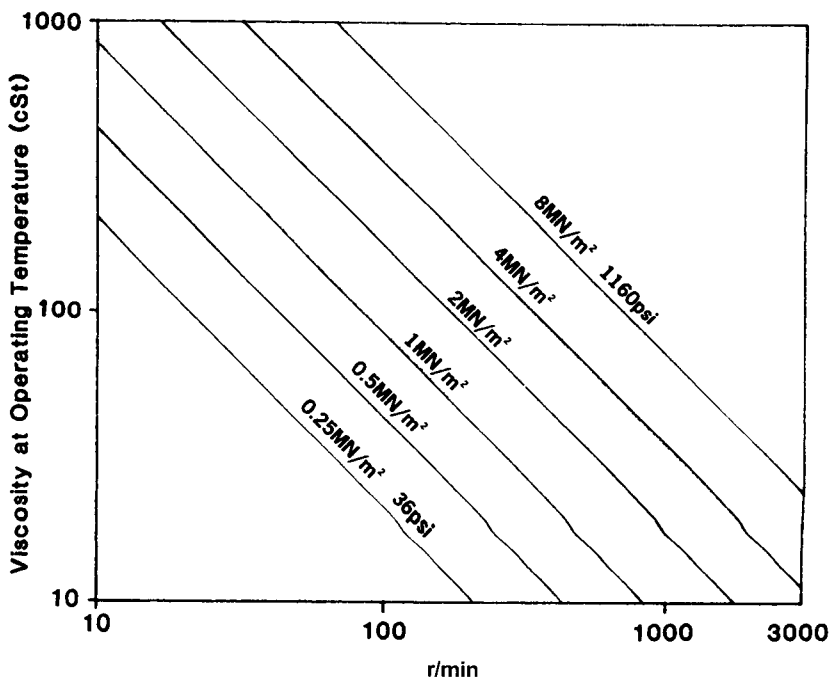


Fig. 4.1 Viscosity selection for plain bearings

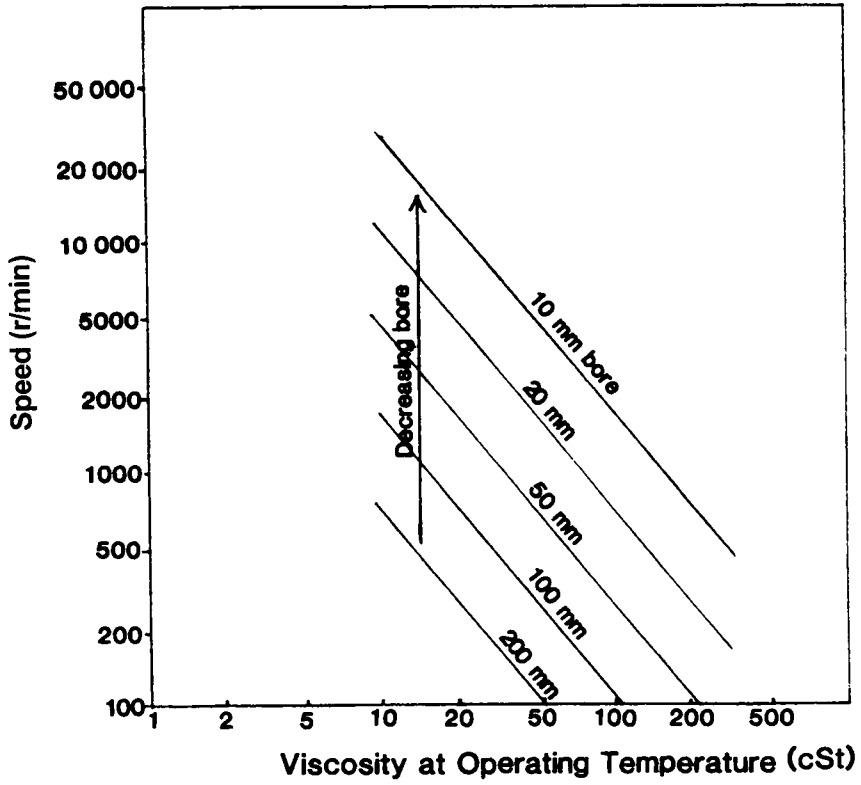


Fig. 4.2 Viscosity selection for rolling bearings (Note: an increase in viscosity up to four times the value given by this figure will give a comparable increase in bearing life, but may not be acceptable because of difficulty in pumping or filtration, greater heating, etc.)

conversion can only be easily done by using a graph such as Fig. 3.2 or Fig. 4.4. An alternative method is to use a chart showing the change of viscosity with temperature, and one useful chart is published in British Standard BS 4231 *Viscosity Classification for Industrial Liquid Lubricants* (ISO 3448).

As an example, suppose that at an operating temperature of 85 °C a good quality mineral oil with a viscosity of 11 cSt is needed. The oil supplier specifies the viscosity of products at the reference temperature of 40 °C. From Fig. 4.4 an oil having a viscosity of 11 cSt at 85 °C is oil No. 1. Its viscosity at the 40 °C reference temperature is 60 cSt, and a 60 cSt oil must be specified if using the 40 °C reference temperature.

4.3 Boundary lubrication requirements

Most lubricated systems experience mild rubbing under certain circum-

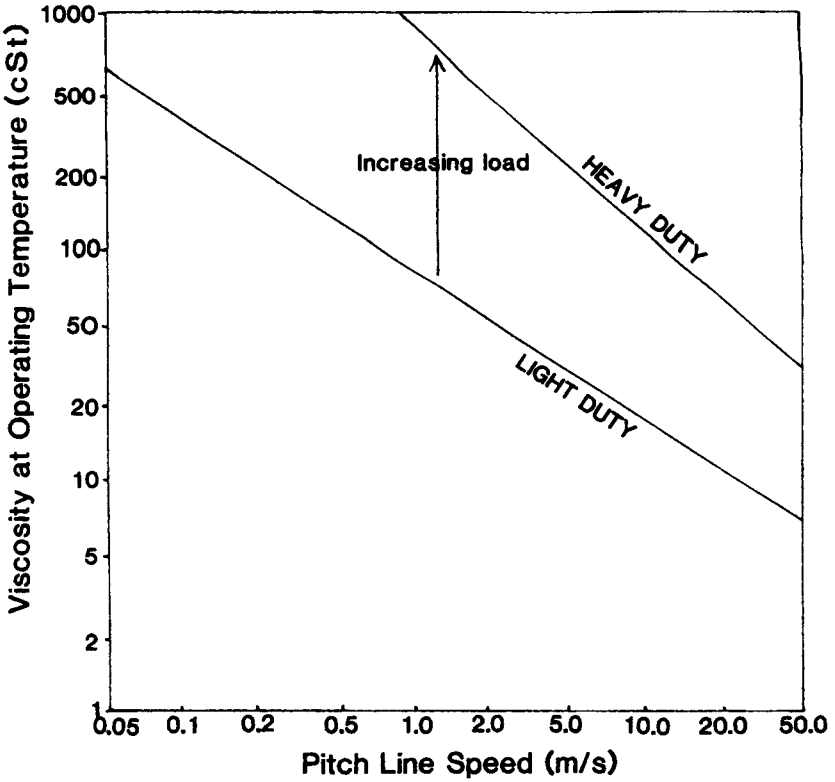


Fig. 4.3 Viscosity selection for gears

stances, for example during start-up or run-down, or when new contact surfaces are running-in. For this reason, most lubricating oils contain a small concentration of anti-wear compounds. These may be natural, like the asphaltenes in a mildly refined oil, or may consist of a small concentration such as 0.1 percent of an anti-wear additive like stearic acid.

There are other systems which have a greater tendency to operate under mild boundary conditions. Hydraulic systems are particularly likely to experience mild wear in components where no mechanism exists to provide an effective lubricant film. These include pistons and cylinders, flat-face and spool valves, and sliding vanes in pumps. It is therefore common practice to add up to 0.5 or 1 percent of a phosphorus-containing anti-wear additive, such as tri-aryl phosphate or ZDDP, to hydraulic fluids.

Mild wear can also easily occur in most types of gear and in rolling bearings with cages, while many simple mechanisms like hinges, pivots and latches are likely to operate entirely under boundary conditions.

For the user, the presence of mild rubbing is usually easy to detect when components are dismantled. It shows initially as a polishing of a surface, and

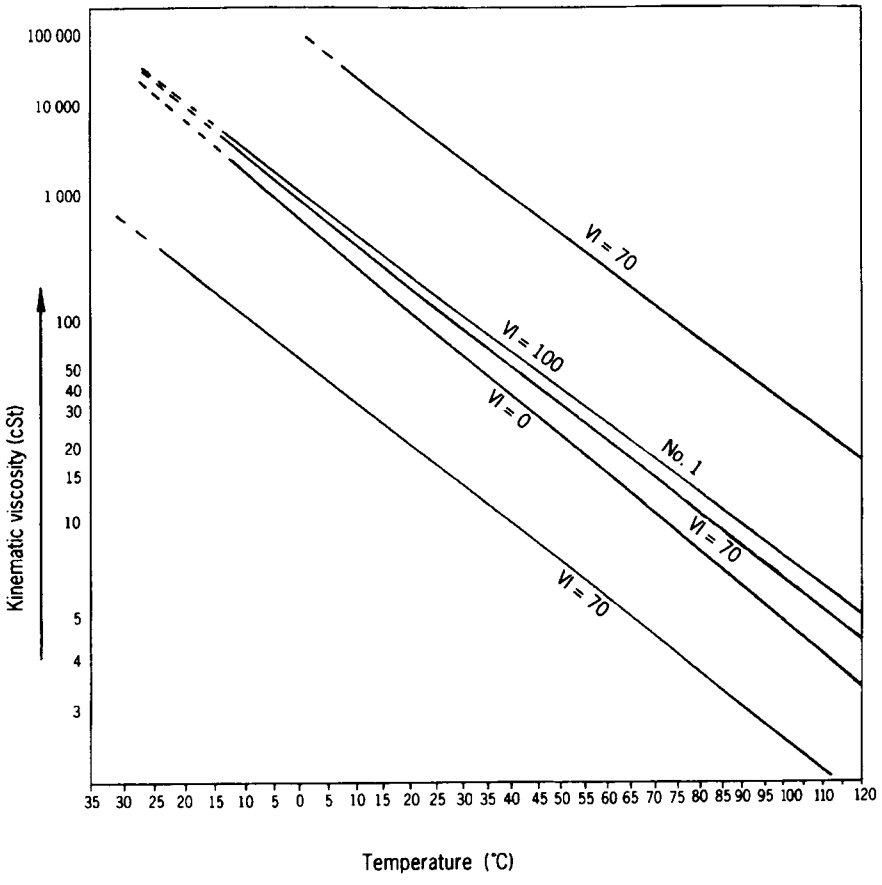


Fig. 4.4 Variation of mineral oil viscosity with temperature

disappearance of the original machining marks. Where it is more fully developed, there will often be an obvious change in dimensions or shape, but without any roughening of the surfaces, or symptoms of overheating, tearing, gouging or seizure.

If mild wear seems to be taking place at a faster rate than normal, then it may be that a component is not properly aligned, or is experiencing frequent transient overloads, or even partial lubricant starvation. An attempt should always be made to analyse the cause and correct it.

However, anti-wear additives are mild chemicals which are unlikely to cause any significant damage to materials or components. This means that a change in lubricant to one having an anti-wear additive, or a more powerful anti-wear additive, may help to reduce a mild wear problem, and is never likely to cause any harm.

The use of extreme-pressure (EP) additives is more complicated. It is also likely to be more critical, because the damage they are intended to combat

is much more serious, and because they themselves can produce undesirable side-effects. There are several specific guidelines to the situations in which EP additives should be used, but these are much less precise than are guidelines to viscosity selection.

In ball or roller bearings the need for EP additives depends on the dynamic load on the bearings. Manufacturers' catalogues quote a dynamic load rating C for every type of bearing. They also indicate how to calculate the equivalent dynamic load P, which takes into account the radial and axial loads on the bearing in operation.

It is recommended that EP lubricants should be used in ball bearings when P is greater than 0.25C, and in roller bearings when P is greater than 0.15C.

It is also recommended that EP lubricants should be used in ball or roller bearings when the lubricant film is less than 20 percent thicker than the combined surface roughness. This may also apply to some types of gear where the contact loads are high, especially where the sliding speed between teeth is high, as in spiral bevel gears. EP oils must always be used in hypoid gears.

In general these rules about the use of EP additives do not take account of bearing speeds. The conventional EP additives containing phosphorus or sulphur depend on high asperity contact temperatures for their action, and these tend to arise at high sliding speeds. Such additives are also fully dissolved in the oil, so that there are no flow problems in high-speed bearings.

Where high contact pressures and scuffing occur in low-speed bearings, solid lubricant additives like molybdenum disulphide or graphite can give huge increases in load-carrying capacity, but they are not suitable for use in bearings or gears operating at high speed because they have an adverse effect on the flow properties of the oil. In addition they cannot be used in low-viscosity oils because they tend to sediment out.

The most powerful chlorine and sulphur-containing EP additives are needed in metalworking lubricants, but this is a specialized subject which will be discussed separately.

4.4 Other additives

Table 4.3 lists various types of equipment with the additives which are usually used in them. Most of the additives have been mentioned previously.

Anti-foam additives are usually low-viscosity dimethyl silicones or other polymers. They can be useful in any system where the surface of a lubricant is highly agitated, although in some cases, especially hydraulic systems, careful design of the system can eliminate foaming problems.

Friction modifiers are used to provide the critical frictional properties of automatic transmission fluids, and prevent juddering or squealing when gear changes take place. Similar compounds are also used in limited-slip

Table 4.3 Additives used for specific types of equipment

Equipment	*Additives used*
Petrol (spark-ignition) engines	Anti-oxidant, rust inhibitor, corrosion inhibitor, viscosity index improver, detergent/dispersant, anti-wear
Diesel engines	Anti-oxidant, corrosion inhibitor, detergent/dispersant, anti-wear, anti-foam, basic additive (to neutralize acids)
Steam turbines, compressors	Anti-oxidant, corrosion inhibitor, anti-wear, demulsifier
Gears, spur or bevel	Anti-wear, anti-oxidant, anti-foam, sometimes corrosion inhibitor
Gears, spiral bevel or hypoid	Extreme pressure, anti-oxidant, anti-foam
Gears, worm	Anti-oxidant, corrosion inhibitor, mild boundary additive (e.g. fatty oil)
Machine tool slideways	Friction modifier, anti-oxidant, corrosion inhibitor
Hydraulic systems	Anti-oxidant, anti-wear, anti-foam, corrosion inhibitor, pour point depressant, viscosity index improver
Automatic transmissions	Anti-oxidants, anti-wear additives, friction modifiers, corrosion inhibitors

differentials and lubricated clutches. Friction-control additives are also becoming important in engine oils, which have the most complex additive packages.

4.5 Selection of base oil

It was said earlier that well over 90 percent of lubricants are based on mineral oils because of their availability, low cost and suitability for the majority of applications. This wide suitability is of course partly because so much lubricated equipment has been developed in association with mineral oils. However, not all mineral oils are equally suitable for all applications.

Naphthenic oils are particularly suitable for low temperatures, such as in refrigerator oils. They are also better solvents than paraffinic oils and this has two different advantages: (a) The technical problem of dissolving or dispersing many additives is simpler with naphthenic oils; and (b) they are also better at keeping contaminants or degradation products in solution.

The disadvantages of naphthenic oils are mainly at higher temperatures, since their viscosity index and oxidation resistance are both inferior to those of paraffinic oils. There is a continuing trend to higher operating temperatures

in all sorts of plant and equipment, and the demand for paraffinic lubricating oils has grown more quickly than the demand for naphthenic lubricants. This has resulted in higher prices for paraffinic lubricants, so that naphthenic oils tend to have the extra advantage of lower cost. However, this difference is not as marked as it might be. Naphthenic oils are widely used for non-lubricant purposes, such as in fuel oils, agricultural spray oils and rubber extender oils, where their better solvent properties are beneficial. They are also used as base stocks for hydrocracking processes, to produce high-grade paraffinic base oils.

Conversely, paraffinic oils are preferred where operating temperatures are high, because of their high viscosity index and good oxidation resistance, particularly with anti-oxidants.

The use of non-mineral oils is correspondingly small, although the consumption of synthetic hydrocarbons, especially polyalphaolefines, and of esters, is increasing. Some of the major uses of non-mineral oils have been mentioned in Chapter 3. Table 4.4 lists the most important properties and some of the principal applications. Synthetic oils are always more expensive than mineral oils, and are used only where their particular advantages justify their cost. The two most frequent reasons for using non-mineral oils are higher temperatures and fire resistance.

4.5.1 *High temperatures*

The approximate temperature limits for mineral oils and some common synthetic oils are shown in Figs 3.5 and 3.6 respectively. These give some guidance to the selection of base oils for particular temperatures. However, among the high-temperature oils only synthetic hydrocarbons, polyglycols, di-esters and polyol esters are good lubricants, and all three are extensively used in high-temperature situations. Synthetic hydrocarbons are becoming widely used in engine oils, but are also used in industrial applications and in high-temperature greases. Di-esters and polyol esters are used in very large quantities as aircraft gas turbine engine lubricants, and in smaller quantities in automotive engine oils and metal rolling oils.

Polyglycols are used as gear lubricants, and blended into certain aircraft gas turbine engine oils. One important use is in ovens or furnaces where the temperature is so high that any lubricating oil will decompose. Polyglycols have the major advantage that when they decompose they do so cleanly, without leaving any deposits of carbon or ash. For this type of application they are often used with graphite dispersed in them to provide a second lubricant stage after the polyglycol has decomposed.

Silicones, polyphenyl ethers and perfluoropolyethers all have poor boundary lubrication performance, which cannot at present be improved by additives. As a result they can only be used where contact pressures are low or full lubricant film separation can be maintained.

Table 4.4 Properties of some synthetic lubricants

Fluid / *Property*	*Di-ester*	*Polyol ester*	*Synthetic hydrocarbon (PAO)*	*Typical phosphate ester*
Maximum temperature in absence of oxygen (°C) (T_D)	270	310	340	120
Maximum temperature in presence of oxygen (°C) (100 hours)	190	220	150	120
Minimum temperature due to increase in viscosity (°C)	–50	–40	–50	–55
Density (g/ml)	0.91	1.01	0.87	1.12
Viscosity index	145	135	130	0
Boundary lubrication	Good	Good	Fair	Very good
Suitable rubbers	Nitrile, silicone	Nitrile silicone	Nitrile	Butyl, ethylene-propylene rubber
Effect on plastics	May act as plasticizer	May act as plasticizer	Slight	Powerful solvent
Resistance to attack by water	Good	Good	Excellent	Fair
Effect on metals	Slightly corrosive to non-ferrous metals	Slightly corrosive to non-ferrous metals	None	Enhanced corrosion in presence of water
Applications	High temperatures; gas turbines	High temperatures; gas turbines	High temperatures	Fire resistance

Typical methyl silicone	*Typical phenyl methyl silicone*	*Polyglycol (inhibited)*	*Chlorinated diphenyl*	*Polyphenyl ether*	*Typical perfluoro-polyether*
315	350	260	315	450	380
210	260	200	145	350	300
-50	-30	-20	-10	5	-30
0.97	1.06	1.02	1.42	1.19	1.84
200	175	160	–200 to +25	–60	280
Fair but poor for steel on steel	Fair but poor for steel on steel	Very good	Very good	Fair	Poor
Neoprene, viton	Neoprene, viton	Nitrile	Viton	(None for very high temperatures)	None for very high temperatures)
Slight, but may leach out plasticizers	Slight, but may leach out plasticizers	Generally mild	Powerful solvent	Polyimides satisfactory	Some softening when hot
Very good	Very good	Good	Excellent	Very good	Very good
Non-corrosive	Non-corrosive	Non-corrosive	Some corrosion of copper alloys	Non-corrosive	Very slight but unsafe with aluminium and magnesium
High temperature; chemical stability	High temperature; chemical stability	Mixed with water; ovens; worm gears	Fire resistance	Very high temperature	Very high temperature

4.5.2 Fire resistance

There are two categories of fire-resistant base oil, the fully synthetic ones and those containing water.

The water-containing oils are obviously limited in use to the temperature range 0 °C to about 80 °C. The oil-in-water emulsions contain only a small proportion of mineral oil (less than 5 percent) to give some lubrication performance, but are still poor lubricants. They are used as hydraulic fluids (HFAE fluids) and in metalworking. The water-in-oil or invert emulsions contain at least 30 percent of water to give effective fire resistance, but they are good lubricants, and are also used as hydraulic fluids (HFB fluids). Finally the water–polyglycol fluids (HFC fluids) also contain at least 30 percent of water for fire resistance. With up to 60 percent of water they are good lubricants, but they are very widely used with 95 percent water as hydraulic fluids, especially in mining; in those concentrations they are mediocre lubricants.

For fire resistance at higher temperatures three types of synthetic oil can be used. The most common are phosphate esters (HFDR fluids), which have excellent fire resistance, and are excellent lubricants, but decompose fairly rapidly above about 130 °C. For even higher temperatures perfluoropolyethers have excellent fire resistance and can be used up to about 300 °C, but are poor lubricants and are extremely expensive. Chlorinated biphenyls are also good lubricants which can be used to about 145 °C, but as mentioned earlier, their use is disappearing.

4.6 Automotive engine oils

Any description of lubricating oils would be incomplete without consideration of oils for vehicle engines. These oils are used in greater quantity than all other lubricants combined, and are of interest to more people than any other lubricants. In most developed countries vehicle ownership is almost universal, and even in less highly industrialized countries vehicle ownership is widespread. For most vehicle owners their vehicles also represent a major financial concern.

However, as far as the selection of lubricants is concerned, for most owners the best advice on selecting engine oils can be summed up in one sentence: 'Almost always follow the recommendations of the vehicle manufacturer'. The reasons for this are as follows.

(a) The oils recommended by the vehicle manufacturer will normally have been thoroughly tested in all the normal combinations of engine, vehicle and operating conditions.

(b) In the unlikely event of an oil-related problem arising while the recommended lubricants are being used, the onus will be on the manufacturer to sort it out.

(c) The potential benefits from using a non-recommended lubricant or additive are likely to be small in comparison with the possibility of any harm arising to the engine or associated equipment.
(d) Use of a non-recommended oil during the warranty period may be alleged to invalidate the warranty.

There may, of course, be situations in which this advice will not be valid. The advice of the manufacturer may occasionally be wrong. Owners of classic cars, or other older vehicles, may well find that the recommended oils are no longer available, if indeed any particular oils were ever recommended at all. Even with newer cars their owners may find that the oils which were originally recommended are no longer available, or are not available in other countries or continents. In fact the problem of ensuring what is called 'backwards compatibility' can arise even with relatively young vehicles, and this problem will be mentioned again in Chapter 11.

There are also many expert operators such as racing and rally drivers or fleet operators whose experience has shown them that an alternative oil has benefits, and who are happy to accept the responsibility of making their own lubricant choice. The lubricants recommended by vehicle manufacturers tend to be top-selling brands produced by major oil companies, since those companies are the ones in a position to carry out extensive, and expensive, engine tests. There are many alternative lubricants available, as well as supplements for addition to engine oils.

Oil supplements for addition to engine oils are usually sold for one of three reasons. Some are claimed to improve fuel economy by reducing friction inside the engine, and these usually consist of dispersions of solid lubricants such as molybdenum disulphide or polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) in a suitable base oil. There have been many publications supporting the claims that such supplements reduce fuel consumption, although the reductions are usually small compared with the improvements which have been achieved by recent engine oil development. However, there is certainly little evidence of any adverse effect from their use.

The second type of oil supplement is usually intended to reduce wear of the engine, or of some specific component of the engine, while the third type increases the life of the oil. In either case the supplement will probably consist of a concentrated dispersion of conventional additives such as anti-oxidants, anti-wear additives and dispersants. These will certainly boost the additive concentrations in the engine oil and delay additive depletion, but may not do anything to cope with a build-up of degradation products or contaminants.

For fleet operators the use of alternative brands of engine oil may be more attractive, since even a small reduction in purchase price or fuel consumption may be significant when totalled over a large fleet. There are a number of smaller lubricant suppliers whose business is based on contract supply to

fleet operators. Such suppliers will normally buy complete additive packages from additive specialists, and blend them into similar base oils. Their products will then in many cases be similar in composition to those of the major oil companies, lacking mainly the guarantee implied by a vehicle manufacturer's recommendation.

The following pages may be helpful to those who do select their own engine oils, but are likely to be mainly of background interest to those who rely on the recommendations of the vehicle manufacturers.

For more than 70 years almost all engine oils have been mineral oils. Prior to that period considerable quantities of vegetable oils were also used, the most important being castor oil. Castor oil is now only used for a few antique cars and aircraft, but where it is used care must be taken that mineral oil and castor oil are not mixed, as the two types are not compatible.

The oils used for diesel or petrol engines are generally similar in the type of base-stock used and in their viscosity grades. They differ mainly in their additive contents, but even those are becoming increasingly alike.

Since the 1950s there have been major changes in automotive engines, especially spark-ignition engines (gasoline or petrol engines, often misleadingly called 'Otto-cycle' engines). These changes have equally affected their lubricating oils. Before that time most gasoline engines had carburettors and were separately lubricated from their associated gearboxes. Some of the engine changes have been simply technical progress, such as would probably be expected in a period which represents half the history of motor vehicles. These changes include the wide introduction of automatic transmissions, increasing use of integral gearboxes, and supercharging.

However, one major factor leading to engine and oil changes has been the pressure to reduce environmental pollution from vehicle exhausts. The first example was the campaign to eliminate lead from gasoline, which resulted in its complete elimination in many countries, although not yet worldwide. Similar pressure to reduce sulphur levels, especially from diesel fuels, has brought about a major reduction in sulphur contents. Within a very few years there will be mandatory use of 'zero-sulphur' (actually less than 10 or 15 p.p.m.) fuels in many countries.

The greatest concern has arisen from the recognition of the problem of global warming, caused largely by the effects of so-called 'greenhouse gases' which damage the earth's ozone layer. Quantitatively the most damaging of these gases is carbon dioxide, produced to a considerable extent by the combustion of carbon-containing fuels. Nitrogen oxides in automotive exhaust gases, hydrocarbons from inefficiently burned fuel, and carbonaceous particles, chiefly from diesel exhausts, are also major concerns.

The use of conventional hydrocarbon fuels produces a quantity of carbon dioxide greater than the weight of fuel used. The only way to cut down the amount of carbon dioxide emitted is to reduce the consumption of hydrocarbon fuels. Several of the techniques for achieving this have so far

had little effect on the engine lubricants. These include the search for alternative fuels such as biomass fuels and hydrogen, direct fuel injection in gasoline engines and reducing the proportion of fuel in the combustion mixture. This latter technique, the so-called 'lean-burn' system, does have some effect because it tends to raise combustion temperatures.

However, a significant part of the fuel consumed in an engine is needed to overcome internal friction in the engine itself and in the associated transmissions; this is directly related to the performance of the lubricant.

The other undesirable components of the exhaust gas can be reduced by the use of catalytic convertors to remove nitrogen oxides, sulphur oxides, hydrocarbons and carbon monoxide. Filters may also be able to reduce particulate emissions, although they are not yet widely used. A major improvement may be achieved by exhaust gas recirculation (EGR) in which part of the exhaust gas is cooled and recirculated with the induction air. Both EGR and catalytic convertors have important connotations for the engine lubricant.

The internal friction in the engine and the transmission is partly viscous friction within the oil itself, and partly boundary friction, as explained in Chapter 1. In all types of automotive engine there is a high proportion of viscous friction, although the proportion of boundary friction is higher in gasoline engines than in diesel engines. To reduce the wastage of fuel in overcoming internal friction it is therefore important to reduce the oil viscosity while at the same time ensuring that the boundary friction, as well as wear, are not increased.

Fifty years ago most engine oils were single grades, meeting only one of the categories listed in Table 3A.1, such as SAE 20 or SAE 30. In places experiencing a wide variation in temperature between summer and winter it was common practice to change the oil to a less viscous grade in winter. A disadvantage of single-grade oils was that if the viscosity was low enough to ensure reliable starting when cold, then it was difficult to achieve a high enough viscosity for effective lubrication in hot locations such as cylinders when the engine was fully warmed up.

Most engine oils are now multigrades, meeting both a low-temperature limit and a requirement at 100 °C. Similar engines used in stationary applications, such as diesel engines in generator sets in pumping stations or lighthouses, especially where they are not subject to extreme temperature variations, may still use single-grade oils.

The earliest multigrade oils in gasoline engines were probably SAE 15W40 or SAE 20W50. These gave very effective lubrication but at the expense of high viscous friction. In order to reduce viscous friction there has been a progressive reduction in viscosity levels. The use of multigrade oils in diesel engines was slower to develop, and the high-viscosity multigrades were never widely adopted for diesels.

The oils used in both gasoline and diesel engines are now commonly

15W40, but there is increasing pressure from engine and vehicle manufacturers for the use of 5W30, 5W20 or even 0W20 oils in order to meet current and future emission regulations. A change from 20W50 to 5W20 means a reduction of about 60 percent in high-temperature viscosity. This gives a useful reduction in friction, but also results in a smaller margin for maintaining full fluid film separation of the lubricated surfaces.

Heavy-duty diesel engines operate much of the time with full fluid film separation of their surfaces, but a potential problem with lower viscosity oils is the presence of soot particles which can bridge the fluid film and cause increased friction and wear. In gasoline engines boundary conditions exist more often than in heavy-duty diesels, especially in the valve train (timing belt, camshaft, tappets, push-rods etc.) and this is associated with generally more variable operating conditions.

The high viscosity index of both gasoline and diesel multigrade oils is obtained by using polymeric VI improvers and highly refined paraffinic Group III base oils. The small margin of viscosity available to maintain fluid film separation of surfaces means that it is important to try to ensure that the initial viscosity levels are maintained in service. The VI should therefore be achieved as far as possible by use of Group III base oils, whose inherent high VI does not significantly deteriorate in service. Any VI improvers used must have a high degree of shear stability to minimize breakdown in use.

It seems probable that in the near future the more widely used economy oils will be 10W30, but there can be little doubt that the less viscous 5W20 and 0W20 oils will follow before long.

The use of less viscous oils has inevitably led to a greater tendency to boundary operation, and a need for improved additive formulations to ensure that there is no increase in boundary friction and wear. Formulations now include friction-control additives to reduce friction in boundary lubrication.

Unfortunately the catalytic converters used to reduce undesirable emissions are adversely affected ('poisoned') by certain elements, including phosphorus. As a result limits are being placed on the use of phosphorus-containing additives such as the zinc dialkyldithio-phosphates which are the best and most widely used boundary additives and anti-oxidants.

Exhaust gas recirculation (EGR) is expected to be an important technique for reducing the emission of nitrogen oxides as well as some of the other undesirable pollutants. Some of the potential disadvantages of EGR are increased wear, corrosion and deposit problems. These will make necessary further increases in the sophistication of additive formulations and additional qualification tests. Some engine manufacturers have indicated that it will be some time before they are ready to introduce EGR.

The additives used in engine oils include anti-oxidants, anti-wear additives, corrosion inhibitors, anti-foam additives, detergents, dispersants and often pour point depressants. Older diesel engine oils contained compounds such as over-based calcium additives to neutralize acids formed by combustion of

sulphur in the fuel. Where sulphur is virtually eliminated, the need for such additives disappears, but where it is still present, as in marine diesels and in some less-industrialized countries, they will still be needed.

The performance of gasoline engine oils is commonly rated by the American API and ILSAC rating schemes, or equivalent European ACEA, Japanese JASO, and Russian GOST and AAE systems. These systems are described in Chapter 11. Most modern oils are rated SH, SJ or SL, but older ratings SB, SC, SD and SE are still used in some parts of the world.

Diesel oil performance is also rated by similar schemes which are described in Chapter 11. Modern oils are generally rated CF, CG or CH with sub-classifications such as CF-4 for heavy four-stroke diesel engines, but again earlier ratings such as CD and CE are still in use in some places.

Since some gasoline engine oils and diesel engine oils have similar formulations and performances, an oil may have both an S and a C rating, indicating that it is suitable for use in both gasoline and light diesel engines.

In recent years there has been some increase in the use of 'synthetic' engine oils, especially for gasoline engines. These consist mainly of synthetic hydrocarbons, chiefly polyalphaolefines (PAO), which are known as Group IV base oils. However, synthetic hydrocarbons have a reduced tendency to cause the small amount of rubber swell which is useful in sealing, and may even cause seals to shrink slightly. A small amount of a synthetic ester is therefore often blended into a synthetic hydrocarbon in order to give it the same rubber swell characteristics as a typical mineral oil.

Synthetic oils have better resistance to oxidation than conventional mineral oils, although some Group III mineral oils can be as good as synthetics. These oils can therefore withstand higher operating temperatures. The small amount of added synthetic ester also improves the boundary lubrication.

Two further environmental concerns are putting pressure on the development of engine lubricants. The first is to reduce emissions which arise from the oil itself, as opposed to those arising from combustion of the fuel. This encourages the use of synthetics, which have relatively low volatility for a particular viscosity grade. However, the second environmental concern is for improved biodegradability to cope with the problem of the considerable quantities of oil which enter the wider environment. Synthetic hydrocarbons have poor biodegradability, and much research is under way to find suitable alternative base-stocks. Synthetic esters are more readily biodegradable than mineral oils, but another possible alternative is the use of chemically modified vegetable oils.

It is a remarkable achievement that in spite of all the factors requiring improved performance of engine oils, oil-change periods (or drain intervals) have been progressively increased from a typical 3000 km relatively few years ago to current targets of 30 000 km for gasoline engines and 150 000 km for heavy diesels.

Lubricants for large marine diesel engines have not yet suffered the same

environmental pressures as their land-based equivalents, although it seems inevitable before long. In many cases it is mandatory to use a lubricant specified by the engine manufacturer on the basis of service trials, and the question of lubricant selection therefore does not arise.

Until recently engines for light water craft have also escaped environmental pollution regulation, but that situation appears to be changing. A huge number of outboard motors in small marine craft, especially in North America, have been two-strokes, and it is very difficult to do anything to improve the poor quality of two-stroke exhausts.

There may therefore be an increase in the number of four-stroke engines used in such applications, and the developments described previously for land-based engines will then apply equally to marine engines.

4.7 Vehicle transmission lubricants

The traditional manual transmission or gearbox still dominates the vehicle market in Europe and in many other parts of the world. In the United States, Canada and Japan stepwise automatic transmissions are almost universally used in passenger cars. Continuously variable transmissions have made considerable progress in recent years, especially for small cars, and several types of automated manual transmission are currently under development.

As with engine oils, lubricants for all these types of transmission are subject to environmental pressures to reduce frictional power loss in order to economize on fuel, and to achieve longer life, preferably equal to vehicle life. In some countries they are also required to operate satisfactorily at progressively lower temperatures.

Lower viscosity helps to provide both fuel saving and low-temperature operation, but leads to a need for high viscosity index to maintain adequate lubrication at normal operating temperature. The low-viscosity naphthenic Group I oils which have been used in some transmission fluids are no longer adequate, and there is a tendency to change to Group II or Group III paraffinic or even Group IV synthetic base oils.

Manual gearbox lubricants generally have the simplest requirements, and their additives include anti-wear, anti-oxidant, anti-foam and corrosion inhibitors. However, there are conflicting demands in that low-temperature operation and fuel economy require low friction and low viscosity, while syncromesh systems need a positive level of friction to be maintained. The result is that friction-control additives are likely to become generally used, even in manual gearboxes. Many vehicle manual gearboxes now share a common lubricant system with the engine.

Some of the automated manual transmissions are simply manual transmissions with an electrically operated clutch, and their lubricant requirements are similar to those of conventional manual gearboxes, with the

one additional constraint that they must be compatible with any contacting electrical equipment. More advanced developments such as dual-clutch transmissions are more demanding and need very effective friction-control additives.

Fully automatic stepwise transmissions with the facility to revert to semi-manual operation have been standard in North America for many years. They also need very effective friction-control additives to give smooth clutch actuation.

Continuously variable transmissions (CVTs) have lubricant requirements very similar to those of automatic transmissions, but they also need very effective lubrication of steel against steel in the variator which continuously varies the gear ratio. This leads to degradation of some of the additives, so that a major and difficult target for CVT lubricants at present is to increase lubricant life.

Overall, it can be seen that lubrication of transmissions is becoming much more sophisticated. Selection of lubricants for modern and future gearboxes is likely to need a much higher level of expertise than for old-fashioned ones. The best advice, as for vehicle engines, will almost certainly be to use the lubricant recommended by the vehicle supplier.

4.8 Metalworking lubricants

The properties required of metalworking lubricants differ considerably from those required in ordinary bearings and gears. The surfaces which have to be lubricated are the contacting surfaces of the tool and the workpiece, so that in many operations it is not possible to separate the two surfaces, but they must not seize or break, and the tool must not wear out too quickly.

Metals seize, or weld together, much more readily at high temperatures, so one of the most important properties of a metalworking lubricant is not lubrication but cooling, and those used for metalcutting are often simply called coolants. However, there is another factor in metalworking which tends to cause seizure.

It was explained in Chapter 1 how freshly exposed metal surfaces, without a protective oxide film, will easily weld together. In metalworking the main result is to create freshly exposed metal surface, so that there is a very high tendency to adhesion.

The actual requirements vary considerably between different metalworking processes. It is impossible to give guidance on the selection of the best coolant or lubricant for a particular process without either going into great detail about composition or listing various manufacturers' brand names. Listing brand names is in any case of limited value because products may be modified fairly often. This is one area in which the user must generally rely on the literature of the oil suppliers, but most major suppliers give a great deal of guidance.

The following paragraphs are only intended to give a few examples of the types of lubricant needed for different metalworking processes.

4.8.1 *Extrusion, tube drawing and wire drawing*

These are examples of processes in which very high loads are used to produce very high deformations of the workpiece. The rate of movement may or may not be exceptionally high, but the main problem is to reduce the friction to permit movement to occur at all. The general approaches are to use highly viscous materials or low-friction materials. The viscous materials include soaps, chlorinated waxes and animal fats, or molten glass for high temperatures. The low-friction materials include solid lubricants and chlorinated or sulphurized boundary additives, while a vast variety of alkyl and metal stearates are used which probably help to provide viscosity and low friction.

4.8.2 *Rolling*

The object of the lubricant in metal rolling is to control the friction and to prevent the rolled stock from sticking to the rolls. Rolling oils include kerosene, synthetic oils and many types of emulsion, all including various mild boundary additives such as stearates and oleates.

The formulation and maintenance of rolling emulsions is quite critical. The amount of oil present in the emulsion must be kept above the minimum needed to reduce roll wear and prevent the rolled strip from sticking to the work-rolls. If the emulsion is too stable, or 'tight', then the oil droplets will be small, and will not readily 'break' to release oil to lubricate the strip and rolls. On the other hand, if the emulsion is too unstable, or 'loose', then oil will be released too readily. The friction between roll and strip will then be too low, and the work-rolls will not grip the strip and draw it forward through the roll gap.

4.8.3 *Metalcutting*

In metalcutting operations, grinding, drilling, boring, turning, milling and so on, a much higher proportion of freshly exposed metal surface is produced than in any of the so-called 'chipless' forming processes, and the surfaces can become very hot. These two factors lead to a very severe tendency for the chips or the workpiece to adhere to the cutting tool. The problems are therefore to cool the tool and to prevent sticking.

The best coolant is water, and most metalcutting lubricants are water-based. At one time mineral or vegetable oils were used, but the use of water has increased through emulsions of 5–10 percent of oil in water, to so-called 'soluble oils' and semi-synthetics with 0.5–1.0 percent of oil in water, to the

so-called 'synthetics' in which the necessary additives are dispersed or dissolved in water without any oil. Polyglycol/water solutions are also used as metalcutting lubricants. The emulsifiers used are often organic rather than metal-salt detergents, but sodium sulphonates are widely used because they are effective emulsifiers as well as rust inhibitors. Sticking of chips or workpiece to the cutting tool is reduced or eliminated by the use of mild stearate or oleate boundary additives, or powerful EP additives containing sulphur or chlorine.

Efforts have been made by machine-tool and lubricant manufacturers to enable the same lubricant to be used throughout a machine-tool, as bearing and slideway lubricant, cutting fluid and hydraulic fluid. As the proportion of oil in the cutting fluid has decreased, it has become increasingly difficult to lubricate bearings and slideways with it, so there has been only very limited success in using the same lubricant for all three purposes.

Emulsions are very susceptible to microbiological attack by bacteria and fungi, so it is now normal practice to include a biocide in cutting fluids. However, a recent European Union directive may result in biocides being more commonly added on site rather than in the original formulation.

4.9 Process fluids as lubricants

The term 'process fluids' is used here to include any liquids which are present in or near the equipment for some purpose other than lubrication. They may be coolants, refrigerants, fuels, raw materials or products in the chemical industry, syrups or melts in the food industry, treatment liquids or liquors in tanning or paper-making and so on.

Almost any of these liquids can be used as a lubricant, but they present one problem which makes them quite different from ordinary lubricants. That is, that their properties are fixed by the main purpose of their existence, and their composition or properties cannot usually be changed to make them better lubricants. It follows that with process fluids, to a much greater extent than with ordinary lubricants, the bearing must be designed to suit the lubricant.

The variety of problems in using process fluids as lubricants is so great that it may be simplest to illustrate their use by a few examples.

(a) *Refrigerants and cryogenic liquids.* The main problem in using refrigerants or cryogenic liquids (i.e. liquefied gases such as liquid oxygen, nitrogen or methane) as lubricants is that their viscosities are far too low to give good hydrodynamic lubrication. On the other hand, they are such powerful coolants that they can reduce or even completely prevent those types of wear or seizure which are encouraged by frictional heating. They can therefore be used in ball or roller bearings or in polymeric plain bearings, provided that the speed and load are kept low enough to prevent

overheating. Pumps in refrigeration systems may be lubricated in this way.

(b) *Syrups or melts*. These liquids, as well as others such as paints and low molecular weight polymers, have high viscosities, and can give very effective hydrodynamic lubrication. They can be used to lubricate plain bearings or even certain types of gear. One problem is that the viscosity usually changes considerably with temperature, so that heating due to friction or high viscous drag can lower the viscosity and reduce their lubricating ability. Alternatively, if they cool in the bearing they may become too viscous to move. To avoid these problems it may be necessary to surround the bearing with a heating or insulating jacket to keep it at a constant temperature, and once again to ensure that the speed and load are not high enough to cause unacceptable frictional heating. Syrups and molasses have been used in this way to lubricate pump bearings in sugar refineries.

(c) *Treatment liquors, brines and chemicals*. These are again often liquids with low viscosities, but without very low temperatures. They can be used in polymeric plain bearings or with the newer Diamond-Like Carbons and similar materials, provided that they do not attack the bearing material. Alternatively they can be used in 'hydrostatic' or externally pressurized bearings, described briefly in Chapter 1, in which the liquid is pumped in under pressure so that the load is carried by the externally applied pressure.

4.10 Rationalization of lubricating oils

This chapter has dealt with the selection of the best oil for each component. However, by applying these methods to every bearing or gear in a large factory, or even a large machine, the total requirement may be scores, or even hundreds, of different oils.

There are strong arguments for cutting down severely on the number of different oils being used in a plant.

(a) With a large variety of oils, the purchasing and storage problems are increased.

(b) If a smaller variety of oils can be used, they can be bought in larger quantities, with the advantage of bulk price reductions.

(c) With fewer oils in the factory there is less risk of the wrong one being used in a particular application.

The process of reducing the number of different oils used in a factory is called lubricant rationalization, and depends on two considerations: firstly the oil viscosities, and secondly the type of base oil and the additives present.

With regard to viscosity, it was explained earlier that the choice is often not critical, since if a more viscous oil is used the temperature will rise and the viscosity will drop. As long as the increase in viscosity is not too great, the results may well be acceptable.

Table 4.5 ISO viscosity classification

ISO viscosity grade	*Mid-point kinematic viscosity (mm^2/s) at 40 °C*	*Kinematic viscosity limits (mm^2/s) at 40 °C*	
		Minimum	*Maximum*
ISO VG 2	2.2	1.98	2.42
ISO VG 3	3.2	2.88	3.52
ISO VG 5	4.6	4.14	5.06
ISO VG 7	6.8	6.12	7.48
ISO VG 10	10	9.00	11.00
ISO VG 15	15	13.5	16.5
ISO VG 22	22	19.8	24.2
ISO VG 32	32	28.8	35.2
ISO VG 46	46	41.4	50.6
ISO VG 68	68	61.2	74.8
ISO VG 100	100	90.0	110
ISO VG 150	150	135	165
ISO VG 220	220	198	242
ISO VG 320	320	288	352
ISO VG 460	460	414	506
ISO VG 680	680	612	748
ISO VG 1000	1000	900	1100
ISO VG 1500	1500	1350	1650
ISO VG 2200	2200	1980	2420
ISO VG 3200	3200	2880	3520

In practice it has been found that for most applications an increase of 30–50 percent over the ideal viscosity is usually harmless. As a result, national and international standards have been developed in which the whole range of lubricating oils has been reduced to only 18 different viscosity grades, and many engineering organizations will find that they need only three or four of these grades. The 18 grades are listed in Table 4.5, reproduced from British Standard BS 4231 *Viscosity Classification for Industrial Liquid Lubricants* which is technically identical to ISO 3448 and other national and international classifications.

Notice that the viscosities are quoted at the reference temperature of 40 °C, and the British Standard includes a chart to convert the values to three other common reference temperatures, 20, 37.8, and 50 °C for three different viscosity index values.

The selection procedure is therefore to work out the required viscosity at operating temperature and select the viscosity index, then to convert to the equivalent at 40 °C and select the grade giving the nearest *higher* viscosity.

Further rationalization can be achieved by choosing base oil quality and additives such that the performance of the chosen oil meets the most severe

requirements for all the various applications which are being grouped together. For example, the oxidation resistance should be good enough for the highest temperatures, the boundary lubrication adequate for the most severe loadings and the pour points low enough for the coldest starts.

Obviously the effect of this will be to specify a higher quality of oil than is needed for some of the applications, and the cost of this will need to be offset against the benefits of the rationalization. Even more importantly, every chosen oil should be assessed against the specific applications, since problems can occasionally be caused by using additives in the wrong place.

4.11 Summary

The guidance given in this chapter for selecting lubricating oils may seem complicated, and it may help to summarize the different factors as a sort of checklist to be used whenever a lubricating oil is chosen:

(a) Work out the best viscosity for each bearing or gear at the expected operating temperature, either by calculation or by using Tables 4.1 and 4.2, and Figs 4.1 to 4.3.
(b) Decide what viscosity index is needed in order to cover the whole temperature range from coldest starting temperature to hottest operating temperature. (Or because you have to use a high VI oil to obtain the necessary oil quality.)
(c) Convert the viscosity at the operating temperature to the viscosity at the reference temperature, using Figs 3.2 and Fig. 4.4 or BS 4231 (ISO 3448).
(d) Decide which ISO, BS 4231 or SAE grade meets the needs.
(e) Decide what additives are needed.
(f) Decide if a mineral oil will meet the needs, or whether a natural or synthetic oil is needed.
(g) If one machine or item of plant contains several different lubricated components, decide whether the same oil can be used for a number of them, and thus permit the use of a single lubrication system.

Chapter 5

Oil Supply Systems

5.1 Advantages of oil supply systems

Oil lubrication can be made much more effective if some type of re-supply or feed system is used to supply fresh oil to the lubricated surfaces. The benefits obtained can be any of the following depending on the type of feed system used.

(a) *Replacement of used oil by fresh oil.* In this way the oil change period is extended because oxidized or otherwise degraded oil is removed, and replaced by clean oil with a fresh supply of additives.
(b) *Removal of contaminants.* Harmful wear debris and other contaminants are removed from the bearing surfaces, and in some cases can then be filtered or centrifuged from the oil before it is re-circulated to the bearings.
(c) *Cooling.* The temperature of the bearings can be reduced by removal of hot oil and replacement with cooled oil.

There is a very wide variety of different oil feed systems available. They differ in the degree of complication, and therefore in cost and reliability, and in the extent to which they achieve the three benefits listed above. For simplicity they can be grouped and described under the following four broad types:

- total loss (may or may not be centralized);
- ring, disc and splash (self-contained);
- mist and fog (centralized);
- circulation (centralized).

Guidance on the layout of centralized systems is given in British Standard BS 5807 *Recommendations for Centralized Lubrication as Applied to Plant and Machinery.*

5.2 Total loss systems

All total loss oil feed systems are designed to supply a small quantity of oil to each bearing or other lubricated component, without any attempt to control or collect the old oil which is being replaced, or any excess of fresh oil which is supplied. It follows that total loss systems are simpler because they do not need return lines or any of the components which are otherwise used to control and clean the recycled oil.

On the other hand, because the flow rates are kept to a minimum there is no coolant effect, and there may be insufficient flow to remove wear debris or other contaminants. Total loss is also wasteful of oil, and leads to a general oiliness of the equipment and surrounding floors unless care is taken.

5.2.1 *Manual supply*

The simplest form of total loss system is an ordinary hand-held oil can. It has great advantages in permitting individual control of the amount of oil fed to each bearing, and with care it can be highly reliable. It may also be preferred where the bearings are far apart, so that long pipe runs would be needed in a centralized system, or where the weight of a centralized system would be unacceptable, such as in an aircraft.

Its disadvantages are almost entirely those of human weaknesses. Unless the operator is very careful it is easy to miss some of the oiling points, or to fail to check that oil is feeding when the pump is operated. It cannot be used where the feed point is too hot to approach, or out of arm's reach, and the use of manual labour may not be economical.

5.2.2 *Drip feed*

Almost as simple is a drip feed from a reservoir mounted above the bearings.

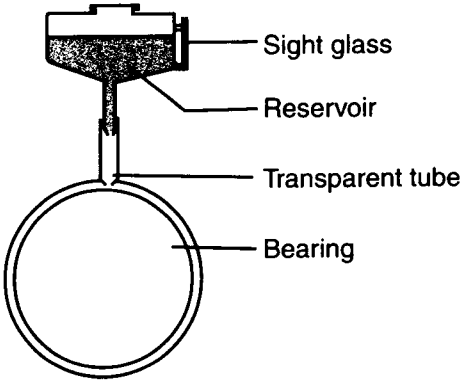


Fig. 5.1 Drip feed

This reduces the labour involved because the reservoir will require less frequent filling, and it may be possible to use it to supply points which are inaccessible to an oil can.

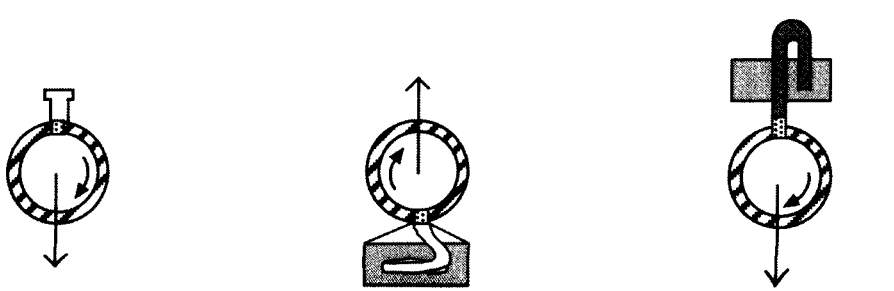
It is more difficult to judge and control the rate of oil flow with a drip feed and as a result there is a tendency to use too much oil. It is also more difficult to detect a blockage in the feed pipe until it becomes obvious that the level in the reservoir is not falling. For this reason it is useful to fit a sight glass to the reservoir and a glass or transparent plastic section in the feed pipe, so that both the oil level and the flow can be seen. Figure 5.1 shows a suitable arrangement for a drip feed.

5.2.3 *Wick and pad lubrication*

Lubrication by wicks and pads is confined almost entirely to small or lightly loaded plain bearings. The term 'wick' is used to describe a long narrow version, while a 'pad' is of virtually any other shape. In fact they both work in the same way, being wet with oil which they transfer by direct contact to the rotating shaft of the bearing, or in the special case of porous metal bearings, to the outside of the porous bush.

In many cases they may contain only a small initial fill of oil, such as in the combined journal and thrust bearings of small electric motors. They increase the total volume of oil available for the bearing, but ultimately the oil content decreases and the bearing will become starved unless the pad can be refilled, for example from an oil can. In other applications they are used in conjunction with an oil reservoir, and transfer oil from the reservoir to the bearing by a capillary or 'wicking' action. Figure 5.2 shows three possible arrangements.

The oil flow rate is limited, so they cannot be used for large or high-speed



(a) Simple wick without reservoir but with facility for adding oil

(b) Lower wick with reservoir for shaft loaded upward

(c) Siphon wick with reservoir for shaft loaded downward

Fig. 5.2 Different forms of wick

bearings. They are useful in dirty conditions because the wick filters dirt out of the oil.

Wick and pad lubrication are very cheap and are widely used in low-duty applications.

5.2.4 *Centralized total loss systems*

All the more complicated, centralized total loss systems can be looked on as developments of the oil can or drip feed to provide better control of the oil supply and the cleanliness of the oil, as well as reducing very considerably the labour involved.

The following factors all favour the use of centralized supply systems:

- a large number of bearings using the same oil;
- bearings located close together, so that pipes are short;
- environment unsuitable for staff to enter;
- oil life short, so that frequent oiling is needed.

Their disadvantages are those of complexity, with high initial and maintenance costs. Cleanliness is particularly important when overhauling them, because the fine orifices are easily blocked by particles of dirt.

It is sometimes claimed that centralized automatic systems are more reliable than the oil can or drip feed, but this is not necessarily so. In all three types the reliability depends on the reliability of the operators, but the greater complexity of centralized systems creates a greater risk of mechanical failure. The results of failing to keep the central reservoir filled in a centralized system will probably be far more serious than failing to oil one bearing with

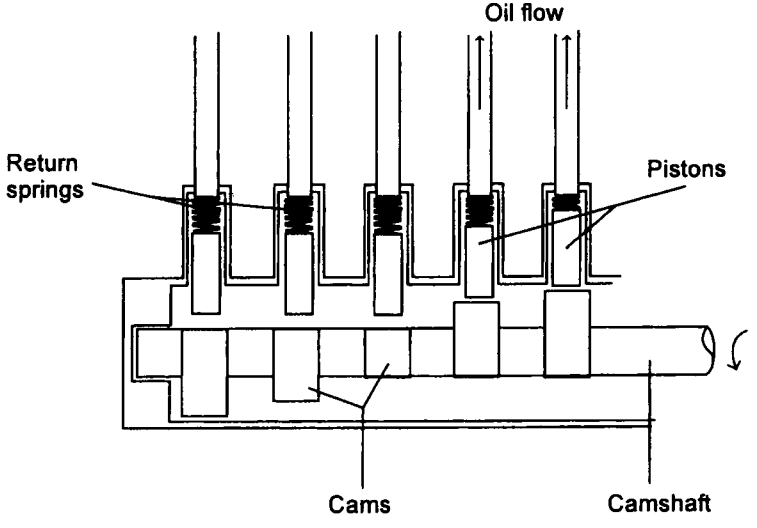


Fig. 5.3 Simple multi-outlet direct total loss system

an oil can. The main advantage of a centralized system from the aspect of reliability is that it is more easily monitored or supervised by more highly trained staff.

Centralized total loss systems are usually manufactured and installed by specialist companies, so it is not proposed to describe them in detail. It may be useful, however, to mention the broad types, the various essential components and some of the factors which need to be considered in selecting them.

Direct systems are those in which the oil passes directly from the pumping device to the lubrication point (bearing, gland, etc.) The pump is usually a positive displacement piston type. The problem of supplying a number of lubrication points can be handled in one of two ways, using single- or multi-piston pumps. A single piston pump with a number of separate outlet ports is a relatively simple economical device where the number of lubricating points is small. More commonly, multi-piston pumps are used in which a separate piston supplies each outlet. The series of pistons will be operated by a cam or cam-shaft, and the volume of oil delivered to each outlet is controlled by adjusting the stroke of the piston. Each piston is spring-loaded, and the return stroke under the action of the spring recharges each cylinder with oil. Figure 5.3 shows a part of a typical multi-outlet direct system.

Indirect systems are those in which the pump supplies pressurized oil to a complex system or manifold, and the supply to individual lubrication points is controlled by separate metering valves. One of the simplest forms is shown in Fig. 5.4. In this type of system the pump supplies oil for a brief period at

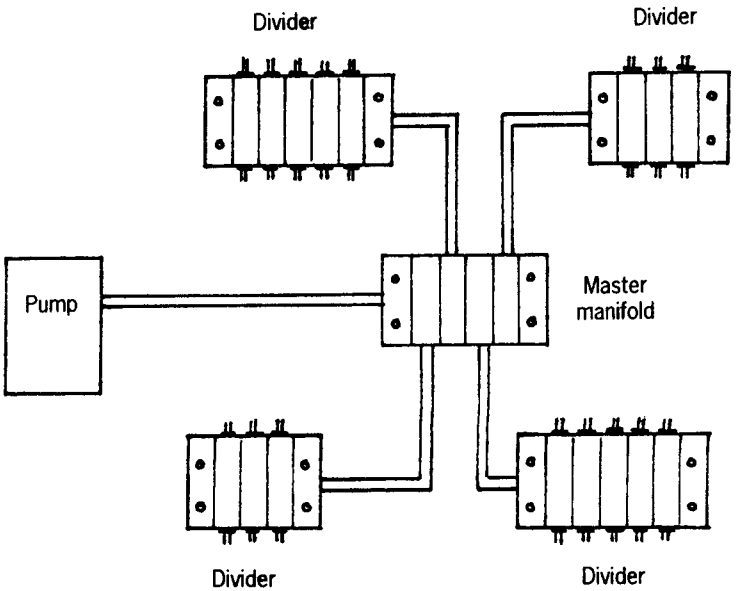


Fig. 5.4 Single-line progressive indirect total loss system

regular intervals. The quantity reaching each lubrication point is determined by the orifice restriction in each valve. A similar type uses a pump to keep the system continuously under pressure, and the meters have very fine capillary orifices.

Other indirect systems use continuous pumps, but the metering valves are operated intermittently.

The following are some of the factors which should be considered in selecting or designing a total loss system.

(a) *Direct or indirect system.* Direct systems have an advantage in that each lubricating point is supplied directly by its own piston pump, so that there is greater certainly that oil will reach the bearing. However, this becomes too complicated if a very large number of points (more than 100) have to be lubricated; indirect systems are mainly used where there are hundreds of lubrication points.

(b) *Flow rate.* It is not possible to give precise guidance as to the required flow rate, because in practice this depends so much on bearing temperature, contamination, slight misalignment and so on.

The amount required for each bearing varies from about 0.01 to 5 ml/h (1 pint in 6 years to 1 gallon in a month) depending on the size and speed of the bearing.

The guidelines shown in Table 5.1 are those published by Interlube Systems Limited for calculating the amount of oil needed for different components in millilitres per hour, and similar systems are used by other

Table 5.1 Oil supply rate (ml/h) for total loss systems (courtesy of Interlube Systems Limited)

Rolling bearings	0.003 × Shaft diameter (mm) × No. of rows
	0.08 × Shaft diameter (in) × No. of rows
Plain bearings	0.0002 × Shaft diameter (mm) × Width (mm)
	0.13 × Shaft diameter (in) × Width (in)
Plain horizontal slides	0.000 05 × Travel (mm) × Width (mm)
	0.032 × Travel (in) × Width (in)
Plain vertical slides	0.0001 × Travel (mm) × Width (mm)
	0.064 × Travel (in) × Width (in)
Anti-friction bearing ways	0.0006 × Travel (mm) × No. of rows
	0.015 × Travel (in) × No. of rows
Cams	0.0003 × Maximum diameter (mm) × Width (mm)
	0.2 × Maximum diameter (in) × Width (in)
Gears	0.0004 × Largest gear diameter (mm) × Width (mm)
	0.25 × Largest gear diameter (in) × Width (in)
Chains	0.000 08 × Length (mm) × Width (mm)
	0.05 × Length (in) × Width (in)

suppliers. The figures apply if the oil viscosity at the operating temperature is between 50 and 500 cSt. They assume that the components are being used within their proper load and speed range, and are in good condition. If, for example, the clearance in a plain bearing is unusually high, perhaps due to wear, then the rate of oil loss from the bearing will be higher, and a correspondingly high feed rate will be needed.

The table is very simple to use. For example, a plain bearing 30 mm in diameter by 20 mm long requiring a 70 cSt oil at operating temperature will need an oil feed of $30 \times 20 \times 0.0002 = 0.12$ ml/h.

However, this should only be considered as a rough initial guide, and a careful eye should be kept on any new installation to make sure that too little oil, or more probably too much, is not being supplied. For critical applications, more accurate, and much more complicated, calculations are available.

(c) *Monitoring supply*. It is important to ensure that oil is actually being fed to each point, especially with indirect systems, and this is usually done by positioning sight glasses as close as possible to the lubrication point. In addition it is essential to make sure that the oil reservoir does not become empty. This can be done by regular inspection, or by a sight glass or some other type of tell-tale mechanism.

On the whole, total loss oil systems are quite reliable and economical to fit and are very widely used, but they are generally wasteful of oil.

5.3 Ring, disc and splash lubrication

Earlier chapters mentioned the use of a small amount of oil in place in the bearing, and the limits on using this technique because of overheating, contamination and oil loss or breakdown. It is possible, of course, just to increase the amount of oil present, without making any other changes in the system.

The first problem which then arises is that as the amount of oil is increased, it starts to leak out of the bearing area. This may be just messy, as in heavy engineering, or absolutely unacceptable, as in food or textile plant. In either case it is wasteful and destroys the benefit of using more oil.

The solution is to seal the various openings including those through which rotating shafts run. Once this has been done the whole enclosed space could in theory be filled with oil, but there are several reasons for not doing so.

(a) The main reason is that if the moving parts are completely immersed the oil becomes continuously stirred. A great deal of power can be lost in this churning of the oil, thus reducing the efficiency of the equipment and causing unnecessary heating of the oil.

(b) If the oil completely fills the enclosed space then as it gets hot in operation it will need to expand, and high pressures and leakage will develop.

(c) The shaft seals are less effective when flooded than they are when simply splashed with oil, so that leakage can become even more of a problem.

A compromise is therefore needed. In practice the total amount of oil is increased by expanding the enclosed space to create a larger reservoir, but the level is arranged so that the moving components are only partly submerged. The submerged parts then pick up oil and fling it, giving splash lubrication of the parts which are above the oil level. The extent to which they are submerged depends on the nature of the moving parts, and there are some simple guidelines which can be used.

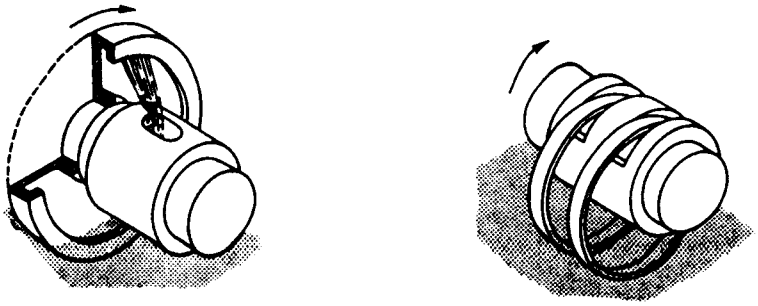
- *Effect of speed.* Obviously the higher the speed the more effective is the splashing, and the greater the churning losses, so that the depth of immersion should be less in high-speed systems.
- *Spur and helical gears.* The gears normally dip into the oil to about twice the tooth height.
- *Worm gears.* Worm half immersed if worm is below wheel. Wheel immersed between tooth depth and half diameter, depending on speed, if worm is above wheel.
- *Crankshafts.* Crankshafts are nowadays usually supplied with pumped oil under pressure, but in small systems they may be splash lubricated. The oil level will generally be arranged to cover the big end bearings at their lowest position, but in very slow systems it may be high enough to submerge the lowest parts of the main bearings. A scoop-shaped collector is sometimes fitted to the big-end bearings to pick up oil and force it into the bearings.
- *Chains.* Oil level high enough to cover the lowest chain links and sprocket teeth.
- *Plain bearings – ring or disc lubrication.* It is not easy to feed oil into a plain bearing by partly submerging it in the oil, because the bottom part of the bearing usually has the highest pressure and the smallest clearance. Oil must be fed into the low-pressure region higher up in the bearing.

  This is commonly done by rotating discs or rings which dip into the oil and transfer it to the top of the bearing. A disc is mounted on the rotating shaft alongside the bearing. It has a hollowed face on the side facing the bearing which picks up oil and throws it into an opening at the top of the bearing, as shown in Fig. 5.5a. If the speed of rotation is too high the oil will be thrown outwards and will not reach the bearings, but disc lubrication can be used if:

  Shaft diameter (mm) × r/min. is less than 200 000
  Shaft diameter (in) × r/min. is less than 8000

  or to higher speeds if the oil is cooled.

  Rings feed oil directly into gaps in the top of the bearing, as shown in Fig. 5.5b. They rest on top of the shaft, and as the shaft rotates it causes the



(a) Disc (b) Ring

Fig. 5.5 Ring and disc lubrication

rings to rotate, but at a lower speed. Rings are generally used at lower shaft speeds than discs, and with heavier oils, but they can be used if:

Shaft diameter (mm) × r/min. is less than 150 000
Shaft diameter (in) × r/min. is less than 6000

5.4 Oil mist or fog systems

A very versatile technique is to circulate oil in the form of minute droplets dispersed in a stream of air. This is also a total loss system, but differs considerably from those described above.

Compressed air, usually from the general shop supply, is filtered and fed through a *generator*, where it picks up the oil in the form of very fine droplets. The air stream is kept at low speed (6 m/s or 20 ft/s) and low pressure [less than 50 mbar or 0.75 psig (lb/in^2 above atmospheric pressure)]. Under these conditions the oil remains dispersed in the air stream and does not settle out on the walls of the tubes.

The mist is passed through plastic, steel or copper tubes to the lubrication points, where it passes through fine nozzles or *reclassifiers* which raise the speed to 45 m/s (150 ft/s) or more and direct it on to the component which is to be lubricated. The tubes must be smooth and clean, without sharp bends, otherwise the oil may settle out too soon; the pipe and nozzle diameters are chosen to divide the oil supply between the various lubrication points.

Once the air speed has been increased, the oil droplets will stick to any surface which they strike. The released oil then lubricates the appropriate components while the air escapes to atmosphere.

Methods are available to calculate the oil and air flow needed, but they are not highly accurate. There is again a tendency to use too much oil to give a safety factor, but oil mist systems are generally less wasteful, cleaner and more reliable than pumped total loss systems.

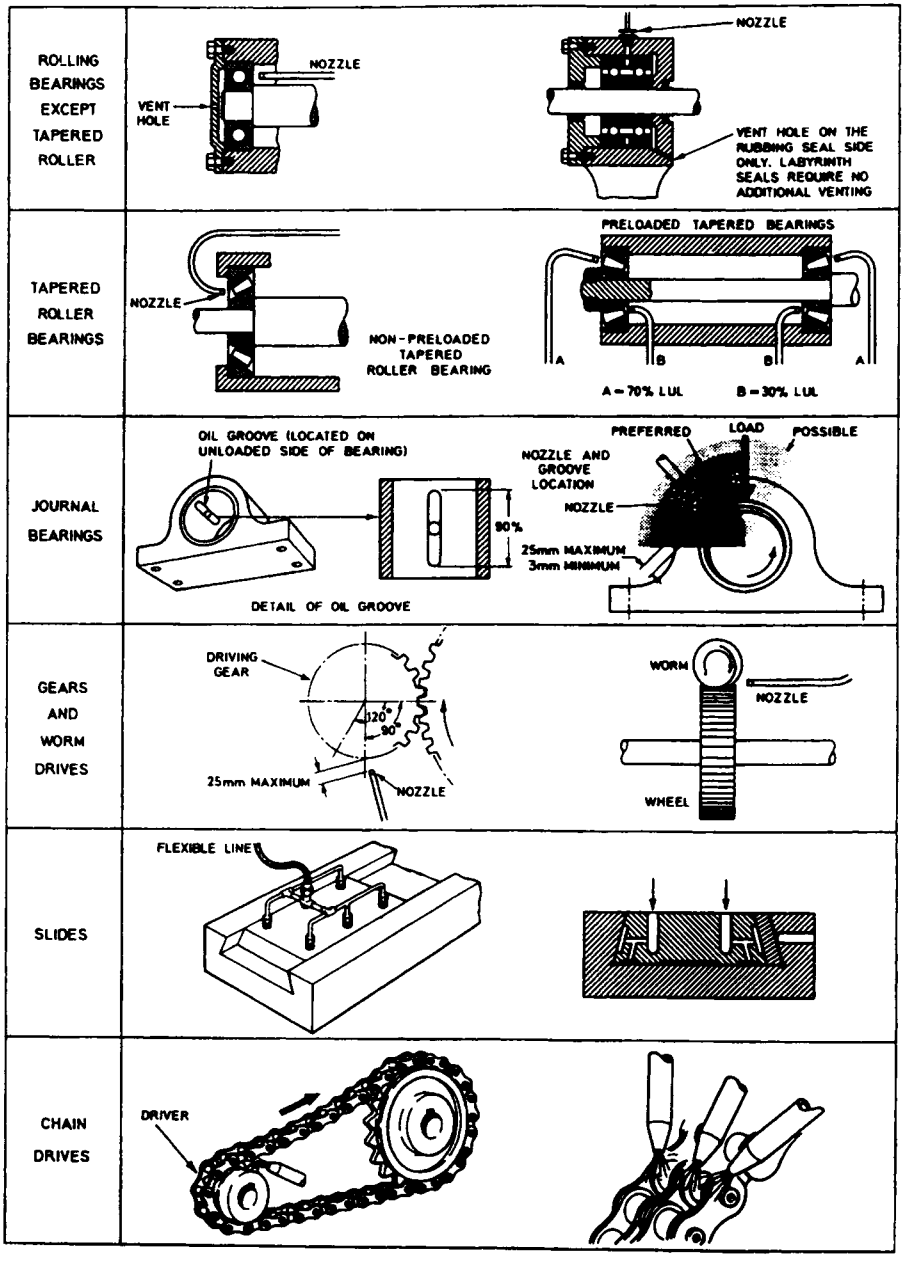


Fig. 5.6 Recommended nozzle positions in oil mist lubrication

Oil mists have one other major advantage in that they give very effective cooling, and they tend to be used for high-speed rolling bearings or for chains in hot environments. They are less easy to use with plain bearings because of the difficulty of feeding the reclassified oil from the nozzle into the bearing clearance.

One major concern with oil mist systems is the amount of oil which can escape with the air into the factory atmosphere. It can be controlled by choosing the right nozzle diameter, properly positioning the nozzle(s) and especially by choosing a suitable oil. Figure 5.6 shows recommended nozzle positions for a variety of different lubricated components.

5.5 Oil circulation systems

Oil circulation systems differ from all those previously described in that the oil is fed into the bearings, gears etc. and then returned to a separate reservoir for re-use. This makes it possible to feed much larger quantities of oil without waste.

A basic oil circulation system consists of a reservoir, a pump, a feed line, one or more lubrication points and a return line.

Where the equipment to be lubricated is small or slow the oil circulation system may be basically similar to the centralized total loss systems described earlier. The only addition needed is the equipment to collect the oil and return it to the reservoir.

For very large systems, or where the speeds are high, and especially where the oil must remove a great deal of heat from the bearings, a different type of circulation system will be needed. The oil flow will be higher to give both lubrication and cooling, and the circulation system will probably be larger and more complicated.

The same basic components will be needed but other items may include: heaters, coolers, pressure gauges, pressure relief valves, flow dividers, strainers, filters, water separators, chip detectors, sampling points and standby pumps. These may all be mounted in or on the reservoir in a self-contained system, but with very large systems such as in steel or chemical works they may be laid out separately to provide easier access for servicing.

A typical self-contained system is shown in Fig. 5.7. The system may contain the following components.

(a) *Oil reservoir.* The total capacity of the oil reservoir should be equivalent to between 20 and 40 min supply of oil at the maximum flow rate. There may be one or more tanks, depending on whether it will be desirable to be able to change the oil without shutting down the system.

The reservoir will normally have from one to three baffle plates to separate the return points from the pump suction point, and to prevent foam, water or sediment from reaching the pump and being re-circulated.

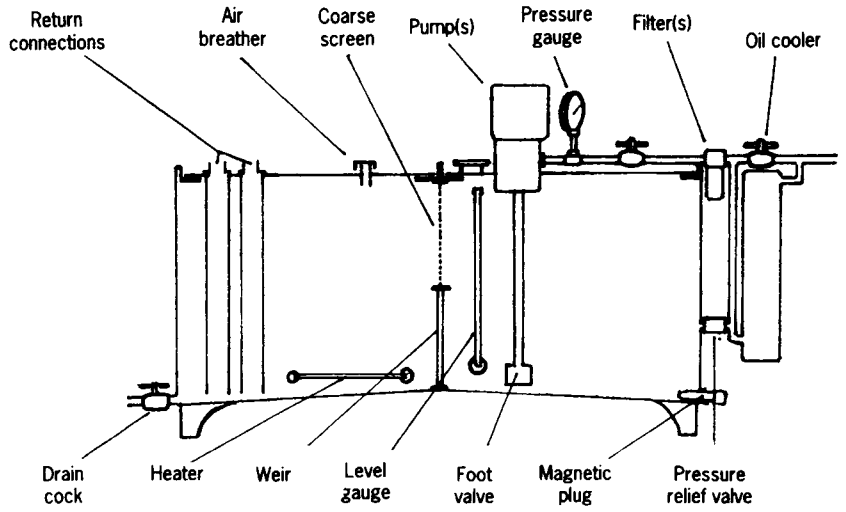


Fig. 5.7 Self-contained oil circulation system

It will also have a sight gauge or some other type of level indicator and an air breather.

(b) *Pump.* The pump may be of almost any type, including gear, vane, swash-plate, screw or centrifugal, depending on oil viscosity and flow rate. The total pump capacity should be at least 20 percent higher than the maximum oil flow required, and in most cases it is desirable to provide a standby pump.

The inlet to each pump should be fitted with a filter or strainer to prevent solid particles from damaging the pump.

(c) *Heaters and coolers.* The cooling which takes place in the return lines and the oil tank will often be adequate, but an additional cooling system may be needed and usually it will be water-cooled.

If the oil is very viscous it may be necessary to heat it to reduce the viscosity for easy flow and to improve the separation of contaminants. The heating may be by hot-water coils, steam coils or electricity. If electricity or high temperature steam (over 110 °C) is used it is important to make sure that oil does not break down on the surface of the heater, since the deposits formed will interfere with heat transfer. Figure 5.8 shows how the required heating surface area is related to heat input and flow rate.

It is not unusual for both heaters and coolers to be present in the same system, and in large or critical systems they should be thermostatically controlled.

(d) *Flow dividers.* These are used in the same way as for total loss systems to direct the required amount of oil to each lubrication point. If possible, a sight gauge should be fitted to each outlet to make sure that oil is feeding.

(e) *Strainers and filters.* Strainers are fitted to the return lines, the pump inlets,

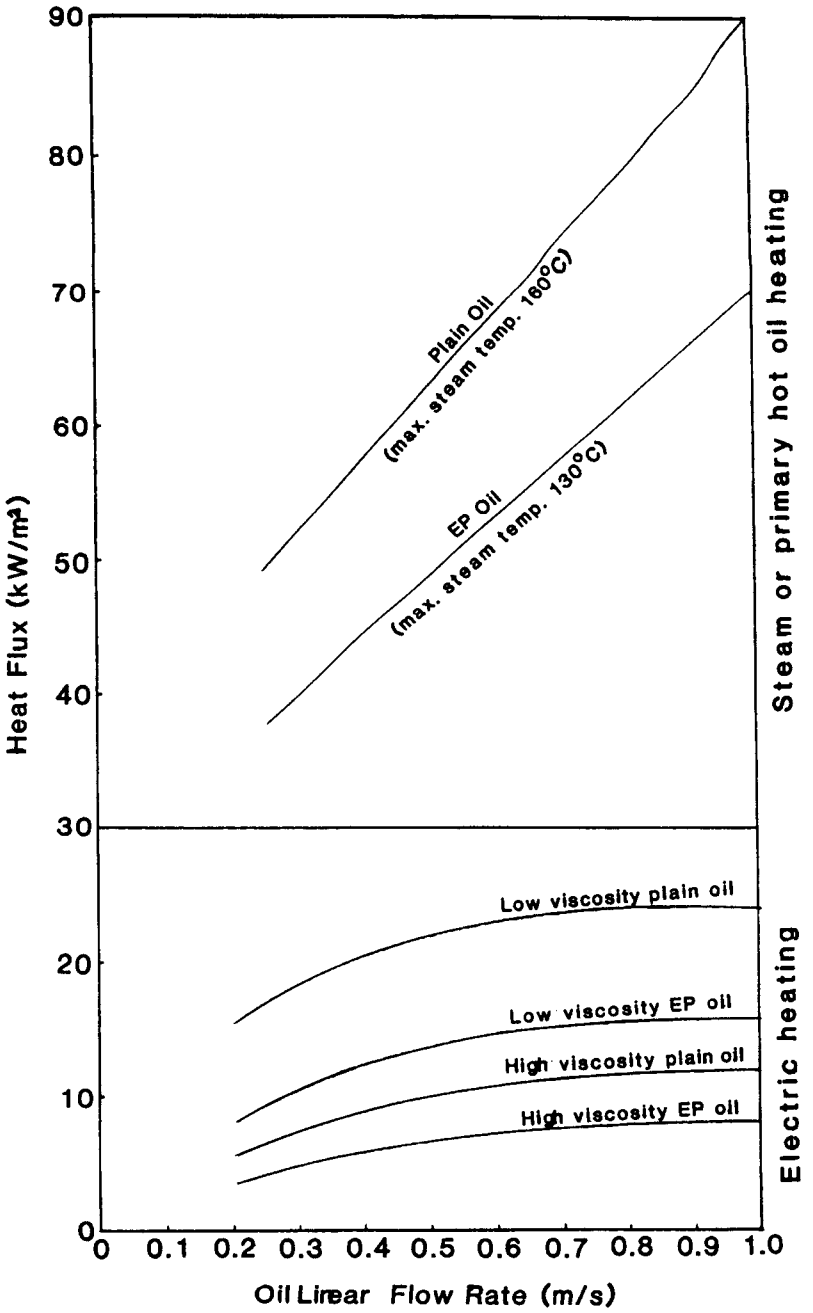


Fig. 5.8 Heat flux recommendations for oil heaters

and sometimes between the halves of the reservoir to remove large debris particles which might damage components. A magnetic strainer may be used, especially with lubrication of large gears, to collect metallic particles. Some solid material will settle out in the tank if the flow is not too rapid, but filters should also be used to remove the remainder of the solid contaminants down to an acceptable size level. In particularly dirty systems some type of high-capacity self-cleaning or automatically changing screens will be desirable.

(f) *Water separators*. Some water contamination will settle out in the reservoir, evaporate from a hot reservoir, or be removed by the filters. If there is very much water contamination a separate trap may be required, and in extreme cases a centrifugal water separator may be necessary. A centrifugal cleaner which will remove water and sludge is shown in the next chapter.

(g) *Chip detectors and sampling points*. The use of some form of oil condition monitoring is becoming common for large or important oil systems. This subject is discussed in more detail in Chapter 12, but thought should be given to the provision of detectors and sampling points when the circulation system is first designed.

5.6 Oil changing problems

When designing and installing oil systems it is important to remember that at some time the oil in a circulation or splash system will need to be changed.

One or more drain cocks or plugs will therefore have to be fitted and the following points should be considered.

(a) *Complete Draining*. It is important to be able to drain as much as possible of the old oil out of the system. Any which cannot be drained will either have to be flushed out (an extra expense) or will remain to contaminate the fresh oil. A drain should be fitted at the lowest point in the system, and all pipes and other components should be laid out so that the oil can drain back to that point. If this cannot be done then additional drains should be fitted at every low point which could trap oil, water, sludge or sediment.

(b) *Access*. The stopcock or plug must be readily accessible for operation, and should be clearly visible. A drain which has not been properly closed is a common cause of accidental oil loss. There must be sufficient clearance for a collecting vessel or hose to be placed beneath the drain.

(c) *Type and size*. Stopcocks are more convenient and much easier to control than plugs, but they are more likely to be blocked by sludge or sediment. They should preferably be large-bore and be installed vertically and not horizontally.

The subject of oil changing is discussed in more detail in the next chapter.

Table 5.2 Advantages and disadvantages of different oil feed systems

System	*Advantages*	*Disadvantages*
Oil can	• Low initial cost • Simple • Easy to check	• High labour cost • Reliability depends on user • No cooling • Easy to use wrong oil • Requires close approach to machinery • No recovery of used oil
Drip feed	• Low initial cost • Low labour cost	• Requires close approach to machinery • Care needed to ensure reliable flow • No cooling • No recovery of used oil
Centralized total loss	• Low labour cost • High reliability • Reduced risk of wrong oil	• High initial cost • Higher maintenance cost • No cooling • No recovery of used oil
Oil mist/fog	• Low labour cost • High reliability • Low consumption of oil • Useful cooling	• High initial cost • Careful flow control needed • No recovery of used oil
Wick or pad	• Low initial cost • Low labour cost	• No cooling • May become blocked
Ring or disc	• Low labour cost • Generally reliable • Some cooling • Recovery of used oil	• Fairly high initial cost • Limited speed range
Splash	• Low initial cost • Low labour cost • Recovery of used oil	• Limited speed range
Circulation	• Wide range of use • Generally reliable • Effective cooling • Recovery of used oil • Removal of contaminants	• High initial cost • High maintenance cost

5.7 Selection of the appropriate system

The advantages and disadvantages of the various oil feed systems are summarized in Table 5.2 and the following sections indicate the conditions in which each system is suitable.

(a) *Oil can.* Bearings readily accessible, few in number or some distance apart; no cooling required.

(b) *Drip feed.* Bearings less readily accessible, few in number or far apart; no cooling required; personnel expensive or often not present (unmanned plant).

(c) *Centralized total loss.* Large numbers of bearings close together; no cooling or contaminant removal needed; possible oil contamination of the surrounding area acceptable.

(d) *Oil mist or fog.* Small numbers of bearings fairly close together; cooling needed but not contaminant removal; possible oil contamination of the surrounding area undesirable.

(e) *Wick or pad.* Small, lightly loaded plain bearings; no cooling or contaminant removal needed.

(f) *Ring, disc or splash.* Individual, isolated systems; cooling and contaminant removal needed.

(g) *Circulation system.* A number of components needing lubrication; considerable cooling or very effective contaminant removal needed.

Chapter 6

Oil Changing and Oil Conservation

6.1 Oil changing

Lubricating oil deteriorates in use in several different ways, and with this deterioration comes a risk of damage to the lubricated system. In order to eliminate this risk, or at least reduce it, it is eventually necessary to replace the oil; this is in fact the most common reason for oil changing.

Another reason for changing oil is to maintain the right viscosity when the operating temperature changes. In temperate climates this is rarely necessary, but at one time it was considered good practice to change the oil in a car engine, using an SAE 30 or even SAE 40 grade in summer and an SAE 10W or 20W in winter. The general use of multigrade oils has made this much less common. In extreme climates it may also be necessary to change industrial oils to a less viscous grade in winter.

Yet another reason for oil changing is to introduce a new type of oil where the previous one has proved unsatisfactory in some way. This is probably far less common than changing to a fresh supply of the same oil, but it introduces a few special problems and will be considered separately later.

The effects of oil deterioration and contamination will also be described in detail later, but briefly the most important effects are:

(a) Oxidation, producing acidity which can lead to corrosion.

(b) Oxidation, shear, evaporation, or contamination giving change in viscosity which can lead to flow problems or failure to lubricate.

(c) Solid contaminants or breakdown products which can cause abrasion of bearings or gears, blocking of filters or fine passages, or a major increase in oil viscosity.

(d) Contamination with water, which can cause corrosion, interfere with the effects of the additives or emulsify with the oil causing flow problems or failure to lubricate.

A major difficulty is to decide when to change the oil. Obviously it would be ideal if it could be changed just before any attack on the system or any decline in the quality of lubrication takes place. Unfortunately the speed at which deterioration takes place can vary considerably, even between systems which are supposed to be identical, so that guidance as to the right oil change period is not very easy or accurate.

If we consider again the example of a private car engine, the car manufacturer's recommendation may be to change the oil every 10 000 or 20 000 miles, but the rate at which the oil deteriorates will depend very much on the way in which the car is used. A car which is used only for short journeys with several hours between them may never warm up to the proper running temperature; water and unburned fuel will tend to accumulate in the oil so that it should be changed more often.

On the other hand an identical car which is used only for long journeys, is well serviced, and driven steadily at a reasonable cruising speed might never need an oil change at all. Replacement of the normal oil consumption by topping up might be enough to maintain the oil quality at a satisfactory level.

In the past 100 years mineral oils have been so plentiful and cheap that it has been normal to change the oil far sooner than was really necessary. If experience showed that in a particular type of system damage due to poor oil condition started after between 200 and 1000 hours, then the oil change period would be established as 100 hours. This would provide a safety factor against expensive damage to the system, and the cost of replacement oil was far lower than the possible cost of not replacing it.

This situation is now changing, and is likely to change more and more rapidly, but at the present time in 2003 the cost of lubricating oil is still normally one of the minor costs in servicing plant or equipment. On average the total cost of the lubricating oil used in a vehicle engine throughout its life is likely to be much less than the cost of a replacement engine. The labour cost involved in oil changing may be more significant than the cost of the oil, especially with small oil systems such as in vehicle engines. For many people the need to conserve oil supplies, and the problem of disposing of the used oil without harming the environment may be more important reasons for reducing oil changes.

In a large plant the cost of an oil fill may be £10 000 or more, and even if this is small compared with the value of the plant, or even the cost of servicing the plant, it is high enough for operators to think very seriously about the right oil change period.

The problem is further complicated by the fact that the rate of deterioration is not steady. It was explained in Chapter 3 that oxidation proceeds very slowly until the anti-oxidants are used up, and then takes place much more quickly. It was also mentioned that the presence of certain contaminants leads to more rapid breakdown.

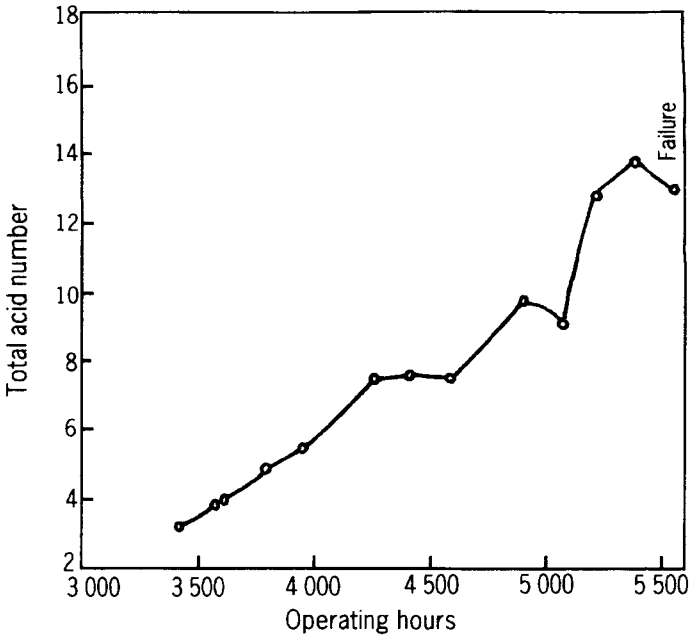


Fig. 6.1 Change of acid number in a diesel engine

Figure 6.1 shows the way in which the acidity changed in an oil in a diesel engine, and shows clearly the rapid increase in the rate of deterioration as the engine approached failure. It follows that if the oil change is left a little too late, the result may be serious damage to the system.

One solution is to use various techniques for monitoring the quality of the oil, and this subject is discussed in detail in Chapter 12. However, for the smallest oil systems it is doubtful if it will ever be economical to monitor the oil, and some guidelines to choosing the oil change period will be given later in this chapter.

6.2 Oil resources and conservation

For over 100 years mineral oils have dominated lubrication, so it is logical to consider their availability and conservation first.

Mineral oils come almost entirely from petroleum sources. Synthetic hydrocarbon oils are mainly produced from petrochemicals, and a small proportion of those may derive from natural gas, but otherwise they also come almost entirely from petroleum.

At various times in the past there has been very serious concern about the remaining life of the world's petroleum resources, and it was at one time widely accepted that they were likely to be exhausted within human lifetime

unless the rate of consumption was reduced. More recently there has been a 15–20 percent reduction in consumption and considerable success in developing new oilfields, so that the concern has diminished. The present industry view seems to be that the rate of oil discovery will continue to keep pace with demand, and that the threat of exhausting the world's supplies has disappeared. This view may in fact be over-optimistic, and there can be no doubt that because petroleum is a non-renewable resource, it must eventually be used up.

Another consideration which makes it desirable to reduce petroleum consumption is the enormous environmental damage caused by its use, mainly in a few major transport accidents, but also in thousands of smaller incidents and in continual loss from lubricated machinery and vehicles.

The major use of petroleum is of course for fuel, so that the pressure for conservation is mainly seen in terms of fuel consumption, and in the environmental damage caused by atmospheric carbon dioxide. If all these pressures succeed in reducing the overall consumption of petroleum, then the future supply of mineral oils could be secure for centuries.

It follows that there can be no realistic estimate of the future availability of mineral oils, but it is wise for some thought to be given to alternatives. The only major alternative source is likely to be coal, which exists in vast quantities but a great deal of work remains to be done to produce lubricant-grade mineral oils from coal; their production will inevitably be more complicated and therefore more expensive than the relatively simple process of distilling petroleum.

The second most widely used group of lubricants are the vegetable oils, such as castor oil and rapeseed oil. Their use has declined as the use of mineral oils has increased. There are many different vegetable oils which can be used as lubricants, and there is no doubt that world production could be increased considerably. The oil-producing plants are grown and harvested in the same way as other crops, so that they are a renewable or self-sustaining resource. The ultimate limit on the availability of vegetable oil lubricants is likely to be the competition for suitable land with crops used for other purposes, e.g. food, textiles etc.

Unfortunately, vegetable oils are less stable than mineral oils, especially at high temperatures, and oxidize to give gums and lacquers. They cannot be used as a direct substitute for mineral oils in most applications, so there would be problems in attempting to use them to fill the gap caused by diminishing mineral oil supplies. However, one pointer to possible future extension of the use of vegetable oils is the production recently in Austria of a diesel-engine oil based on rapeseed, presumably with some degree of chemical treatment to improve the oxidation resistance.

Animal fats and oils are also used to a limited extent for special lubrication problems, but they are not likely to be available or suitable for much wider use than at present.

The case of sperm oil, obtained from the sperm whale, is interesting, and indicates the influence of environmental pressure on lubricant use. This oil, in its sulphurized form, has a very remarkable combination of stability with extreme-pressure properties, and it may be true to say that, as yet, no other additive is a really satisfactory replacement for it. Its availability was rapidly reduced, and it is probably now completely unavailable for two reasons. The first is that killing of whales is no longer acceptable to most civilized people; most countries have banned the use of whale products, including sperm oil. The second is that with the excessive hunting of the larger whales, the remaining whalers turned to hunting smaller ones, including sperm whales, so that their numbers are also likely to be reduced.

The synthetic oils are mainly derived from petroleum, but it would certainly be possible to produce them from coal eventually. Although it will be expensive to manufacture them from coal, it is also expensive to make them from petroleum, so that on the whole they may suffer less than mineral oils from any reduced availability of petroleum. They may in fact become more competitive in price and therefore more widely used.

It must be remembered of course that with an increase in the variety of coal-based products the demand for coal will also increase. This will have a further influence in increasing the cost of lubricants.

These probable effects are summarized in Table 6.1, but briefly we can expect the real cost of lubricants to increase considerably in the next 50 years. There are also likely to be changes in the relative costs of certain lubricants. As a result it will be important to conserve lubricants by using them more efficiently. This may mean extending oil change periods and cutting down waste; it will also mean more cleaning up and re-refining of lubricants to enable them to be re-used.

6.3 Oil deterioration in use

The factors which bring about deterioration of an oil in use have been described in Chapter 3. Here we will consider the effects on the properties and performance of the oil.

Table 6.1 Probable effects of future lubricant supply problems

1. Decreasing availability of mineral lubricating oils
2. Synthetic oils becoming more competitive
3. Development of coal-based mineral and synthetic oils
4. Increasing use of vegetable oils

6.3.1 *Oxidation*

The most important type of chemical reaction affecting oils in service is oxidation, which very often determines service life. The effect of oxidation is to introduce oxygen atoms into the base oil molecules, converting hydrocarbon molecules into aldehydes and then into acids. Since these products are less stable than the original hydrocarbon molecules, they tend to be further attacked and the final products may be highly oxidized gums and lacquers, or even solid residues, such as the carbonized materials soot and coke.

The rate of oxidation depends on the oxidation resistance of the oil and on the operating temperature. Oxidation is also catalysed by certain metals, or in other words its speed is increased when those metals are present. This effect is especially strong when the metal surfaces are fresh, so oxidation is greater when iron, steel, aluminium or copper surfaces are being worn during operation.

The presence of anti-oxidants, either natural or additives, will reduce the rate of oxidation very considerably, but eventually the anti-oxidants will be used up, and the rate of oxidation will then increase rapidly. The combustion of fuel in an engine can also produce acidic oxidation products in the oil, especially if the combustion is poorly controlled, or if the fuel contains very much sulphur.

Thermal breakdown in the absence of oxygen is much less common in practice because oxygen is usually present; its effects may be similar, however, leading to gums, lacquers and sludges.

6.3.2 *Breakdown due to shear*

When an oil is present between sliding surfaces it is subjected to shear, and large molecules may be torn apart by the mechanical forces involved. This effect is not usually important for base oils, but can have a marked effect on polymeric viscosity index improvers in multigrade oils, or on polymeric synthetics such as silicones or polyglycols. There is also some evidence that the effect is greater at high temperatures.

The result of this shearing of large molecules is a reduction in viscosity, but shear breakdown of viscosity index improvers also causes a decrease in the viscosity index.

6.3.3 *Evaporation*

Lubricating oils are not generally volatile, and normally it is only with low-viscosity oils at higher temperatures or in vacuum applications that evaporation is likely to be significant. However, it has been shown that there is a significant loss of the lower fractions of engine oils in the region of the

piston ring/cylinder interface. The effect of evaporation is generally to produce an increase in viscosity.

6.3.4 *Contamination with fuel*

The problem of contamination of lubricating oil by fuel is obviously one which occurs only in internal combustion engines or other systems which contain liquid fuels. However, similar effects can arise in chemical plant or refineries where liquids having lower viscosity and perhaps higher flammability can enter the oil system.

In engines the contamination may occur because of poor combustion control, which results in unburned fuel mixing with the oil in the cylinders, especially before the engine becomes fully warm. In petrol-injection or diesel engines it can also occur because of pump or injector leaks. In refineries or chemical plant the most likely source is leakage through a seal.

The main effect of this type of contamination is that it lowers the viscosity of the oil, sometimes to the extent that lubrication fails and severe wear takes place. Another risk is that a fire may be caused because the fuel/oil mixture is more easily ignited, and in fact wear particles or frictional heating can act as ignition sources.

6.3.5 *Contamination by solids*

There are four main types of solid contaminant in an oil system. These are wear debris, breakdown products from the oil itself, combustion products (soot) in an engine and external dust or dirt ingested, or sucked, into an engine or an air compressor. All of these substances can be detected by various oil monitoring techniques, and these are discussed in Chapter 12.

Wear debris and outside dust sucked into a system can be very abrasive, and produce severe wear of components like bearings, valves, gears or cams.

Soot and oil breakdown products can increase the viscosity of the oil to an unacceptable level, and in extreme cases soot has been known to thicken an oil to the consistency of a grease.

Filters are commonly used to remove solid contaminants from an oil system and, provided that the filter is properly designed and selected for the solids present, then the problem will normally be under control. However, if the type of solid material is different from what was expected or in much greater quantity, then the filters may become blocked, and this can create additional problems. Any of the types of debris can also block fine oil feeds or holes, and thus cause oil starvation.

The effect of filtration is to remove from the filtered liquid all, or almost all, of the particles larger than some nominal size. If a 5 micron filter is used, then this means that most particles larger than 5μm will be removed. If for simplicity we think of particles being like rectangular blocks, then it is the

second-largest dimension which is important (i.e. width rather than length or thickness) and this is called the critical dimension. Particles are never rectangular blocks, but in practice rods or fibres much longer than 5μm will pass through a 5 micron filter provided their thickness is less than 5μm. On the other hand, a flake 6μm long and 5.5μm wide will probably be removed even if its thickness is much less than 1μm.

In terms of total numbers of particles, solid contaminants usually contain relatively few of the larger particles, and very large numbers of extremely small particles. Filtration may remove most of the large particles, but have little effect on the finest particles. The finest particles are often harmless, but in some systems they can form sediments which are harmful, such as in spool valves in hydraulic systems. Removal of such very fine particles may require the use of a succession of filters having decreasing nominal pore sizes, and of several different types.

6.3.6 *Contamination by water*

Water is a very common contaminant in oil systems. It may come from the burning of fuel in a cold engine, or from condensation if the temperature of the system rises and falls in a humid atmosphere. Water can be easily driven off by evaporation if the system operates regularly at temperatures much higher than 100 °C. For this reason engines which normally operate for only a few minutes at a time, on short road journeys or in intermittent generator operation, should be regularly run for longer periods to allow them to warm up thoroughly. Similarly, stationary oil circulation systems should be fitted with tank heaters to ensure that the oil is kept hot enough to drive off water.

If the water remains in the system for only a short time, it may remain clean and cause little trouble. If it remains for a long time in some inaccessible part of the system, then it tends to extract acids and additives out of the oil and become a sort of chemical soup. This mixture will generally be much more corrosive, but will also emulsify more readily with the oil, forming sludges which can block fine holes or filters.

6.3.7 *Microbiological contamination*

In some circumstances the 'chemical soup' mentioned above can lead to another serious problem, that of microbiological contamination. This means simply that microscopic plant life, bacteria and fungi, start to grow in the oil, and in extreme cases this growth can block oil pipes, valves and pumps, and lead to even greater corrosion. Figure 6.2 shows the appearance of fungus growth in a metalcutting coolant system.

There are three essential conditions for microbiological growth to occur. There must be a source of carbon, and this is supplied by the oil itself. There must be some bacteria or fungal spores present to start the growth, but these

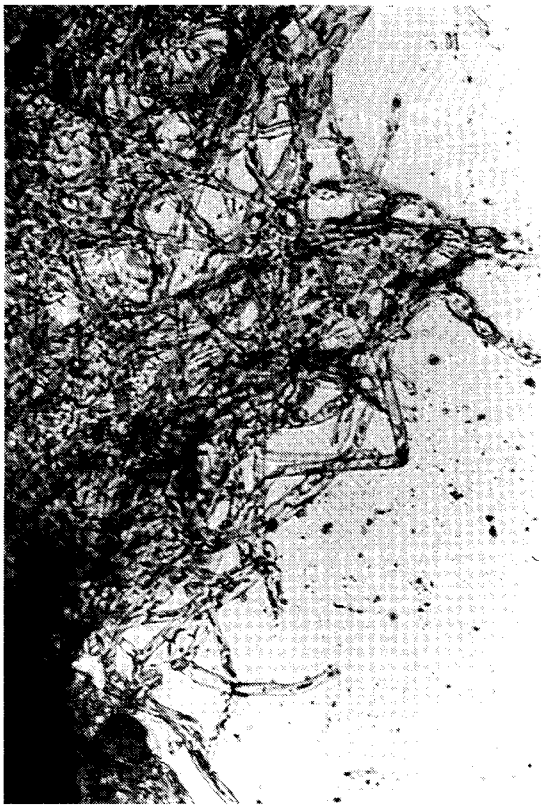


Fig. 6.2 Fungus growth in metalcutting coolant

are almost universally present in the atmosphere. Finally, there must be free water present, so that the best way to avoid the problem is to keep the system clean and dry. It follows that emulsion lubricants (oil in water or water in oil) are particularly prone to microbiological attack. Two other factors which encourage microbiological growth are a slight acidity in the water (pH about 5–6) and slightly raised temperatures (20–40 °C), which can give much more rapid growth.

Biocidal additives in the system can prevent microbiological contamination, or kill it once it has started. If a system has become seriously contaminated, then the use of a biocide may kill the organisms and prevent further growth. However, the organic debris which is already present will continue to threaten blockage of the system, and may be very difficult to remove. Prevention is therefore much better than cure.

Systems at greatest risk are large warm systems with low points which can trap water. It is therefore particularly important to make sure that all low points in such systems are fitted with drain cocks which are regularly operated to remove water.

The most obvious symptom of bacterial attack in an oil system is often a strong foetid smell of decay; with fungal attack the smell may not be so obvious.

6.4 Establishing the oil change period

Obviously the oil change period will depend on the rate at which the condition of the oil deteriorates and on the amount of deterioration which is acceptable. The specified acceptable limits are only helpful if the oil condition is being monitored in some way. These limits are considered in Chapter 12.

Some form of monitoring of oil quality should probably be carried out on any system containing more than 250 litres of oil, and on high-speed, hot or critical systems containing more than about 65 litres. In practice these recommendations are rarely followed.

For smaller systems it is probably not economical to monitor the oil, although it should always be remembered that the financial risk if oil is not changed soon enough is the value of the machinery, and not the value of the oil. Where the manufacturer of the system recommends specific oil change periods, these should be followed unless experience shows them to be unsatisfactory.

It is important to remember that a little observation and commonsense can be useful in deciding whether the selected oil change period is right. Any of the following are indications that the oil has seriously deteriorated and should be changed more frequently:

- oil black or much darker than when new;
- oil flows much less easily than when new;
- signs of brown or black lacquer films on moving parts;
- sludge or solid debris in the oil;
- corrosion of metal parts;
- strong or unpleasant smell.

These symptoms may be detectable in a sight gauge or on a dipstick, or possibly only when the oil is drained.

The following additional guidelines may be useful:

(a) Well-sealed oil bath systems (i.e. dip, splash, ring or disc lubrication) below about 70 °C: oil change period 1 year.
(b) Well-sealed circulation systems, bulk oil temperature below 50 °C: oil change period 2-3 years.
(c) Well-sealed circulation systems, bulk oil temperature 60–70 °C: oil change period 1 year.
(d) Well-sealed circulation systems, bulk oil temperature over 70 °C: oil change period 3 months, or try to lower temperature.

(e) Engines or compressors operating in dirty or humid environment or engines operating intermittently: change more often than manufacturers recommend.
(f) If no top-up is needed, consider changing the oil more often.
(g) If in doubt:
- look at the colour of the oil in the sight-gauge;
- if possible, remove the filler cap (*not if the system is under pressure*) and smell the contents;
- look at the colour, uniformity or viscosity of oil on the dipstick, (let it cool before judging whether it is thicker than when new);
- drain a small sample from the drain cock, and examine it as for the dipstick; if nothing more, this will probably remove some of the solid debris;
- have the oil tested, either by some of the simple on-site tests listed in Chapter 12, or by a laboratory.

The problem of disposing of used oil will be discussed later in this chapter, but in general greater regulation and control of waste disposal is making it more expensive to dispose of waste oils satisfactorily. As a result, major users are finding it economically desirable to keep their lubricant systems in better condition in order to extend lubricant life and thus reduce the cost of disposal.

Typical of the measures used to extend lubricant life are: improved sealing and screening to keep out contaminants; better filtration and centrifugal cleaning; topping up with fresh oil or additive concentrates; and oil condition monitoring. With some of the most expensive lubricants, such as polyol esters and phosphate esters, more intensive purification is now sometimes carried out on-line, using such media as adsorbent clays or ion-exchange resins to remove acidic decomposition products or other contaminants; such processes will probably become more common in future. Most important of all is to improve the awareness of the operators of the commercial benefits of well-maintained lubricant systems.

6.5 Changing the type of oil

It is a good general rule not to change a successful combination. In other words the type of oil in a system should not be changed unless there is good reason. However, there are several reasons which may be good enough to justify a change; some of these are listed in Table 6.2, together with the nature of the change which is indicated.

There is always some risk in changing to a new type of oil in a system, and the benefits which are expected should always be balanced against the risk. In the majority of cases no harmful effect will arise, but if any fault does occur it is important to recognize it and its causes. In the following

Table 6.2 Some reasons for changing oil type

Reason for change	*Nature of the change*
1. Marked change in ambient temperature	Change to more viscous grade if temperature increases, less viscous if it decreases
2. Oil deteriorates too rapidly, with acidity, lacquering, sludging	Change to better quality oil with anti-oxidants
3. Excessive wear or seizure	Change to oil with anti-wear or EP additives (subject to expert advice).
4. Fires or risk of fires	Change to fire-resistant oil
5. Rationalization	Change to equivalent or better quality oil of wider application
6. High oil consumption with little deterioration	Change to cheaper oil, or, subject to expert advice, to more viscous oil
7. Competitive tender	Change to cheaper oil

sections the main risks are described in relation to the type of change which is being made.

6.5.1 *General*

At the present time the vast majority of lubricating oils are mineral oils, and in most cases the change will be from one mineral oil to another. There will therefore be no major incompatibility between the old and new oils.

However, there are a number of synthetic and vegetable oils in use, and serious problems can arise if the oil change involves a change from one class of base oil to another. For example, if a hydroxy-terminated polyglycol is added to a system containing the remains of a mineral oil, the two will not mix or dissolve properly, and the resulting mixture may block oil feeds or filters. Similarly, if a silicone hydraulic fluid is mixed with a mineral oil containing a polymeric viscosity index improver, the polymer may be precipitated out of solution in the mineral oil, and block the whole system.

In practice the same class of base oil will probably be retained, but it will be important to make sure.

Apart from harmful interaction between the oils themselves, a change to a new class of base oil may have catastrophic effects on rubber seals or hoses, or other non-metallic materials in the system. For example, natural rubber seals can be used with castor oil, but will break down rapidly with mineral oils or most synthetics. Similarly nitrile rubber seals can be used with mineral oils, but will be rapidly attacked by phosphate esters, silicones, and in some cases by esters. A change in base oil class may therefore involve changing the non-metallic components in the system to ensure that the materials are compatible.

In most cases it is good practice to flush out the system after the old oil

has been drained out and before the new oil is introduced. In a small system a flushing oil may be used, which is basically a mineral oil without additives and whose viscosity is similar to, or perhaps slightly lower than, the oil used in the system.

Even where the difference between the old and new oils is slight, flushing will help to remove the last of the old degraded oil and its contaminants. If the new oil will not mix properly with the old, then it may be necessary to find a flushing oil which mixes thoroughly with both of them.

6.5.2 *Changing to a more viscous grade in summer*

As a general rule, changing to a more viscous grade of the same oil type is the safest sort of oil type change. The only serious risk is that there may be some part of the system where the temperature is near the upper limit which can be tolerated. The effect of changing to a more viscous oil will be to increase the power used in moving the parts of the system, and thus to increase the temperature of the oil. If this effect is added to that of a hotter summer environment, then the temperature may rise to an unacceptable level. The best solution would then be to improve the cooling in the system instead of changing to the more viscous oil.

6.5.3 *Changing to a less viscous oil in winter*

The object of changing to a less viscous oil for a colder climate is usually to ensure ready starting of the system when cold. Once the system is fully warmed up it may not be significantly cooler in winter than in summer. If this is the case then the oil in the bearings after an oil change may be less viscous than is desirable, and bearing wear or even overheating may take place. When shutting down a hot system, the less viscous oil will drain more completely from the lubricated surfaces, leaving a thinner oil film to cope with the immediate needs of the bearings when re-starting. Finally the amount of oil lost through leaks and dynamic seals may be greater with a less viscous oil.

6.5.4 *Changing to a better quality oil of similar type*

This again is in general a very safe type of change. The better quality base oil will not have any harmful effects, and additional additives are rarely harmful. Only occasionally can some unwanted effect arise where a new additive reacts with a non-metal or non-ferrous metal in the system, or with some contaminant which has previously caused no problems. This sort of problem has been reported from time to time, particularly in the chemical industry, where the unknown contaminants are more likely themselves to be reactive chemicals.

6.5.5 *Change to oil with anti-wear or EP additives*

This is an extension of the problem described in Section 6.5.4. Since anti-wear and EP additives are designed to react with metals under certain circumstances, they may occasionally produce unwanted reactions, with attack on non-ferrous metals or even cast irons or steels. Again in most cases, no problems will arise.

6.5.6 *Change to fire-resistant oil*

This is the type of change which is most likely to bring serious problems. The two most common classes of fire-resistant oil are phosphate esters and water-based oils, and the most widely used water-based oils are probably water/polyglycol mixtures and water-in-mineral oil (invert) emulsions. Changing from a mineral oil to any of these oils requires careful consideration of the materials and components of the system.

If it is assumed that in changing the oil the viscosity will not change significantly, there are still a number of chemical and physical properties which must be considered.

(a) *Phosphate esters.* The main problem with phosphate esters is that they have a severe solvent effect on non-metallic materials, so that they are perhaps the most difficult class of oils for selecting suitable seals and hoses. Suitable rubbers are resin-cured butyl, halobutyl and ethylene-propylene rubber (EPR). A further problem is the rather poor thermal stability of phosphate esters, which restricts them to temperatures preferably below 100 °C.

(b) *Water/polyglycol.* Any water-containing oil must be adequately inhibited to prevent corrosion, and is limited to temperatures between 0 and 90 °C.

(c) *Invert emulsions.* In addition to the limitations mentioned above, emulsions are open to the danger of 'cracking' or separation of water from oil due to the effects of certain chemicals, such as acids, or if frozen. Both invert emulsions and water/polyglycol can be used with nitrile seals.

6.5.7 *Rationalization*

The change to an equivalent or better quality oil which may be recommended for the purposes of rationalizing lubricant supplies carries with it the occasional risks which are listed under Sections 6.5.2, 6.5.4 and 6.5.5 above, but where the rationalization study has been carried out by experts the risk is small.

6.5.8 *Change to cheaper oil*

An oil may be cheaper only because of supply, low transport costs or any

Table 6.3 Important factors in changing type of oil

Nature of change	*Factors to consider*
1. Change to higher viscosity, same class of base oil	• Ensure that any increase in temperature is acceptable
2. Change to lower viscosity, same class of base oil	• Ensure that lubricant film thickness is still adequate • Watch out for leaks • Watch out for increased consumption
3. Change to 'better' quality, same class of base oil	• Ensure that additional additives do not introduce new problems
4. Change to cheaper oil, same class of base oil	• Ensure that quality is still adequate
5. Change to EP oil, same class of base oil	• Watch out for unwanted side-effects of additives, especially on non-ferrous metals
6. Change to different class of base oil	• Make sure that previous oil is completely removed from system • Ensure that seals and other materials are suitable for new oil

other logistic factor, in which case no special risk is involved. On the other hand, an oil may be cheap because it uses a less highly refined base-stock or because it has a smaller quantity, or less effective types, of additives. If this is the case there will be increased risk of oil degradation to give acidity, sludging, increased wear or corrosion. A change to a cheaper oil should therefore always be followed by carefully watching the performance of the oil and the system.

Table 6.3 summarizes the factors to consider with different types of oil change.

6.6 Carrying out the oil change

The objective in oil changing is simply to leave the system filled with the replacement oil in as good condition as can be achieved with a reasonable expenditure of money and effort.

Ideally, all the old oil and contaminants should be completely removed from the system but this is rarely practical, for the following reasons:

(a) Because of its viscosity, lubricating oil leaves quite a thick film on all the surfaces of the system, bearings, gears, pumps, valves, pipes etc.
(b) In almost every system there are low points from which oil will not flow to the drain points.

(c) Oil is held in filters and in crevices of bolted joints, seals etc.
(d) Heavy solid particles, water drops, emulsion, tarry deposits and so on will stick strongly to the bottom of the reservoir and other surfaces.

To remove these materials completely it would be necessary to strip the system and clean all the component parts; this can only be justified in exceptional cases.

An oil change is therefore normally a compromise between the ideal of complete removal and a reasonable expenditure of money and effort; it will involve draining of the old oil with or without some degree of flushing, dismantling and cleaning.

6.6.1 *Draining*

The old oil should be drained as thoroughly as possible by opening all the drain cocks or drain plugs. If a drain cock or plug is difficult to undo, this may indicate that it has seized due to lacquer or tarry deposits (indicating overheating), hard deposits or corrosion (due to water or sludge); in such cases it is particularly important for the drain to be opened.

If the system has been static for some time before draining, solid contaminants, water and sludge may have settled to the bottom of the reservoir so that they will not be removed with the oil. It will be an advantage if the system is drained as soon as possible after operation, so that the oil viscosity will be low and contaminants will be dispersed in the oil. If the whole system cannot be operated immediately before draining, it will help if the oil circulating pump can be kept switched on for some time.

Drainage will also be more efficient if the oil is hot so that its viscosity is low. It will then drain more fully from surfaces, and will be more effective in flushing out contaminants. Operating the system or the oil circulating pump will help to raise the oil temperature, but it may also be possible to use reservoir heaters to bring the oil up to normal operating temperature.

The fraction of the total oil content which can be drained will depend on the design of the system and the viscosity of the oil. It may be as low as 60 percent and will rarely be higher than 90 percent for small systems, or 98 percent for large ones.

6.6.2 *Flushing*

If the system is simply drained and refilled, it will contain something between 2 and 40 percent of the old oil, and a similar or higher proportion of the contaminants, probably about 20 percent of both on average. This may be acceptable if the oil was changed before deteriorating too badly, but not if the old oil was seriously degraded or contaminated. If 10 percent of the old solid particles, acid products and water remain in the system, they may be

enough to use up most of the additives such as dispersants, anti-oxidants, bases and corrosion inhibitors contained in the new oil fill.

One solution to this problem is to flush the system out after draining and before refilling for service. If the system is again completely filled with oil, circulated and again drained, a much higher proportion of the old oil and contaminants will be removed, as shown in Table 6.4. In a large system this will not be practical, but flushing with a 25 percent fill may bring considerable improvement, if such a small quantity can be circulated. If between 10 and 40 percent of the old oil is still present, then addition of 25 percent of a flushing oil will bring the total to between 35 and 65 percent. Such a quantity may be fairly easy to circulate as well as giving a useful improvement.

The safest and most effective flushing oil is the same oil which is to be used in the system, but this may be too expensive to use for flushing. For this reason most oil companies supply special flushing oils. A typical flushing oil is a plain mineral oil whose viscosity is lower than that of the lubricating oil used in the system, and may be completely without additives or may contain only a small amount of anti-oxidant to control deterioration in storage.

The use of a flushing oil is essential where the replacement oil will not mix freely with the original oil, and expert advice should be taken on the type to be used.

An obvious disadvantage of the use of a flushing oil is that the undrainable oil left in the system will be largely a low-viscosity base oil without any of the additives which may be necessary for satisfactory lubrication. However, in many cases the dilution of the new oil fill by clean base oil will be preferable to the presence of the old oil and its contaminants.

Table 6.4 Effect of flushing on proportion of old oil and contaminants left in system

Percentage of old oil and contaminants left after simple draining (%)	*Percentage left after flushing with complete fill and re-draining (%)*	*Percentage left after flushing with 25% fill and re-draining (%)*
40	16	25
20	4	9
10	1	2.9
5	0.25	0.8
2	0.04	0.15
1	0.01	0.04

6.6.3 *Dismantling*

Dismantling of the system will usually require a great deal of effort, and will be avoided if possible. Partial dismantling may be carried out in some cases, such as:

- to change a paper or ceramic filter at the same time as the oil is changed;
- when seals or hoses must be changed to materials compatible with a new class of oil;
- when failed or life-expired bearings or seals must be replaced;
- when severe deposits or sludging are known to be present and cannot be adequately drained;
- where heavy bacterial or fungal attack has taken place.

6.6.4 *Cleaning*

In very large systems, containing 10 000 litres or more, and where heavy deposits, sludging or contamination often occur, it will be impracticable to flush the system. It may then be necessary to clean out the reservoirs and storage tanks by brushing or hosing with industrial cleaning liquids or by steam-cleaning, having closed off the reservoir from the rest of the lubrication system.

Great care must be taken to avoid injury or damage to health from lubricants, contaminants or cleaning fluids when carrying out tank cleaning.

After tanks have been cleaned, it is important to get rid of cleaning fluids and water before refilling the system.

Other parts of the system may be cleaned where necessary, such as when heaters are prone to overheat and become coated with carbonized oil.

6.6.5 *Refilling the system*

Having ensured that all drain cocks are closed, the main precaution in refilling is to make sure that the fresh oil does not carry contaminants with it into the system. The surfaces of oil drums, measuring cans, funnels and filling points should be carefully cleaned before refilling begins. In dusty or dirty environments it will be preferable for the oil to be pumped from the drum or transport container directly into the filler pipe, using gauze or cloth to filter dust out of the replacement air entering the drum.

In critical systems the replacement oil may be pumped through a high-performance filter before entering the lubrication system. Oil replenishment trolleys are marketed which include a reservoir of replacement oil or hydraulic fluid, a pump and an efficient filtration system on the delivery line.

Another important precaution is to ensure that the system has been properly filled. It is often possible for an air-lock to prevent oil from passing into some sections of the system during refilling, so that the sight glass or

dipstick will show the system to be filled while some sections are still empty. Operating the oil circulation pump, or briefly turning over some of the lubricated components, may help to clear an air-lock. In any case a careful watch should be kept on sight glasses during the first few minutes of operation to make sure that the required level is maintained.

6.7 Handling the old oil

The procedure for disposing of used lubricating oil depends on the volume and types of oil involved.

In the past small quantities of waste oil, less than 500 litres, have represented a disposal problem. Specialist waste disposal companies and oil re-refiners were generally unwilling to collect quantities of less than 500 litres, but would accept oil delivered to their premises in smaller quantities. Responsible companies would therefore generally accumulate used oil until a sufficient quantity was available to make it economical to be delivered or collected. In other cases the used oil was often burned or dumped on waste ground, or even poured down drains.

The disposal problem has changed significantly in recent years. There has been a considerable increase in public awareness of the importance of reducing waste and pollution. Legislation has also been introduced in many countries to regulate the disposal of dangerous wastes, including petroleum products. Increases in the cost of petroleum products have also made it more economical to collect and process waste oil. This improved economic situation has still not made it worthwhile to collect quantities less than a few hundred litres, but it does mean that the value of the waste oil is now high enough in the United Kingdom and many other countries for the collector and re-processor to pay for it, instead of having to be paid to remove it.

Some major oil companies have become so concerned about the problem of disposal of small quantities of waste oil that they have set up 'oil banks' in their service stations. Similarly, many local authorities have set up waste oil collection tanks in their civic refuse amenity sites. One report in early 1994 quoted 1354 of them at that time in the United Kingdom, varying in capacity from 600 to 2700 litres, and collecting altogether a total of about 8000 tons of used oil per year.

There is therefore no longer any excuse for waste oil being disposed of illegally by dumping on waste land or pouring down drains. Nevertheless it has been estimated that in the United Kingdom many thousands of tons are disposed of illegally each year by private car owners carrying out their own oil changes. Most of this is believed to be poured down drains, where it causes pollution in rivers and lakes, or damage to sewage treatment works.

Similar problems occur in other countries, although the extent of 'do-it-yourself' oil changing may be a particularly British problem. Different countries have introduced different measures to try to control the disposal of

waste oil and to increase the proportion available for re-treatment. For example, in Austria, there are restrictions on over-the-counter lubricant sales.

It has been estimated that about 40–50 percent of lubricating oil is irretrievably lost in use, by evaporation, combustion or leakage (about 20 million tons per year worldwide), and only 25–35 percent recycled (about 10–15 million tons) leaving about 25 percent (10 million tons) lost. There is therefore considerable scope for improvement.

The problem of collection of waste oil by and from major users is of course relatively straightforward. It is now probably normal for any major user to provide waste oil tanks for the collection of waste oils, and in many cases it is possible to sell the oil to a commercial collector. Many factors have combined to make this the preferred procedure in most industries, including fiscal incentives (e.g. in Germany, Finland and France), the increasing re-sale value of the used oil, the increasing cost of landfill dumping, the pressure of higher environmental standards and the stringent requirements in many countries for rehabilitation of factory sites.

The one area which is still not straightforward is that of water-containing metalworking lubricants and this will be discussed later.

Used lubricating oil is not an attractive material to look at. As a result the tanks in which used oil is collected tend to be regarded as dirty waste bins. They accumulate all sorts of other waste such as cleaning fluids, paraffin (kerosine), waste fuel, drained cooling water, dirty rags and even floor sweepings. This converts the used oil from a material with considerable re-

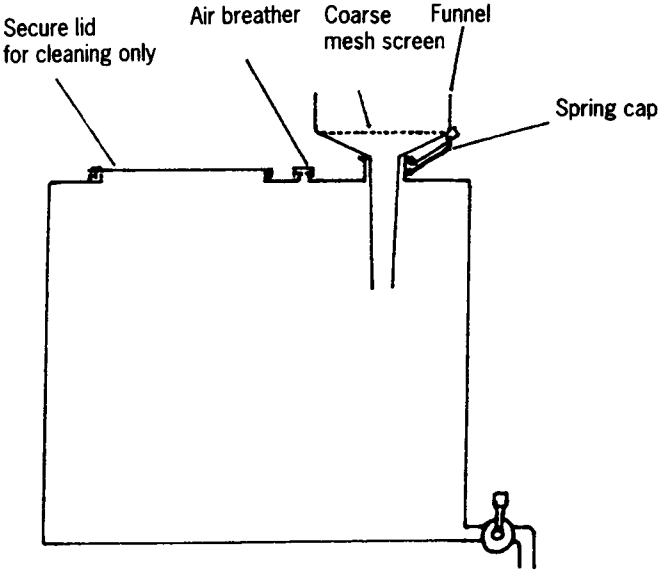


Fig. 6.3 Suitable pattern for a waste oil collection tank

use value into a mess which is impossible to re-process and very difficult to destroy safely or even to handle safely.

At the very least, used oil collection tanks should be enclosed and should be filled by means of a large funnel fitted with a wire mesh screen to prevent solid rubbish from being mixed with the oil. A suitable pattern is shown in Fig. 6.3.

Ideally several collecting tanks should be used to collect the following groups of liquids separately:

- used engine oils;
- used mineral oils other than engine oils;
- individual used synthetic oils;
- used emulsion oils and water-contaminated oils;
- fuels and paraffin (kerosine);
- cleaners and other solvents.

Most of these liquids are flammable, and appropriate precautiions must be taken for storing them, especially the fuels, paraffin and solvents.

Once a suitable collecting system has been established, the disposal problem for small quantities of used oils becomes the same as the problem for large quantities.

Quantities of used oils greater than perhaps 500–1000 litres, can be treated in three ways. Relatively clean oils, including emulsions and 'soluble oils', in sufficiently large quantities may be 'laundered' or cleaned-up on site to a standard which will allow them to be re-used. Alternatively, clean oils and dirty oils can be subjected to a more severe processing to produce fractions suitable for use as fuels or they can be 're-refined' back to lubricant base oil quality for use in manufacturing new lubricating oils.

6.8 Disposing of emulsions and water-contaminated oils

Emulsions are, by definition, dispersions of small droplets of one liquid in another liquid, but they can be 'loose' or relatively unstable emulsions, or 'tight' stable emulsions. Water-contaminated oils may become emulsified, or the water phase may remain mainly or wholly separate from the oil.

One other common class of water-containing lubricant is that of the so-called 'synthetic' coolants used in certain machining operations. These are, in fact, solutions or dispersions of certain chemicals in water.

There are therefore four basic types of water-containing lubricant which may have to be disposed of: loose emulsions, tight emulsions, non-emulsified water and oil mixtures, and solutions of chemicals in water. There are many processes for dealing with these wastes, and the following sections provide some examples.

6.8.1 *Loose emulsions*

The minute droplets of dispersed liquid in an emulsion are prevented from joining together and separating out by electric charges which are produced by surface-active additives or detergents. In a loose emulsion the amount of surface-active material is just enough to produce a stable emulsion, so that the dispersed oil droplets tend to be large, and can be fairly easily made to join together, or coalesce. This coalescing is known as 'cracking' the emulsion. Loose emulsions are sometimes used as rolling oils.

A suitable disposal process for these emulsions consists of the following stages:

(a) About 2 percent of a concentrated salt solution is added to the emulsion. This breaks down the electric charges stabilizing the emulsion and allows the oil droplets to coalesce into large drops which can separate out from the water. The salts which are often used include magnesium, calcium or iron chloride, and magnesium, aluminium or iron sulphates, but many others can also be used, and if suitable quantities of a waste salt or acid solution are available from the works it may be possible to make use of them.

(b) The mixture of oil and water, usually with some solid contamination, is then passed to a centrifuge. By generating a high-speed spinning motion in the liquid the centrifuge produces centrifugal forces high enough to separate the water and solids from the oil. Alternatively the treated liquid can be held in settling tanks, where the oil phase separates out on the surface of the water. The oil will usually then be clean enough for disposal with other waste mineral oil.

(c) The water may be passed through a separator to remove the last traces of oil and solids. The remaining water must then be treated as necessary to bring it to the standard required for the factory effluent. Where eventual effluent disposal is directly to tidal water, it may be possible to use sodium chloride as the emulsion-breaking salt, as this will usually be acceptable in effluent into sea water.

An alternative process uses an organic demulsifier, such as a polyamine system, which produces less sludge than the salt/acid splitting processes. It may also be cheaper where there is no cheap source of waste salt or acid available.

6.8.2 *Tight emulsions*

Where there is a higher concentration of surface-active agent, or a more powerful one, the emulsion droplets are finer and the emulsion is harder to break. Soluble oil emulsions used in metalcutting, and invert emulsions used as fire-resistant hydraulic fluids, are generally tight emulsions.

A higher concentration of salt is needed to crack a tight emulsion. This gives a more heavily contaminated water phase, so it will be an advantage to use a process which makes it easier to separate out the chemicals from the water. One suitable process developed by Alfa Laval is outlined below.

(1) Two to three percent of a solution of sodium dihydrogen phosphate is added to crack the emulsion. If this is insufficient to give complete cracking, then expert advice may have to be taken.
(2) The mixture is centrifuged to separate out oil, water and solids. The oil should then be suitable for disposal with other waste mineral oil.
(3) Aluminium sulphate or ferric (iron) sulphate and lime are added to the water to separate out solids as a flocculent precipitate. The precipitate is concentrated in settling tanks, and the bulk of the water passes to the effluent disposal plant. The precipitated sludge is freed of water by means of a centrifuge or filter press, and is suitable for disposal.

This flocculation or coagulation treatment is also suitable for very dilute emulsions or 'synthetic' coolants, where the concentration of oil or other contaminants in the water is very small.

6.8.3 *Non-emulsified mixtures of water and oil*

These may separate completely on standing in a settling tank, when the water can be drained off from the bottom, and the oil disposed of with other waste oil. The separation will be quicker if the mixture is passed to a centrifuge and this also gives a much cleaner separation.

If the amount of free oil present is very small compared with the total volume of water, it may be possible to separate off the oil by passing the mixture through a hide separator, which will retain the oil.

6.9 Laundering

In many cases the lubricant which is removed from a system will be contaminated but not seriously degraded. In other words the base oil and additives will be almost unchanged after use, but the amount of water, dirt or wear debris will be so great that the oil is no longer fit for use.

In such cases it may be possible to remove the contaminants so that the lubricant is again fit for use in the same type of system. This process is known as 'laundering'. There are two simple techniques used, centrifuging, and filtration or screening; the choice depends on the type of lubricant and on the size and amount of residual contaminant which is acceptable. A third and more sophisticated laundering technique is the use of vacuum distillation to remove volatile contaminants such as water, fuels and solvents.

For conventional lubricating oils and invert emulsion hydraulic fluids, a high standard of purity is usually necessary, so that solid particles must be

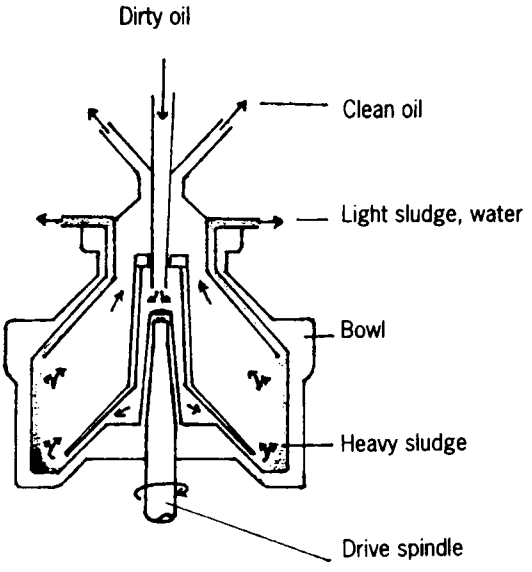


Fig. 6.4 Typical centrifugal oil cleaner

removed down to very small sizes. Filters and high-speed centrifuges are both capable of removing particles down to 5μm or even 1μm, but because these lubricants have relatively high viscosities, high-performance filters are very slow. Centrifuges are therefore preferred, and these will also remove contaminating water and sludge. A typical centrifuge is shown in Fig. 6.4

Soluble oil (emulsion) and synthetic coolants used in machining can become heavily contaminated with swarf as well as with fine metal particles and dirt. Metal screens or rotary strainers have a very high capacity for removing swarf and are continuous and relatively cheap. They may be completely adequate where there is no problem with residual fine particles and where there is no significant contamination with hydraulic fluids or other lubricating oils (known as 'tramp' oil). If necessary screening or straining can be followed by the use of a centrifuge to remove the remaining fine particles and any free 'tramp' oil.

One process which has been described for cleaning up machining coolants, emulsions or 'synthetics', off-line but on site, consists of the following steps.

(1) Collect the coolant and allow it to stand in a settling tank for metal chips (swarf), metal fines and dirt to settle out.
(2) Pass it through a filter to remove remaining solids.
(3) Pass low-pressure steam into the coolant to pasteurize it (i.e. to kill any bacterial or fungal contaminants) and to float any free oil to the surface.
(4) Decant off the surface oil.

(5) Cool.
(6) Add fresh concentrate to make up to the required concentration for re-use.

Most cleaning processes involving screening, centrifuging or even settlement on standing, will be much more effective if the liquid is heated; this reduces the viscosity and so improves the overall flow and allows the various phases to separate more easily.

Effective removal of solid contaminants and tramp oil on a regular basis is the best possible way to treat used metalcutting coolants/lubricants, and can extend the life of the lubricant by a factor of five or more, thus reducing the waste disposal problem by the same factor.

Where the major contaminants are volatile substances such as water, fuels or solvents, and where the volume of oil for reclamation is large, it may be economically viable to use a vacuum evaporation or distillation process to remove the volatile contamination. This may be done by the user company on site or by a specialized reclamation company.

The contaminated oil is heated and passed into a vacuum chamber, where the volatiles evaporate and pass into a cooled condenser. There they are condensed, and can be separated into water, fuel and other fractions for disposal or reprocessing.

The oil itself does not volatilize in the vacuum chamber. It is drawn off, cooled and can be further treated as necessary for re-use in lubricants or use as fuel.

Technically, laundering means simply the removal of contaminants from the lubricant, but it may also be useful to make up some depleted component in the oil. The simplest example is the addition of fresh oil concentrate to a soluble oil coolant. The oil droplets in the soluble oil emulsion will stick to metal surfaces or be extracted out into tramp oil, so that their concentration slowly decreases. If this happens the required quantity of fresh oil concentrate can be added to bring the concentration in the coolant back to its proper level.

6.10 Re-processing for fuel use

Laundering techniques can only remove contaminants which are not dissolved in the oil, such as metal and other solid particles, water (in straight oils or invert emulsions) and 'tramp' oil (in soluble oil emulsions or synthetic coolants). Other contaminants may be present which dissolve completely in the oil, such as fuels or light solvents, other oils and oxidation products from the oil and its additives.

Waste oils from which water and solid contaminants have been removed *and which do not contain any light fuels or solvents* are often blended into the works fuel oil supply and burned. They produce almost the same amount

of heat as the fuel oil and thus produce a straight volume-for-volume saving in the fuel bill.

However, there are several important limitations on the use of waste oil as a fuel or fuel supplement. The waste oil may contain a flammable liquid which will create a fire or explosion hazard, or may contain a non-flammable substance such as a chlorine-containing solvent which will interfere with burner operation. Less obviously it may contain soot-forming contaminants such as toluene or coal-tar naphtha, which will soot up burners. Finally, most waste oils, and especially waste engine oils, contain additives which produce undesirable pollutants in the smoke after burning.

Burning of untreated waste oil is therefore usually restricted in the United Kingdom to workshop space heaters of less than 400 KW. The pollutants of greatest concern in flue gas are polychlorinated biphenyls, polynuclear aromatic hydrocarbons, heavy metals and dioxins (formed on burning certain chlorinated compounds). The concentrations of some of these can be reduced by mild treatment of the waste, such as with alkali to remove acidic products, or with absorbents to remove some of the chemically active or marginally soluble compounds.

Flue gas contaminants from large installations, such as 1 MW or more, are usually monitored. The permissible concentrations vary for different contaminants and in different countries, but may be as low as 20 p.p.m.

Where the composition of the waste oil cannot be improved enough for these limits to be met, even with blending, the number of possible outlets is severely reduced.

Destruction of polychlorinated biphenyls and other chlorinated compounds without the production of dioxins requires incineration at 1400 °C or more. This is the last resort as a method of disposal, because not only is there no economic return, but there will also be a charge for disposal in this way.

Cement kilns operate at temperatures up to 2000 °C, so that provided the metal content of the waste oil is not too high, it can be used as fuel in cement kilns without any pollution hazard. However, the potential market for this is limited.

One market which is not yet fully exploited is use in association with scrap vehicle tyres in a gasification process to produce 'synthesis gas' or 'syngas'. This is a mixture of light hydrocarbons used in chemical synthesis plants. Since the product is not released to atmosphere, emission controls as such do not apply. Composition restrictions depend on the use to which the syngas is put, but various cleaning processes such as precipitation and scrubbing can be used. At present the number of gasification plants is very small, but may increase in future.

There is therefore a tendency to divert much of the remaining oil for use as fuel in situations where flue gas composition is not restricted. As the restrictions become tighter and more widespread, this means that more and more waste oil is being used as marine furnace fuel.

The one remaining disposal process is re-refining, in which the waste oil is converted to lubricant-grade base oil.

6.11 Re-refining

In theory the treatment of waste oil to regenerate lubricant base oil is the ideal conservation process, and in fact European Union directives call for priority to be given to re-refining in the disposal of waste lubricating oil. In spite of this, the amount of waste oil currently re-refined in Europe is only a few percent of the amount of new oil manufactured; this is probably similar to the proportion re-refined elsewhere in the world.

The conservation argument is, in fact, not simple. Waste oil which is used as fuel replaces an equivalent volume of new fuel oil, while re-refining requires a significant energy input.

There are many different re-refining processes in current use. The traditional process is the acid/clay process, and on a worldwide basis this is still the most widely used, because over 2000 acid/clay plants are believed to be still in use in China.

The schematic arrangement of a typical acid/clay process is shown in Fig. 6.5. The waste oil is transferred to a large storage tank through a wire screen, which removes large solid objects. The oil is usually allowed to stand in this tank for several days, after which the bulk of the water and sludge can be drained off from the bottom. Either heating or the addition of alkali may be used to improve the separation.

The next stage is usually to remove light fuels and solvents in a vessel in which live steam is passed through the oil. The steam carries away with it any contaminating petrol, paraffin or diesel fuel. The mixed vapour is condensed and the fuel fraction can be separated fairly easily from the water.

The oil is then heated to 40–50 °C and contacted thoroughly with concentrated sulphuric acid. The acid reacts with most of the non-

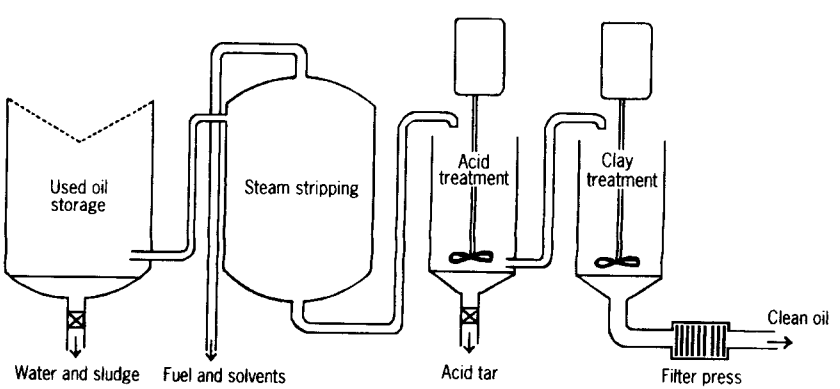


Fig. 6.5 Typical acid/clay re-refining process

Table 6.5 Commercial re-refining processes

Name	*Primary treatment*	*Finish*
Meinken	Heat, sulphuric acid	Clay absorption
IFP	Liquid propane extraction	Clay absorption
Viscolube	Solvent extraction	Vacuum distillation/clay
Viscolube	Thermal deasphalt	Vacuum distillation/clay
RTI	Cyclonic vacuum distillation	Clay absorption
LUWA, Pflauder	VTFD*	Clay absorption
KTI Relube	VTFD	Hydrotreatment
Evergreen	Chemical treatment, VTFD	Hydrogenation
DEA/Edelhoff	VTFD/solvent extraction	Hydrofinish
Snamprogetti	Solvent extraction, vacuum distillation	Hydrotreatment
Leybold/Recyclon	Sodium treatment	Vacuum distillation
Phillips Petroleum	Demetalize, filter	Hydrotreatment

* VTFD, vacuum thin film distillation.

hydrocarbon substances and extracts them from the oil, producing an acid tar which is run off from the bottom of the tank. The oil is then filtered through a bed of Fuller's Earth to remove any remaining acid and solid particles.

The major difficulty with this acid/clay process is that of disposing of the acid tar and acid-contaminated clay (Fuller's Earth) which are produced. Traditionally these have been dumped in landfill sites, but such disposal is no longer acceptable in most countries. As a result a number of alternative processes are now in use which generate much lower quantities of waste, and some of the most important are listed in Table 6.5.

Acid/clay plants can be economical in relatively small capacities, 1500–5000 tons per year, whereas most of the higher technology plants require a throughput of 30 000–50 000 tons per year. It seems likely that the extent of re-refining will increase in future, and the volumes available will encourage the use of the larger plants.

There has been argument for many years about whether the quality of re-refined base oils can match that of fresh refined oils. The difficulty of removing certain contaminants, especially polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons, is claimed to be offset by the fact that the most unstable components of the base oil itself have been removed in the course of its previous use.

One valuable proof of the quality of re-refined oil is that automotive oils formulated from re-refined base-stock have been given CG-4/SH API quality approvals in the United States, and Mercedes-Benz, Volkswagen and MIL-L-46152B approvals in Germany. It is also possible that the very stringent Dexron III approval has now been achieved.

Chapter 7

Greases and Anti-seizes

7.1 The nature of greases

Lubricating greases are not simply very viscous lubricating oils. They are lubricating oils in which thickeners have been dispersed to produce a stable colloidal structure or gel, similar in some respects to an emulsion.

In previous chapters it was explained that an emulsion is a dispersion of small droplets of one liquid in another; the small droplets being prevented from joining together and separating out by the presence of static electrical charges on the droplets. The electrical charges are maintained by surface-active substances which concentrate at the interface between the droplets and the continuous liquid phase.

A concentrated emulsion can have a viscosity far higher than either of the two liquids which form it. The increase in viscosity is caused by the fact that the stabilized droplets resist any deformation from their spherical shape. However, if the droplets are close together the surrounding continuous liquid cannot flow easily between them.

The same is true of dispersions of solid particles in a liquid if the solid particles are prevented from sticking together and settling out by electrical charges in the same way as the droplets in the emulsion. Such a stabilized dispersion of fine solid particles in a liquid is called a colloidal dispersion, and when the dispersion as a whole is concentrated enough to behave as a solid it is called a gel.

It is important to understand this aspect of grease structure because it affects much of the behaviour and many of the properties of the grease.

7.2 Composition of greases

The liquid phase in a lubricating grease is always a lubricating oil. Mineral oils are again the most widely used, and probably over 98 percent of greases

Table 7.1 Some components used in grease formulation

Base oils	*Thickeners*	*Additives*
Mineral oils	Sodium soap	Anti-oxidants
Synthetic hydrocarbons	Calcium soap	Anti-wear additives
Di-esters	Lithium soap	EP additives
Silicones	Aluminium soap	Corrosion inhibitors
Phosphate esters	Lithium complex	Molybdenum disulphide
Perfluoropolyethers	Calcium complex	Friction modifiers
Fluorinated silicones	Aluminium complex	Metal deactivators
Chlorinated silicones	Bentonite clay	VI improvers
Polyglycols	Silica	Pour-point depressants
	Carbon/graphite	Tackiness additives
	Polyurea	Water repellants
	PTFE	Dyes
	Polyethylene	Structure modifiers
	Indanthrene dye	
	Phthalocyanine dye	

are made with mineral oils. Synthetic esters and synthetic hydrocarbons come next, and most of the remainder use silicones. Recently there has been a growing interest in fire-resistant greases for high-risk applications, and phosphate ester greases have been developed. For very high temperatures (over 200 °C) greases made from perfluoropolyethers are also available, but these are expensive and are only used in small quantities. Greases based on vegetable oils have been developed for use in the food industry but these too are not widely used.

The viscosity of the liquid used in making a grease is important. It has some influence on the consistency (i.e. softness or hardness) of the grease, but this is more dependent on the amount and type of thickener. The thickener can be altered to produce a grease of the required hardness even if the viscosity of the base oil varies.

The effect of oil viscosity on the performance of the grease is much more complicated than just to affect the consistency; some major users will specify both the consistency of the whole grease and the viscosity of the base oil. This subject is discussed further in Section 7.5.1.

Some of the base oils used in grease manufacture are listed in Table 7.1.

The second most important component of a grease is the thickener, and in fact grease types are usually classified by the type of thickener used. The most common thickeners are soaps of calcium, sodium, lithium or aluminium, (and less often lead, barium or strontium), either alone or associated with other components. Others include bentonite clay, silica, carbon black and several different polymers.

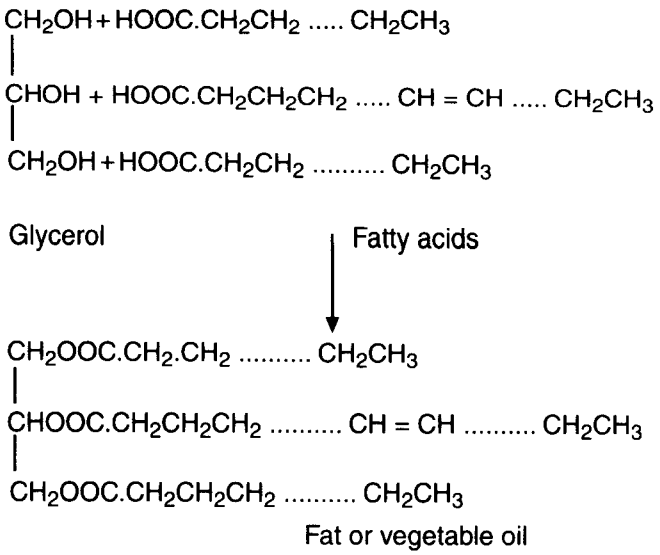

CH2OH + HOOC.CH2CH2 ..... CH2CH3
CHOH + HOOC.CH2CH2CH2 ..... CH = CH CH2CH3
CH2OH + HOOC.CH2CH2 ..... CH2CH3
Glycerol
Fatty acids
CH2OOC.CH2.CH2 ..... CH2CH3
CHOOC.CH2CH2CH2 ..... CH = CH CH2CH3
CH2OOC.CH2CH2CH2 ..... CH2CH3
Fat or vegetable oil

Fig. 7.1 Theoretical mechanism for formation of animal fat or vegetable oil

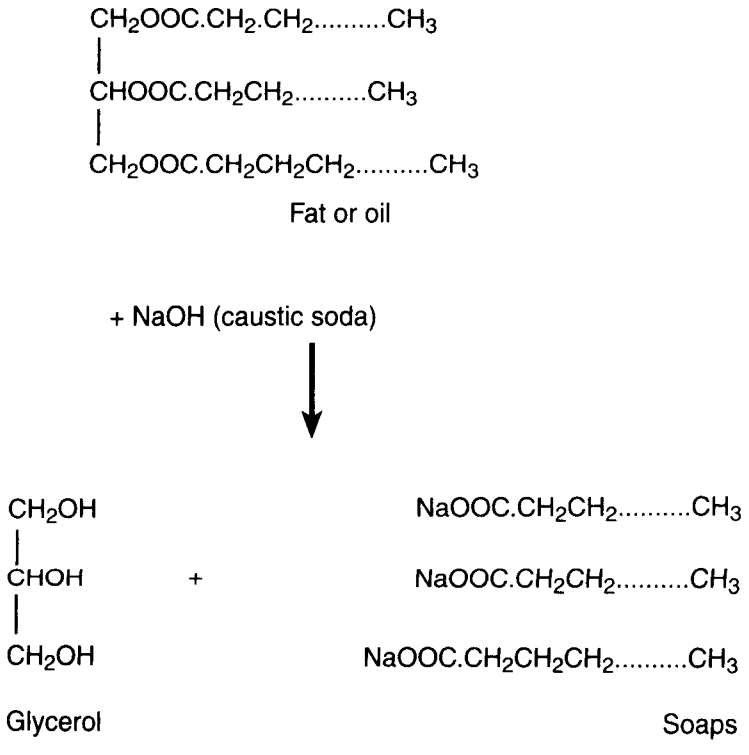


Fig. 7.2 Saponification of fats and oils

As soap-based greases are so important it may be worth explaining briefly what these soaps consist of.

Animal fats and vegetable oils are esters, theoretically formed by the reaction between glycerol (glycerine) and long-chain fatty acids, as shown in Fig. 7.1. If they are heated with an alkali such as lime or sodium hydroxide (caustic soda) they break down to give free glycerol and a mixture of the alkali metal salts of the various fatty acids present, as shown in Fig. 7.2. This process is called saponification, which simply means conversion into soap.

The product is a mixture of soap, glycerol and water, and if the water is removed the residue is a 'soft soap'. Such soaps are very effective in thickening lubricating oils to produce greases. For special applications a single, specially prepared, long-chain fatty acid may be used to prepare the soap, the most widely used being 12-hydroxy-stearic acid.

Unlike the dispersed droplets in emulsions, the thickener particles in greases are not spherical. Those in soap-based greases are in fact fibre-shaped, as shown in Fig. 7.3, and can give a more or less fibrous texture to the grease as a whole. The interlocking of the fibrous thickener particles probably helps to give a harder consistency to the grease, and it is found that non-soap thickeners, which are not fibrous in shape, must often be used at higher concentration than soaps in order to give the same degree of thickening. Some of the thickeners used in grease manufacture are listed in Table 7.1.

Many of the additives which are used in greases are similar to those which are used in lubricating oils, including anti-oxidants, corrosion inhibitors and EP or anti-wear additives. In addition, friction modifiers and structure modifiers may be used. Friction modifiers include polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) powder, nylon, mica, graphite and molybdenum disulphide (which also acts as an EP agent.) Structure modifiers are substances which affect the

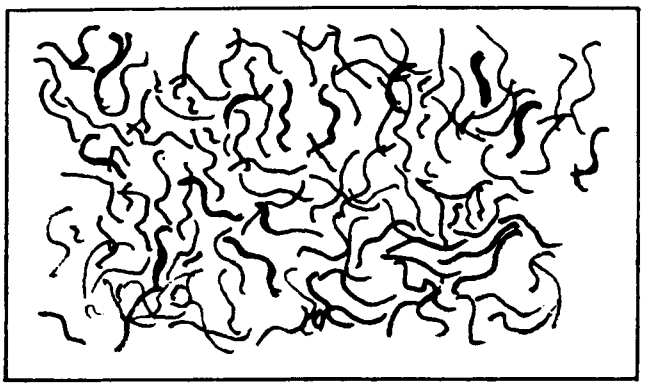


Fig. 7.3 Fibrous structure of soap greases

interaction between thickener and base oil, and they include latex and several different polymers.

Some of the additives used in greases are listed in Table 7.1.

7.3 Grease manufacture

There are important differences in the manufacturing processes for different greases, depending on the type of base oil and thickener and on the softness or hardness required in the finished grease. The general procedure is to disperse the thickener in a small quantity of the base oil at high temperature, and then to add the remainder of the base oil slowly with stirring as the dispersion cools. Additives are usually added in the last stages of dilution and cooling.

In the manufacture of soap-based greases the fat or fatty acid will usually be dispersed in the small quantity of hot base oil, and the alkali added to saponify it. In this way the saponification reaction helps to disperse the resulting soap in the oil. After all the base oil and additives have been added, the grease may be subjected to a milling operation to give a smoother consistency before packaging.

With non-soap greases it is sometimes necessary to disperse the thickener in the whole of the base oil, and a stable gel structure is obtained by carefully controlled milling. In other cases the thickener is dispersed in a small part of the heated base oil and the hot slurry is milled to improve dispersion before combining with the bulk of the oil.

Although some grease is manufactured in continuous plant, batch manufacture in large 'kettles' is more often used. The manufacturing process is sensitive and hard to predict, especially where the saponification process is carried out from natural fats, or where some of the more unusual non-soap thickeners are used.

The manufacture of greases is more of a craft than a science, and even today is often described as witchcraft. The industry is becoming more scientific, but so far the improvements have been concerned mainly with much more careful control, monitoring and recording of the various materials and processes. By these means it is now usually possible to produce consistent batches of grease once a satisfactory process has been established, but it is still not possible by scientific means to predict the properties and performance of a new grease formulation without experimentation.

Where careful control and monitoring are not used, there will often be variations in successive batches produced by the same nominal process. It is then usually possible to correct a batch to the required consistency, but the basic structure of the grease will be variable. As a result the performance is also likely to be variable, especially the operating life and even the storage life.

7.4 Mechanism of action of greases

It is sometimes said that a grease in use acts as a spongy reservoir of base oil, releasing oil slowly to flow onto the bearing surfaces. Some studies with grease-lubricated ball bearings and disc test machines have indicated that this is not the case. After some hours of operation the system reaches equilibrium, with the bulk of the grease in the bearing covers and a very small, apparently liquid, amount actually on the disc, ball or race surfaces. On analysis the material on the contacting surfaces is found to contain much the same concentration of thickener as the original grease, so that the concept of lubrication being performed by oil released from the grease is not correct.

In fact, grease as a whole is an effective lubricant and in spite of its firm consistency it will flow satisfactorily in bearings, gears and other moving systems.

Certainly in grease-lubricated plain bearings, gears, gear couplings, splines, chains etc., grease flows as a whole, and there is no separation of oil. On the other hand grease in storage often suffers some 'bleeding' or slight separation of oil from the bulk. It seems possible that where there is a quantity of undisturbed grease present in a system, such as in the covers of ball bearings or in the unswept part of a gearbox, some separation of oil may take place which can assist in lubrication. However, this is not the main mechanism of action of the grease, and is probably not essential for lubrication.

The amount of grease which is required for effective lubrication at any one instant in a system is very small – just enough to ensure that a film is maintained on the contact surfaces. It is normal practice to supply a far greater quantity of grease, especially where there is no re-supply arrangement.

When the system starts operating, the surplus grease is quickly swept clear of the region which is occupied by the moving parts (balls, rollers, gears etc.) If its consistency (i.e. degree of hardness) is correct it will remain clear of this swept volume. If it is too soft, so that it slumps or collapses back into the path of the moving parts, then it will be continually churned, and this churning can generate a great deal of heat, which may be enough to destroy the grease. The same problem can arise if too much grease is present, so that it cannot all be accommodated in the space available clear of the moving parts.

The consistency and quantity of grease used in a system are therefore quite critical, and both factors will be considered later.

The surplus grease in the system serves two useful purposes. Firstly, it serves as a reservoir to maintain the small quantity which is actually involved in lubricating the contacting surfaces, and secondly, it can form a very effective seal against loss of lubricant from the system, and against ingress of dirt or other contaminants into the system.

There is some disagreement about the reservoir effect. It seems certain that

in most industrial ball bearings the grease life is much longer if this surplus is present. On the other hand, in some special applications such as spacecraft bearings comparable lives have been obtained by a technique called 'grease plating' in which only a thin film is applied to the contact surfaces of the bearings. There are therefore three points of view about the beneficial effect of the surplus grease in an industrial ball bearing.

(a) The surplus provides a reservoir from which the base oil, containing the additives, slowly feeds to the working surfaces. The objections to this as an important effect have been described earlier.
(b) The surplus acts as a reservoir from which additional grease feeds to the working surfaces as necessary. One theory is that if the film of grease on the working surfaces decreases there will be a slight increase in frictional heat. The surface of the surplus grease close to the moving balls then becomes hot, expands and softens and smears extra grease onto the ball surfaces.
(c) The surplus does not act as a reservoir, but only as a seal, preventing the lubricating film from evaporating or migrating out of the bearing, and thus extending its life.

Whatever the mechanism, there is no doubt that the surplus grease increases the life before re-lubrication of the bearing becomes necessary.

The fact that in grease lubrication the lubrication is only performed by a thin film of grease on the contact surfaces has several important consequences. Practically all the friction in the bearing is converted to heat, and this heat cannot be dispersed in a relatively large volume, as is generally the case in oil-lubricated bearings. Even where there is a large volume of grease nearby in the bearing covers or a gearbox, no flow takes place in the grease so that there can be no convective cooling. Heat can only be removed through the shaft and the bearing housings, and this is relatively inefficient.

As a result a grease-lubricated bearing tends to run hotter than an oil-lubricated bearing under the same conditions of speed and load. The higher temperature leads to greater oxidation or thermal breakdown, and the breakdown products are retained in the very small amount of grease in the running film, instead of being dispersed in a greater volume. It follows that grease cannot be used at speeds as high as for oil because the frictional power loss leads to higher temperatures and more rapid deterioration of the grease.

7.5 Properties of greases

7.5.1 *Consistency*

The most important property of grease, which distinguishes it from other types of lubricant, is its semi-solid nature. Greases can in fact vary from very

Table 7.2 NLGI grease classification

NLGI number	*Worked penetration at 25 °C*
000	445–475
00	400–430
0	355–385
1	310–340
2	265–295
3	220–250
4	175–205
5	130–160
6	85–115

soft, or semi-liquid (rather like thick cream) to hard (like a block of wax), and the relative hardness or softness is called the consistency.

Consistency is measured in terms of penetration, the distance in tenths of a millimetre to which a standard metal cone under standard conditions will penetrate into the surface of the grease. The penetrations almost all lie between 475 for a very soft grease and 85 for a very hard one. Consistency is also commonly described by the NLGI classification developed by the American National Lubricating Grease Institute. The relationship between NLGI number and penetration for the full range of greases is shown in Table 7.2.

The consistency of a grease is important in determining its suitability for particular applications, but consistency can change if a grease is worked in a bearing or gearbox, or pumped through a pipe. The extent to which the consistency can change due to mechanical working depends on the stability of the gel structure. An unstable grease may become very soft, or even flow like a liquid, when heavily worked, but more often there is a slight softening or sometimes a slight hardening.

Since a grease is very soft compared with most solids, or perhaps because its function is similar to that of an oil, it tends to be thought of as a very viscous liquid rather than a soft solid.

The difference between a very viscous liquid and a very soft solid is that if a pressure is applied to a liquid it will start to flow, however small the pressure. With a very low pressure and a very viscous liquid the flow rate may be minute, but it will not be zero, and the liquid will not revert to its original shape when the pressure is removed. When a solid is subjected to a very low pressure, it will deform elastically, so that if the pressure is removed the solid will recover its original shape. As the pressure is increased there comes a point where the elastic limit is reached, and at higher pressure the solid will yield, or deform plastically, which means that it will flow. The critical pressure at which it starts to flow is called yield stress.

Greases act as something between viscous liquids and soft solids. Due to its consistency a grease offers a very high initial resistance to flow, but once

moving, and being sheared, at high speed between the surfaces of a bearing or gear, its resistance to flow is very much reduced, and may be determined by the viscosity of the base oil more than by the consistency of the grease.

It is possible to have a viscous oil whose resistance to flow is greater than that of a typical grease. An extreme example would be a silicone oil with a viscosity of 500 000 cSt, which would probably be 1000 times more resistant to flow than a grease. If such an oil could be made to flow at high speed in a bearing, its viscosity (apart from temperature changes) would still be 500 000 cSt so that its resistance to flow would still be enormous. It would, in fact, behave more like an adhesive than a lubricant. With a grease on the other hand, the initial resistance to flow is high, but when it is rapidly sheared in a bearing its apparent viscosity may drop to that of its base oil, perhaps only 100 cSt at 40 °C.

The viscosity of an oil changes quite rapidly with change in temperature. The viscosity of a very viscous oil might decrease by 80 percent if the temperature increases by 25 °C. The consistency of a grease changes relatively little with temperature until it reaches its drop point (see below).

These differences in flow properties between greases and oils are the main factors affecting the choice of grease or oil for the lubrication of a particular system.

Figure 7.4 shows how the apparent viscosity of a grease decreases as the rate of shearing increases.

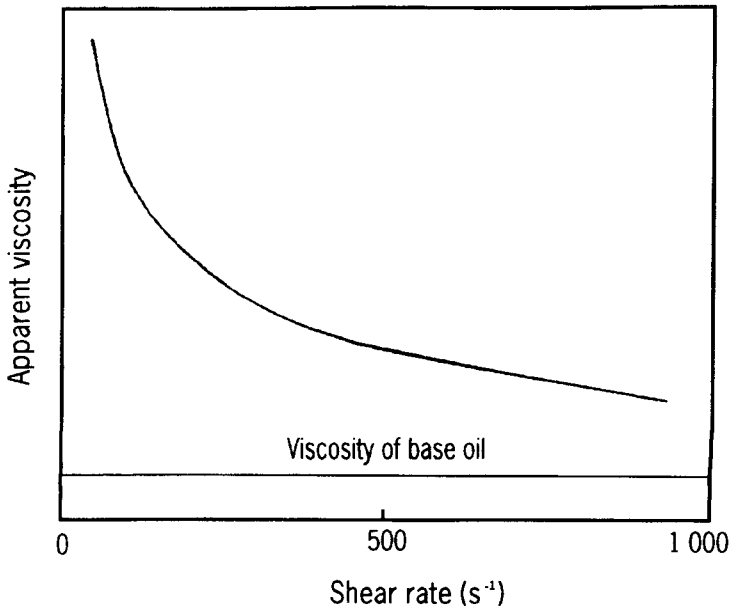


Fig. 7.4 Change of apparent viscosity with shear rate

Table 7.3 Relationship between thickener and drop point

Thickener	*Drop point (°C)*
Sodium soap	165–190
Barium soap	120–150
Calcium soap	60–100
Aluminium soap	100–120
Lithium soap	170–200
Calcium complex	225–250
Aluminium complex	200–260
Lithium complex	250–320
PTFE	230–300

7.5.2 *Effects of temperature*

If a soap-based grease is heated, its penetration increases only very slowly until a certain critical temperature is reached. At this point the gel structure breaks down, and the whole grease becomes liquid (see Fig. 7.5). This critical temperature is called the dropping point or drop point, and typical drop points for a variety of greases are listed in Table 7.3. Some non-soap greases do not show a drop point, and the structure remains stable until the temperature rises to the point at which either the base oil or the thickener decomposes.

If a grease is heated above its drop point and then allowed to cool, it is commonly found that it does not regain the same consistency, and its performance subsequently will often be unsatisfactory. The drop point is therefore an important, though not an absolute, limit to the temperature at which a grease can safely be used.

The importance of the drop point as a limit on the operating temperature depends on the form in which the grease is present in a mechanism, and the way in which it is behaving.

Where the grease is present in an undisturbed situation, such as in the covers of a rolling bearing or the free space in a gearbox, the drop point is a very important, or even an absolute temperature limit, because heating the grease above its drop point may result in a permanent change in consistency. Such a change could affect the sealing performance and the re-supply performance. Even more important is the fact that an increase in penetration (that is, a softening) could result in the grease 'slumping' into the moving parts, leading to churning and overheating.

Similarly, if the grease is present in bulk in a moving mechanism such as a spline, universal coupling or low-speed gear, its consistency will be critical in ensuring that it feeds correctly onto the contact surfaces but does not

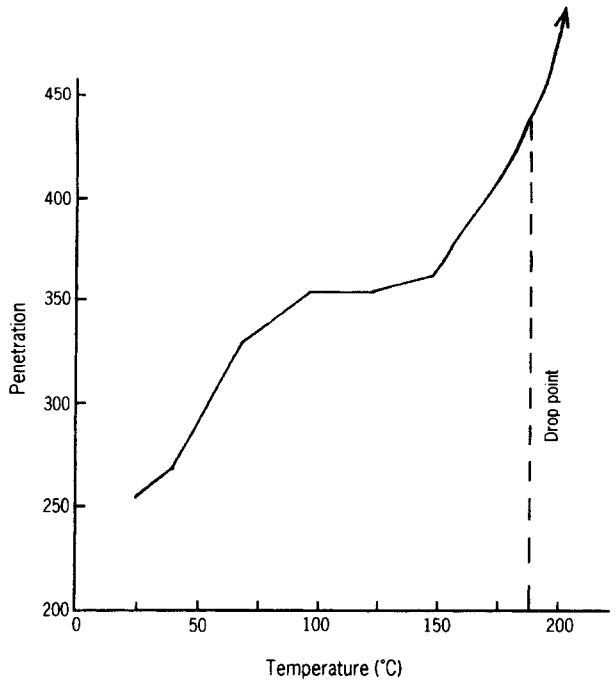


Fig. 7.5 Variation of penetration with temperature for a sodium soap grease

escape from its desired location. Exceeding the drop point will be potentially damaging because of possible softening.

Where the grease is present in the thin lubricating film on moving contact surfaces, especially in high-speed contacts, its structure will already be disrupted, and exceeding the drop point will be relatively unimportant.

The other important factor which limits the high temperature use of a grease is oxidation.

With decreasing temperature a point is ultimately reached where a grease is too hard for the bearing or other greased component to be used. This represents the lowest operating temperature for the grease, although there is some variation in this limit, depending on the shape of the component and the power available.

The low-temperature behaviour depends mainly on the base oil, and greases for low-temperature use must be made from oils having a low viscosity at that temperature.

The base oil in a grease will oxidize in exactly the same way as a lubricating oil of similar type. The thickener will also oxidize, but in most greases the thickener is less prone to oxidation than the base oil.

If the grease is static, as in the covers of a bearing, the rate of oxidation

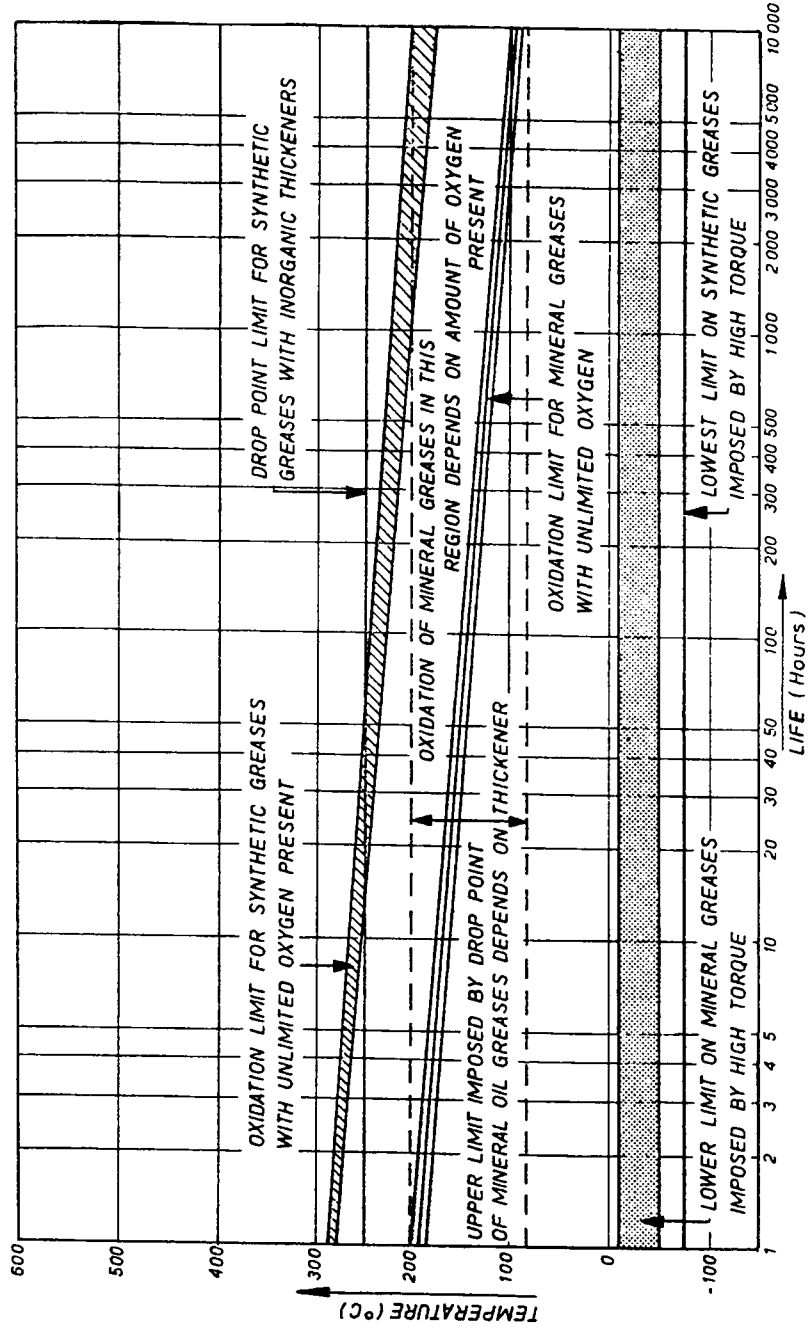


Fig. 7.6 Temperature limits for some greases

will be slower than in a similar oil, because the solid nature of the grease prevents ready access of oxygen to the interior. If the grease is being actively worked the oxygen access is improved, and because of the heat generated by working oxidation can be rapid. Oxidation in the thin lubricating film on the moving contacts is therefore an important factor limiting the usable temperature.

When grease oxidizes it usually darkens, and there is a build-up of acidic oxidation products, just as in a lubricating oil. These products may have a detrimental effect on gel structure, and cause softening, oil bleeding and leakage. Since grease does not flow readily, heat transfer is poor, and serious oxidation can begin at a hot point and spread slowly through the grease. This produces carbonization and progressive hardening or crust formation, and overall the effects of oxidation tend to be more harmful in a grease than in an oil. The breakdown products are particularly damaging in the thin lubricating film on the moving contact surfaces.

One special case is where the base oil is a polyglycol. Here there is no tendency to carbonization and the polyglycol progressively volatilizes away as it becomes overheated, leaving only thickener. In order to ensure that the thickener residue is as effective a lubricant as possible, it is common practice to thicken a polyglycol grease with carbon or graphite.

One curious effect which is not entirely understood is that the maximum temperature for use of a grease is lower by 20 or 30 °C in very small ball bearings than it is in larger ball bearings. This may be due to the greater surface-to-volume ratio in small volumes, allowing proportionally greater oxygen access.

The temperature limits for use of greases are therefore determined by drop point and oxidation, and by stiffening at low temperature, and these effects are summarized for certain greases in Fig. 7.6.

7.5.3 *Migration of base oil*

The base oil in a grease can flow through the thickener network under certain circumstances, as if it were passing through a porous medium such as a filter. This property is known as permeability. It does not seem to occur in most normal applications, and does not usually affect the behaviour of a grease, but there are two situations in which it can be important.

The first arises when grease is pumped through a pipe, such as in a centralized grease lubrication system. If for any reason there is an abnormal resistance to flow at some point in the system, then the grease may form a plug with pressure building up behind it. When this happens the base oil in the grease behind the plug may start to flow through the plug, giving free oil or softened grease ahead of the plug, and leaving excess thickener behind which will intensify the plugging. Greases which are to be pumped through

long pipes should therefore be tested, such as in a pressure filter, to ensure that they do not behave in this way.

The second situation is when two different greases are present in the same system. Where the two greases are in contact their base oils may migrate across the interface, so that a certain amount of exchange takes place. The base oil and thickener in each grease will have been carefully matched in manufacture to give the required consistency and flow properties. Exchange of base oils can therefore result in poor matching of base oil and thickener with the result that one or both of the greases breaks down and liquefies or separates.

7.5.4 *Compatibility*

This effect of base oil exchange is one aspect of the problem of compatibility. In most cases, when two greases of similar type are mixed, no serious problem is likely to arise, but occasionally grease incompatibility can lead to complete failure. The possibility of incompatibility is considered sufficiently important that the American Society of Testing and Materials (ASTM) has published a code of practice, ASTM D-6185 *Practice for Evaluating Compatibility of Binary Mixtures of Lubricating Greases*. As a general rule, therefore, two different greases should not be mixed in a system. Where nipples are fitted for re-greasing a bearing and the type of grease previously used is not known, it is good practice to feed fresh grease until all the old grease is flushed from the bearing and fresh grease appears at the outlet.

The compatibility of greases with rubber seals and other non-metallic materials is also important, but this depends mainly on the base oil and has been considered in Chapter 3.

7.5.5 *Contamination*

Greases can become contaminated with wear debris, dirt, breakdown products, water and other liquids, in the same way as lubricating oils, but the effects in greases are usually different.

In an oil-lubricated system solid contaminants can be flushed out from the bearing surfaces and deposited harmlessly in some other part of the system. With grease this cannot occur, and solid particles remain held in the grease. Thus wear debris remains in the contact zone, and grease which is fed into the contact zone will carry with it any dirt which contaminates it. This applies also to any debris formed by overheating or other deterioration of the grease. It is therefore particularly important to make sure that the grease fed into a system by means of a grease-gun or centralized system is kept clean and free of dust or other contaminants.

On the credit side, the surplus grease in the covers of a ball bearing or

inside the case of a gearbox or other device can trap dirt and prevent it from reaching the contact surfaces.

If a grease becomes contaminated with oil, fuel or a solvent in which the base oil can dissolve, then the grease structure will break down and the grease may become liquid. Liquids in which the base oil is not soluble are less harmful but can slowly damage the gel structure of the grease and soften it. Water can act in this way, initially softening the grease, then dissolving some soap thickener and emulsifying base oil, and finally washing away some of the degraded material. Non-soap thickeners such as bentonite clays or silica will not dissolve in water, but the gel structure may still be made unstable so that the grease softens.

Acidic oxidation products can also destabilize the structure, causing softening, but ultimately oxidation tends to cause hardening of the grease. When fresh grease is fed into a bearing which has been hot, the acidic oxidation products in the old grease may attack its structure causing rapid breakdown. As far as possible sufficient fresh grease should be introduced to flush out all the old degraded grease.

7.6 Advantages and disadvantages of grease

The main function of an oil or a grease is to interpose a film between two surfaces so that they can slide without excessive friction and without damage.

The advantages and disadvantages of grease as compared with oil follow mainly from the differences in their flow properties. In simple terms it is harder to introduce a grease between two bearing surfaces to form a lubricating film because of its resistance to flow, but once the film is formed it is more difficult to remove.

7.6.1 *Advantages*

The following are examples of situations where the higher resistance of a grease to deformation or flow is beneficial.

(a) *The stop–start problem.* When an oil-lubricated system is shut down, the oil immediately begins to drain away from many of the bearing surfaces. Since the oil is usually at its hottest before shut-down, its viscosity will be low and it will drain quickly. The result is that when the system is re-started many of the bearing surfaces will lack lubricant until a fresh supply of oil has reached them.

Polymer-thickened multigrade oils have some advantage in this situation, but greases have almost no tendency to drain away because of their semi-solid consistency. They therefore maintain an effective film on bearing surfaces during a shut-down.

(b) *Squeeze film lubrication.* Apart from the problems of lubrication when one bearing surface slides over another, there are also many situations where one bearing surface moves towards the other, either with or without any sideways movement. Under these circumstances lubrication is assisted by what is called the 'squeeze film effect' (see Section 1.4). The effectiveness of the protection given by an oil film increases with the viscosity of the oil, but a grease is particularly effective in squeeze film conditions because it acts almost as an elastic solid. Some examples are in plain thrust bearings, motor vehicle chassis bearings and recoil mechanisms.

(c) *Sealing problems.* Seals are used with bearings for two reasons: to prevent lubricant from leaking from the bearing, and to prevent dirt and other contaminants from entering. With oil lubrication the ability to flow readily makes it easy for oil to leave the bearing, and even if seals are used it is difficult to completely prevent the oil from leaking. With grease lubrication the poor flow properties prevent the grease from leaving the bearing easily, so that seals may not be required, while the surplus grease itself acts as an effective seal against contaminants. Greases are, in fact, sometimes used to seal systems containing water or gases, the grease being packed into the annular space between two rings around a rotating or reciprocating shaft. The device is known as a packed gland.

(d) *Supply of surplus lubricant.* The fluidity of oil makes it necessary to use complicated systems to control or feed an extra supply to the bearing. The semi-solid nature of grease enables it to be fed into the spaces around the working surfaces with little or no special design feature being needed to control it.

(e) *Contamination of product.* In the manufacture of critically clean products such as pharmaceuticals, food and textiles, it is difficult to prevent contamination of the product by oil, which tends to leak or splash. The problem is much more easily controlled with grease.

(f) *Use of solid additives.* Insoluble solid additives such as molybdenum disulphide and graphite will remain fully dispersed in grease, whereas they tend in time to settle out of oils.

7.6.2 *Disadvantages*

Some of the disadvantages of greases are also due to their resistance to flow, but others are related to the instability of the gel structure.

(a) *Reduced cooling/heat transfer.* Oil can transfer heat by forced flow or convection; in this way it can be very effective in cooling bearings or gears, removing frictional heat or ambient heat. Grease is almost completely ineffective in heat transfer.

(b) *Limitations on bearing speed.* Due to its high effective viscosity, grease causes higher viscous friction than oil. As bearing speeds increase, the

power absorbed due to viscous friction also increases, and this power is converted to heat. Since grease is ineffective as a coolant, the temperature rises rapidly to the point where the grease is overheated. This imposes a lower speed limit on grease-lubricated bearings than on similar oil-lubricated bearings.

(c) *Poorer storage stability*. If an oil is stored in a non-corrodable container without air, its life is almost indefinite. Greases under the same conditions are less stable, and after long storage some may separate, soften, harden, darken, or in the case of soap-thickened greases, become rancid.

(d) *Lack of uniformity*. Greases tend to be more variable than oils because of the batch manufacturing processes and the poor predictability of the processes.

(e) *Compatibility*. Provided that lubricating oils are of the same type (e.g. mineral, ester, silicone) they rarely present any problems of compatibility. On the other hand, greases may not be fully compatible with each other even if they use similar base oils and thickeners.

(f) *Lower resistance to oxidation*. The effect of oxidation products on the gel stability makes greases more susceptible to oxidation problems than oils.

7.7 Selection and applications of greases

The selection of a grease for a particular application depends on three factors: the type of component, the temperature and the environment. In practice a wide variety of applications can be satisfactorily handled by a so-called 'multi-purpose grease'. This is usually an NLGI No. 2 mineral oil grease, and will often be lithium hydroxystearate or aluminium complex-thickened.

Where the manufacturer of the equipment recommends a particular type of grease, or even a particular brand, this recommendation should generally be followed unless there are good reasons for not doing so.

The recommendation may include the type of base oil, type of thickener, consistency, base oil viscosity and any requirement for EP additives.

Where no specific recommendations exist, the following guidelines can be used.

7.7.1 *Type of component*

7.7.1.1 *Rolling bearings*

Greases for use in rolling bearings will generally be of NLGI Grades Nos 1, 2, 3 or 4, and a No. 2 would normally be the first choice. The factors involved in deciding which grade to use are as follows.

(a) *Speed*. The higher the speed the harder the grease, so for high speeds use No. 3. The maximum outer race speed for grease-lubricated rolling bearings is about 15 m/s (3000 ft/min).

(b) *Bearing size*. Use a harder grease in a large bearing, No. 3 or even No. 4.
(c) *Sealing*. If there is a particular need for effective sealing, use a harder grease, No. 3 or No. 4.
(d) *Shock loads or vibration*. Shock load or vibration tends to cause grease to slump into the moving components causing churning. A harder grease reduces the problem, so use No. 3 or No. 4. (Note that normal steady loading does not strongly influence the grade.)
(e) *Temperature*. For starting in very cold climates a softer grade may be helpful. The influence of temperature is considered in greater detail later.
(f) *Centralized grease supply*. Use a softer grade, No. 2, No. 1 or even No. 0.

Thus a small low-speed bearing in a cold environment might require a No. 1 grease, while a large bearing with shock loads or a particular sealing problem might use a No. 3, but if in doubt use a No. 2.

The quantity of grease used is quite critical. If the bearing and housing are completely filled, the surplus grease cannot escape from the working zone and will be continually churned, causing overheating. Various recommendations range from 25 to 60 percent of the total volume for ball bearings and about 30 percent for roller bearings. For ball bearings the quantity depends on the speed, and 25 percent is probably best for high-speed bearings and 40–50 percent for slow ones. For extremely slow bearings there is much less tendency to overheat, and even full packing may not cause any serious problem, except for unnecessarily high viscous drag.

If the temperature of the bearing can be monitored, it will be found that in a properly filled bearing the temperature first rises, to as much as 70–80 °C, and then falls to a steady running temperature of 30–40 °C. If there is too much grease, the temperature will rise and remain high, whereas with insufficient grease the initial rise will not occur, or will be reduced.

Whatever percentage grease fill is used, it is important to make sure that the races and rolling elements are fully coated. Due to the poor flow properties of grease, an uncoated area may remain dry for some time and become damaged. It is therefore good practice when assembling a bearing to apply a thin film of grease over all the running surfaces.

With a few types of roller bearing where sliding takes place under load, such as tapered roller bearings, an EP grease should be used.

This problem of the optimum percentage packing raises difficulties in re-lubrication, whether by grease-gun or centralized system. Unless grease valves are fitted to allow the surplus to escape, the greatest danger is that too much will be added. Bearing manufacturers sometimes give guidance to the frequency and amount of re-lubrication. If the initial grease pack was correct, the bearing is not overheating, and there are no obvious signs of leakage, it may not be necessary to add grease until the time comes to strip and re-

lubricate the bearing. If there are signs of leakage, then the amount of leakage may indicate the amount of make-up required, but it will normally be advisable to add only a small proportion of the total fill, perhaps 5 percent at a time.

7.7.1.2 *Plain bearings*

Although grease may be the first choice to be considered for rolling bearings, this is probably not true for plain bearings.

However, for plain journal bearings, or sleeve bearings, greases may be the best choice when the speed of rotation is slow, the clearances are large, or the bearing is subject to shock loading or frequent stops, or is inaccessible for re-lubrication.

The limiting speed of rotation for grease lubrication of plain bearings is much lower than for rolling bearings of comparable size, as can be seen in Fig. 2.1. This is because in a plain bearing a higher quantity of grease will be continuously sheared so that more heat will be generated. The actual speed limit is about 1–2 m/s (200–400 ft/min), representing 400 r/min in a 5 cm diameter bearing or 50 r/min in an 80 cm diameter bearing.

Many plain journal bearings can be lubricated satisfactorily for quite long periods with only a small initial charge of grease. However, it must be remembered that in such a bearing the whole of the charge is being worked all the time. It follows that, however stable the grease, there will come a time when it softens too much to remain in the bearing, or oxidizes, darkens and hardens or dries. The time this takes will depend on the speed, the clearance, the temperature and the stability of the grease.

Suitable greases are of No. 2 or No. 1 consistency, not tacky and not showing significant oil separation, but softening rather than hardening on prolonged working. The initial charge should be sufficient to ensure that the whole of the bearing and journal surfaces are coated and some grease is forced axially out of the bearing.

Preferably, some means of re-greasing should be provided, either hand-operated grease gun, automatic pump or centralized system. The grease can be fed into the bearing through a central hole associated with an axial groove and located between 90° and 180° from the loaded zone on the entry side. The groove should extend to about 80 percent of the full axial length of the bearing, and should be wider and deeper than for oil lubrication to allow for the higher viscosity of grease.

Wherever possible, fresh grease should be fed into the bearing until all the old grease has been displaced and the fresh grease exudes from the bearing. The quantity and quality of the old grease will indicate whether a shorter re-greasing period is required.

Certain other types of plain bearing, such as sliders or thrust washers may be grease-lubricated provided that the geometry ensures that grease remains

present. Tilting pad thrust or journal bearings cannot satisfactorily be lubricated with grease.

7.7.1.3 *Enclosed gears*

Grease may be used to lubricate gear sets where these are small, slow, intermittent or have a tendency to leak oil.

The main problem in grease lubrication of gears is again that of poor heat transfer. Small boxes have a higher specific surface area (i.e. surface area divided by weight or volume) and therefore lose heat more easily. Slow or intermittent gears have less tendency to generate heat.

For intermittent operation a major advantage of grease is that a film of lubricant is maintained on the moving parts while the box is not operating; adequate lubrication is therefore obtained immediately on starting. The grease should be a soft one, No. 1, 0 or even 00, to give low viscous friction.

From 2 to 5 percent of molybdenum disulphide may be included in the grease, especially if the gears are highly loaded. This improves the maintenance of a low-friction film on the surfaces while stationary, and improves the load-carrying capacity.

For small gearboxes which run more continuously the grease should again be a relatively soft one, No. 0 or 1. It should not soften too much with continuous working, or stiffen quickly when movement stops. Greases which soften quickly when sheared but stiffen quickly when shearing stops are called thixotropic.

The larger the gearbox, the harder should be the grease. If a soft grease is used in large quantity, it will not remain clear of the moving parts, but will slump into them. As a result it will be continually worked or churned, leading to overheating and breakdown of the grease.

Thixotropic greases are particularly useful where grease is being used to reduce leakage. The grease in contact with the gear surfaces will be soft while being worked, but elsewhere in the gearbox it will be stiffer and will not leak. For many purposes a thixotropic No. 1, 0 or 00 grease will be adequate, but for slow, heavily loaded gears a No. 2 grease with slight thixotropic properties may be better.

A small quantity (2–4 percent) of molybdenum disulphide may again be used to improve load-carrying capacity and prevent scuffing at high loads. Where a molybdenum disulphide-containing grease is recommended, the user should buy one rather than adding molybdenum disulphide to an existing grease, as this can affect the structure and stability.

7.7.1.4 *Open gears*

The advantage of grease for open gears is that it is more effectively retained on the gear teeth than an oil, but tacky or adhesive additives such as bitumen are often used in open gear greases, to improve adhesion. The grease may be No. 0, 1 or 2, depending on the size, speed and load; a soft grease being

used for large, slow or lightly loaded gears. For light or intermittent duty the initial grease pack may last for a long time, but for large gears which are continuously operating a mechanical feed or even a grease spray may be used. The speed limit is similar to that for plain bearings, but certainly should not be more than 5 m/s (1000 ft/min).

7.7.1.5 *Other components*

The most widely used grease for lubricating most flexible couplings is a No. 2 multi-purpose grease containing an anti-oxidant; the same is true of a wide range of other components.

7.7.2 *Temperature*

The general effects of temperature on greases were discussed in Section 6.5.2, The following sections give some advice on grease selection for specific temperature situations.

7.7.2.1 *Low temperatures*

The most important factor in determining the low-temperature limit for operation of a grease is the viscosity or pour point of the base oil. Table 7.4 lists the low-temperature limits for several different types of grease.

The consistency is also important, particularly when the equipment must be started at low temperature. However, it is the consistency at the low temperature which is important, not at the usual temperature of 25 °C which is used for laboratory testing. Since the consistency is not normally measured, and not easily measured, at low temperature, the best guidance is to select the base oil type first and then select a suitable grade made with that base oil. For example, a di-ester grease may be suitable for use at –50 °C and a No. 2 grease will probably give easier starting at –50 °C than a No. 3 grease.

Table 7.4 Low-temperature limits for various greases

Base oil	*Thickener*	*Minimum temperature (°C)*
Mineral oil	Calcium soap	–20
Mineral oil	Sodium soap	0
Mineral oil	Lithium soap	–40
Mineral oil	Bentonite clay	–30
Synthetic hydrocarbon	Lithium or aluminium complex	–70
Di-ester	Lithium soap	–75
Di-ester	Bentonite clay	–55
Silicone	Lithium soap	–55
Silicone	Dye	–75

7.7.2.2 *High temperatures*

The maximum temperature for use of a grease depends on both the drop point and the stability of the base oil and other components. These effects have been summarized in Section 7.5.2.

A grease may still give effective lubrication above its drop point, but it will no longer be a grease. For example, a sodium soap grease might be liquid at 130 °C, but provided the base oil was viscous enough, the liquid could still give satisfactory lubrication, although the particular advantages of a grease would be lost.

A grease cannot usually give satisfactory lubrication once its base oil has decomposed due to excessive temperature, but the rate of decomposition depends on temperature and time, as shown in Fig. 7.6. It follows that greases may be usable for short periods at temperatures higher than those at which they start to decompose.

7.7.3 *Environmental factors*

The types of environmental factor which affect grease selection include vacuum (in spacecraft, aircraft or vacuum equipment), dirty environments (such as mining and quarrying), clean environments (such as food, textile and pharmaceutical industries), and high-fire-risk situations (such as coal-mining, aviation and certain chemical processes). The following examples will illustrate the way in which these factors are taken into account in grease selection.

7.7.3.1 *Coal-mining*

Greases are widely used in coal-mining because of their ability to seal out dirt. They are also preferred to oil because they reduce leakage and because their poor flow reduces fire risks. They therefore tend to be fairly stiff, either No. 2 or No. 3, to give maximum sealing and minimum leakage. Where softer greases are desirable, as in enclosed gearboxes, they should be thixotropic, as explained previously.

Although greases present lower fire risk than oils, they can nevertheless initiate fires. A number of underground fires have been caused by grease-lubricated conveyor bearings, especially when over-greasing has resulted in accumulations of grease around the bearing locations. There is therefore some interest in fire-resistant greases; those which have been developed include some using phosphate ester base oils.

7.7.3.2 *Food industry*

The dominant problem in the food industry, as in the pharmaceutical and textile industries, is to prevent contamination of the products. Greases are again used in order to cut down the risk of leakage, and the tendency is to use No. 2 or No. 3. In addition, many governments restrict the types of

Table 7.5 Some substances which have been permitted in greases for the food industry

Base oil	*Thickener*	*Additive*
White oils	Silica	Phenylnaphthylamine
Polybutenes	Polyisobutylene	Butylhydroxyanisole
Methyl silicones	Polyethylene	Sodium nitrite
Castor oil		Isopropyl oleate

thickener and base oil which may be used, so that any accidental contamination will not be harmful. Table 7.5 lists some components which have been authorized at some time in the United States for use in greases for food-making machinery, although anyone selecting a lubricant for use in connection with food manufacture or processing must always ensure that the lubricant chosen meets the latest regulations.

Petrolatum (petroleum jelly) is also used as a lubricant for certain low-duty applications in the food industry. However, its mediocre load-carrying capacity and temperature limitations restrict its use.

7.7.3.3 *Aviation*

Greases are used instead of oil wherever possible in aircraft because of the weight penalty involved in providing oil feed systems and sealing. In general, oil is used only where there is a serious cooling requirement, as in the engines, or where the oil serves some other primary purpose, such as in hydraulic systems, brake systems or undercarriage oleo assemblies.

Although many thousands of aircraft in general aviation have no need to operate at extremely low temperatures, the development of such aircraft has been dominated by the North American market, where the surface temperature in winter may reach –45 °C. In addition, all modern airline and military aircraft are required to operate at high altitudes and high latitudes, where temperatures may be even lower – reaching –75 °C in places.

Modern high-speed aircraft also experience high temperatures due to aerodynamic heating, and for many applications greases are required to operate at 175 °C, while for a few specialized applications the specified temperature is over 200 °C.

Thus a supersonic aircraft may be required to start up after standing at –50 °C, to take-off almost immediately, and to be experiencing component temperatures of over 150 °C a short time later when flying at supersonic speeds. The greases must therefore be capable of operating satisfactorily from below –50 °C to above 150 °C.

Fortunately certain base oils are capable of covering such a wide temperature range. Clay-thickened di-ester greases have been available for many years which can be used from –54 to 150 °C. More recently, synthetic

hydrocarbons thickened with modified clays have been developed to cover even wider temperature ranges.

7.7.3.4 *Spacecraft*

In the early days of space exploration it was assumed that lubricants would have to have exceptionally low volatility to withstand the high vacuum of space. Certain greases used in early spacecraft were based on chlorinated silicones or special low-volatility mineral oils, but these were not very good lubricants.

More recently it has been found that the evaporation of oil from grease-lubricated rolling bearings can be controlled by the use of labyrinth seals, and more conventional mineral-based greases are now sometimes used in such applications.

7.8 Methods of applying greases

Where grease is used as the initial fill for rolling bearings and such components as door locks, car window winders and so on, it is very often applied by hand. For filling large bearings or gearboxes, 'paddles' shaped like small table-tennis bats may be used.

To increase the supply of grease to the component in service, a reservoir may be supplied in the form of a cup or block of grease. The greases for such systems are stiffer than would otherwise be used, No. 3 or 4 for a 'cup grease' and No. 5 or 6 for a 'block grease'.

By far the most common method of re-greasing a mechanism is by means of a grease-gun, with the grease applied through a nipple. Figure 7.7 shows the construction of a typical grease-gun.

One of the problems in re-greasing is to ensure that the right quantity is supplied; in general the tendency is to supply too much. With simple bushes such as many of those in motor vehicles, any surplus will easily escape from

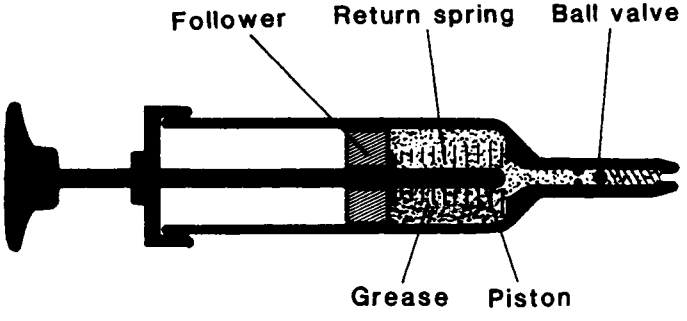


Fig. 7.7 Cross-section of a typical grease-gun

the other end of the bush or through the rubber seals. With more complex components it may be desirable to remove a drain plug during re-greasing and again after a few hours operation to allow any surplus to escape.

A more modern development is a grease valve, which allows any surplus to escape under pressure, but prevents dirt from entering.

Grease can also be supplied automatically by means of a grease feed system, similar in many ways to those used for oil. Greases used with centralized systems should preferably be soft, i.e. No. 0 or 1, but No. 2 greases are sometimes used.

All centralized grease lubrication systems are total loss systems, and the various types are similar to those described in Section 5.2 for total loss oil systems. Due to the poor flow properties of grease, high pressures can be generated, so that centralized systems tend to be very robust. Pipe sizes must generally be larger, and pipe runs short to avoid plugging and percolation of base oil through a plug of thickener.

7.9 Anti-seize and anti-scuffing compounds

These materials are perhaps best defined in terms of the job they are designed to do. The main purpose of anti-seize compounds is to prevent two metal surfaces from binding together or actually seizing under conditions of high load and either very low speed or stationary contact. For example an anti-seize compound might be applied to the threads of a nut and bolt to prevent them from seizing while being tightened or to prevent them from binding together while stationary after having been tightened.

(The terms 'binding' and 'seizing' do not have any widely recognized definitions. Here 'binding' is used to describe the very high friction which can arise when two surfaces are loaded together, but which disappears if the load is removed without leaving any damage. 'Seizing' is used to describe the high friction sticking of two surfaces under load which results in some surface damage and often persists after the load is removed.)

Anti-scuffing compounds are designed to prevent damage to surfaces while sliding against each other at high load and low speed. Scuffing is often the first stage in seizure of two components, so that the requirements of an anti-scuffing compound are similar to those of an anti-seize compound, and the same material can often be used for both purposes.

The general characteristics of both anti-seize and anti-scuffing compounds are:

- high viscosity, to prevent them from being forced out easily;
- low friction to enable the surfaces to move without damage under high load;
- high load-carrying capacity, to prevent asperities on the two surfaces from welding together when sliding under high load;
- good physical and chemical stability, and inertness to the contacting

surfaces, because they may be expected to prevent seizure of components bolted or clamped together for very long periods.

Ordinary greases and high-viscosity oils may be used as anti-seize and anti-scuffing compounds, but the purpose-made compounds usually consist of high concentrations of solid lubricants in grease, oil or petrolatum. Some examples of typical anti-seize and anti-scuffing compounds are given below.

(a) Between 40 and 70 percent of molybdenum disulphide powder in a grease or petrolatum (soft petroleum wax, petroleum jelly). This acts as an anti-scuffing paste or anti-seize at low temperatures and as an anti-seize up to over 250 °C. At the high temperatures the grease or petrolatum will decompose or liquefy, but the concentration of molybdenum disulphide in the residue is high enough to maintain effective lubrication.

(b) Fifty percent of graphite in a base of petrolatum or polyglycol. This is usable on threaded fittings such as sparking plugs up to 500 °C. At high temperatures the base material decomposes or liquefies, leaving little (with petrolatum) or no (with polyglycol) residue, and the graphite remains as an effective anti-seize until it too begins to oxidize above 500 °C. For electrical components such as sparking plugs the graphite also improves electrical conductivity through the threaded joint.

(c) Graphite in the form of a paste in a volatile solvent such as ethyl alcohol or acetone. This is a technique for applying a thick film of dry graphite powder to a metal surface, from which the volatile solvent rapidly evaporates.

(d) A paste of graphite in water, or in a non-flammable fluid such as a fluorocarbon. This is used as an anti-seize for low-pressure oxygen systems.

(e) Pastes of low-friction metal powders such as lead and copper in petrolatum or polyglycol, or similar powders in a low-melting polymer or flux. These metal powders are effective anti-seizes to temperatures as high as 1000 °C, and are sometimes used on threads of sparking plugs, where the metal powders help to ensure electrical continuity.

It is very important to remember that anti-seize compounds containing a high concentration of molybdenum disulphide will generate very low friction during assembly. Where an assembly torque is specified for a bolted assembly, the resulting bolt tension could be as much as 10 times as high if a molybdenum disulphide anti-seize is used. This has been known to cause tensile failure of bolts during assembly or rapid fatigue failure in service.

Chapter 8

Dry Bearings and Solid Lubrication

8.1 Mechanism of solid lubrication

Solid lubrication is simply the lubrication of two interacting surfaces by means of solid materials interposed between them.

Depending on the nature of the two surfaces, a wide variety of solid materials can reduce friction and prevent seizure. For example, dust, sand or gravel on the surface of a road can cause vehicles to skid because they decrease friction between tyres and the road surface. Technically speaking, they are acting as lubricants, but of course, no one would normally recommend dust, sand or gravel as solid lubricants.

Hundreds of different solids have in fact been tested for use as solid lubricants, and probably scores of them have been used in practical applications. They include materials such as mica, talc and chalk. However, the ability to reduce friction is only one of the important properties of solid lubricants, and most materials have serious faults which rule them out as effective lubricants. As a result the vast majority of solid lubricant applications are met by only three materials: graphite, molybdenum disulphide and polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE).

The properties which are desirable for a good solid lubricant are:

- low but constant and controlled friction;
- chemical stability over the required temperature range;
- no tendency to attack or damage the bearing materials;
- preferably strong adherence to one or both bearing surfaces so that it is not rapidly lost from the bearing;
- sufficient resistance to wear to provide a useful life;
- ease of application in a controlled manner;
- lack of toxicity;
- economy.

Table 8.1 Some materials used as solid lubricants

Layer-lattice compounds	
Molybdenum disulphide	Graphite
Tungsten diselenide	Tungsten disulphide
Niobium diselenide	Tantalum disulphide
Calcium fluoride	Graphite fluoride
Polymers	
PTFE	Nylon
PTFCE	Acetal
PVF_2	Polyimide
FEP	Polyphenylene sulphide
PEEK	
Metals	
Lead	Tin
Gold	Silver
Indium	
Other inorganics	
Molybdic oxide	Boron trioxide
Lead monoxide	Boron nitride

These requirements are very demanding, and most of the successful compounds are either polymers, inorganic powders or metals. Some of these are listed in Table 8.1. Many of them are incorporated in composites. These are mixed materials in which, for example, a soft bulk solid may be reinforced to make it stronger, or a lubricant powder may be dispersed in a strong solid to reduce its friction, or a binder may be used to hold together the particles of a powdered lubricant. The variety of solid lubricating composites is enormous, but only a few types have been used at all widely, and the important types will be described later.

Graphite and PTFE, and many other solid lubricants and composites can be used to construct bearings or bearing components. These are often known as 'dry' bearings, but the expression is not entirely satisfactory. Under certain circumstances more conventional types of bearing can be operated without lubricants, for example at light loads, low speeds or very low temperatures, and they would equally be 'dry bearings'. A better expression is 'self-lubricating bearings'.

The term 'dry-bearing materials' is more acceptable, since it means materials which are specifically used to manufacture bearings intended to operate without lubricants. In practice solid lubricants and dry-bearing materials are very similar and may even be identical; they are best considered as a single group of materials.

The three important solid lubricants, and many of the others, all have a

Fig. 8.1 Layered structure of many solid lubricants

layered structure, as shown in Fig. 8.1. With graphite, molybdenum disulphide, calcium fluoride and others, the layers consist of flat sheets of atoms or molecules, and the structure is called a 'layer-lattice' structure. With PTFE and some other polymers the layers consist of long, parallel, straight molecular chains.

The important effect is the same in all these cases, namely that the materials can shear more easily parallel to the layers than across them. As a result they can support relatively heavy loads at right angles to the layers while still being able to slide easily parallel to the layers. The theoretical analysis is given in the Appendix to this chapter, but briefly the coefficient of friction is equal to the shear stress parallel to the layers divided by the yield stress or hardness perpendicular to the layers.

With PTFE, and with molybdenum disulphide and some similar materials, the shear stress parallel to the layers is inherently low. In other words, the low shear stress is a property of the material itself. With certain other layer-lattice materials, particularly graphite, the shear stress parallel to the layers is not particularly low when the material is pure or clean, but becomes low when contaminants like water vapour are present.

Since the low friction only occurs parallel to the layers, it follows that these solid lubricants will only be effective when their layers are parallel to the direction of sliding.

It is also important that the solid lubricant should adhere strongly to the bearing surface, otherwise it would be easily rubbed away and give very short service life. The best of the solid lubricants all stick very strongly to metal surfaces or even to many non-metals. However, some layer-lattice compounds, including talc and mica, will not adhere, and are therefore of limited value for lubrication.

A useful characteristic for indicating the lubricating capacity of a solid lubricant is the PV factor. This is the highest product of pressure and velocity at which the lubricant can be used satisfactorily. It is usually quoted as:

$kN/m^2 \times m/s$ or kN/ms

but may still be quoted in imperial units as

$lb/in^2 \times ft/min$

The PV factor in fact represents a convenient over-simplification because it masks the fact that for one material the limiting PV may be dominated by the load, and for another by the speed. In other words, two materials may have the same PV limit, but one can be used at higher load than the other, while the second can be used at higher speed. For particular applications it may sometimes be important to assess the load and speed limits separately.

8.2 Advantages and disadvantages of solid lubricants

Compared with oils and greases, solid lubricants are far less widely used. Oils and greases might be considered as the 'normal' lubricants, which would be used unless there were good reasons for not doing so. Solid lubricants, on the other hand, are used where unusual circumstances exist which make oils and greases less suitable or completely unsuitable.

It was pointed out in Chapter 6 in connection with greases that their advantages and disadvantages stem from their inferior flow properties. In this respect solid lubricants represent an even more extreme case, since they have virtually no flow properties; their advantages and disadvantages result mainly from this lack of flow.

8.2.1 *Advantages*

(a) Practically no tendency to flow, creep or migrate, so that they can be relied on to remain in place for long periods. This can be particularly important for intermittent use or where equipment must operate quickly and satisfactorily after long storage.
(b) Minimum tendency to contaminate products or environment.
(c) The solid form plus high structural strength of some solid lubricants enables bearing components to be manufactured from them.
(d) Very low volatility enables them to be used in high vacuum.
(e) Often usable at very high or very low temperatures.
(f) Chemical inertness enables some of them to be used in reactive chemical environments.
(g) Generally stable to radioactivity.
(h) Can maintain lubricant film under high load, low speed or vibration.

8.2.2 *Disadvantages*

(a) Difficult and often impossible to feed or replenish.
(b) Inevitably wear away in use so that their service life (as opposed to storage life) is limited.
(c) Generally poor thermal conductivity limits their maximum sliding speed.
(d) Thermal expansion very different from metals, so that loss of clearance

can occur with temperature changes when they are used in conjunction with metals.

These advantages and disadvantages apply to different extents to different solid lubricants.

8.3 Graphite

Graphite was almost certainly the first solid lubricant to be used on a large scale, and its use goes back to prehistoric times. It is a grey-black crystalline form of carbon in which the carbon atoms are arranged hexagonally in regular layers, as shown in Fig. 8.2.

In this hexagonal structure the bonds between the carbon atoms within a layer are strong chemical (covalent) bonds, so that the layers are strong and the crystals strongly resist bending or breaking of the layers. The bonds between the layers are weak (van der Waals) forces, so that the crystals can be made to split easily between layers, and the layers will slide readily one over the other.

Graphite occurs naturally in large veins or in flakes; however, these natural graphites vary enormously in their degree of crystallinity and in their purity (i.e. graphitized carbon content). The purity varies from 80 to 90 percent but can be increased in refining to as high as 98 percent.

Graphite can also be manufactured by a process known as graphitizing, the greater part being made from petroleum coke by heating to 2600–3000 °C. Synthetic graphite is highly crystalline and very pure, containing on average 98.5 percent of carbon.

Although all graphites, natural and synthetic, contain a very high proportion of carbon, some of this carbon may be non-graphitic in form, and the frictional behaviour varies with the graphite content. They also differ

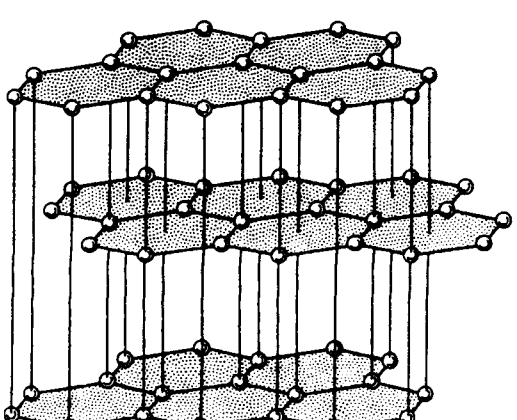


Fig. 8.2 Hexagonal lattice structure of graphite

considerably in the degree of crystallization, uniformity or randomness of their crystal orientation, and their lubricating and other properties also differ as a result of this variability. The general non-specialist user is therefore strongly recommended to buy graphite in the form of suitable finished branded products and leave the manufacturer to worry about the great variability of the raw materials.

The layer-lattice structure of graphite would appear to give good natural low-friction properties. In fact graphite only gives low friction when it is contaminated or 'intercalated' by water vapour or other condensable vapours. During the Second World War, when aircraft started to operate regularly at high altitudes, it was found that their electrical brushes, made of carbon-graphite, wore very rapidly – so rapidly in fact that the process was called 'dusting'. It was found to be due to the removal of adsorbed water vapour at the low pressures at high altitude.

The problem can be overcome by introducing a less volatile vapour such as bromo-pentane, but this will also be removed by lengthy use in vacuum. Unless good electrical conductivity is needed, it is usually better to avoid the use of graphite in vacuum or dry atmospheres. Where the electrical conductivity is needed, high-density graphite will work satisfactorily for longer periods than porous graphite, presumably because it takes longer to remove the absorbed vapours. For very long periods of use some molybdenum disulphide can be incorporated to maintain low friction.

High-quality graphite with water vapour present will give coefficients of friction varying from 0.05 at high contact pressures to 0.15 at low pressures; the friction is smooth and steady. Low friction can be maintained at temperatures up to about 200 °C if the continued presence of water vapour or other suitable contaminants can be ensured. In practice this is usually difficult, and above 160 °C in air the coefficient of friction tends to rise to 0.3–0.4. More important in many applications is the fact that the friction becomes much more irregular, and there is a tendency to rough sliding and wear. A few additives such as nickel chloride have been shown to improve friction for limited periods in this temperature range, but they have not been widely used. For practical purposes there is a temperature range from 200–350 °C in which graphite is largely ineffective as a lubricant. However, this is also a temperature range for which few satisfactory lubricants are available, and in spite of its shortcomings graphite may be better than no lubricant at all.

Above 350 °C graphite again provides low friction, possibly because of some reaction with surface oxide on metal surfaces. The friction again starts to increase rapidly at about 540 °C when the graphite starts to oxidize in air. As a result graphite can be used to lubricate many hot industrial metalworking processes, such as wire-drawing, tube-drawing and forging. It can be used for short periods at even higher temperatures because it leaves little or no harmful residue when it oxidizes, but with some metals, including steels, it may cause carburization and embrittlement.

Graphite adheres readily and firmly to metal surfaces and will embed into softer materials such as polymers. The edges of the crystal planes are quite sharp and hard, and therefore abrasive. It is important for the crystals to be oriented parallel to bearing surfaces in order to reduce the abrasiveness and give the lowest possible friction. Due to the easier shear parallel to the crystal planes graphite tends to form flat particles which preferentially stick to flat surfaces in the desired orientation.

If graphite is ground to progressively finer particle size, the proportion of crystal edges exposed becomes higher, and the friction and abrasion increase. There is also an apparent tendency with very fine grinding for the low-friction hexagonal crystal structure to change to a higher friction 'turbostratic' form when the average particle size is less than about 0.1 μm (4 μin). The preferred particle size range is probably from about 1 μm (40 μin) to 40 μm (1.6 thou in).

Graphite will adhere readily to surfaces either from a solid block (as in writing with a pencil) or from dispersions in liquids. It can also be made to adhere more strongly by means of adhesive binders, usually epoxy, phenolic or alkyd, which may also be included in a dispersion. A wide variety of graphite dispersions are commercially available, and Table 8.2 lists a few of the main types and their applications.

As a powder or film, graphite can support loads of the order of 70 MN/m^2 (10 000 lb/in^2) depending on the amount of powder or the thickness of the film. As with most solid lubricants the maximum sliding speed is limited. However, because graphite has a higher thermal conductivity it can be used at higher speeds than molybdenum disulphide or polymers.

The maximum PV for graphite powder, rubbed film, bonded film or solid block is probably about 0.7 MN/ms (20 000 lb/in^2 × ft/min). If a lubricating

Table 8.2 Some graphite dispersions

Liquid	*Graphite concentration (%)*	*Applications*
Water	20–30	Mould lubricant (release agent); tool lubricant; rubber lubricant; electrically conducting coating
Mineral oil	10	Mould and tool lubricant
	35–40	Metalforming lubricant; anti-seize
Castor oil	10	Mould lubricant for natural rubber
Isopropyl alcohol	10–20	Dry film mould lubricant; anti-seize and electrically conducting coating
White spirit	50	Anti-seize; release agent; high-temperature lubricant
Polyglycol	10–20	Extreme temperature lubricant

oil is used with a film or a solid block of carbon-graphite, the PV limit is probably 10 times as high, because of the cooling effect of the oil.

Disadvantages of graphite or graphitized carbon in block form are structural weakness, porosity and difficulty of accurate machining. These can be improved by impregnating the carbon with a resin or metal, but the friction then rises to 0.10–0.25, and the maximum PV is about 0.07 MN/ms (2000 lb/in^2 × ft/min). It is also reported to encourage corrosion in a seawater environment.

The main properties of graphite as a lubricant can therefore be summed up as follows:

- low friction 0.05–0.15 depending on pressure;
- maximum PV 0.7 MN/ms dry;
- good adhesion;
- good thermal and electrical conductivity;
- usable at low temperatures and to 540 °C in air;
- poor performance in vacuum or when very dry;
- good performance in presence of liquids;
- very complex and variable materials;
- black and therefore unacceptable for certain processes.

8.4 Molybdenum disulphide and similar compounds

Molybdenum disulphide has also been used for several centuries, although its early history is not clear because it was confused with graphite. It was certainly used by the California gold-miners ('Forty-niners') in 1848–50 to lubricate the axles of their wagons.

It is found naturally as the ore molybdenite, the main source of molybdenum. This is a crude hexagonal molybdenum disulphide, and is found in large masses and in immense quantities in some parts of the world. The chemical formula is MoS_2, with one molybdenum atom joined to two sulphur atoms. Like graphite, it has a hexagonal layer-lattice structure, as well as other, non-lubricating, forms. The structure consists of alternate layers of molybdenum and sulphur atoms.

Each layer of molybdenum atoms is sandwiched between two layers of sulphur atoms, and the bonds between molybdenum and sulphur layers are strong covalent chemical bonds. Each triple layer or sandwich of molybdenum disulphide molecules is joined to the next layer only by weak 'van der Waals' forces between the layers of sulphur atoms, so that the crystal can easily split along the cleavage faces between the molybdenum disulphide layers. We therefore have again the low-friction characteristic of a material which is strong in one direction (perpendicular to the layers) but easily sheared in another direction (parallel to layers).

There is in fact a family of chemical compounds similar to molybdenum

disulphide, and known by the cumbersome name of 'lubricating dichalcogenides'. They include the disulphides, diselenides and ditellurides of molybdenum, tantalum, tungsten and niobium. Of these only molybdenum disulphide occurs naturally. All the others have to be made synthetically, and are therefore expensive.

The advantages of the other compounds over molybdenum disulphide are very limited. Tungsten disulphide has a higher oxidation temperature, at 500 °C in air, and both it and tungsten diselenide oxidize more slowly than molybdenum disulphide. For this reason tungsten disulphide has been reported to have been used at high temperatures in gas-cooled nuclear reactors. Niobium diselenide has been used to some extent in electrical brushes for high vacuum because of its better electrical conductivity, but in fact composites containing molybdenum disulphide have proved to be at least as good. As a result there is now very little interest in these compounds, and only molybdenum disulphide is of major importance.

Crude natural molybdenite contains high concentrations of impurities but these are reduced in refining to less than 2 percent, and much of this is harmless carbon from oil used in the purification. A small amount of the remainder is silica, and in some grades this is removed by treatment with hydrofluoric acid, but it is doubtful if this treatment is justified. As with graphite, the edges of the small crystallites of molybdenum disulphide are abrasive, so the removal of silica gives little, if any, improvement.

Molybdenum disulphide differs from graphite mainly in that its low friction is an inherent property and does not depend on the presence of absorbed vapours. As a result of this it can be used satisfactorily in high vacuum and it has been used for many applications in spacecraft (see Fig. 8.3).

Molybdenum disulphide adheres even more strongly than graphite to metal and other surfaces. A useful film can be obtained by simply rubbing or 'burnishing' molybdenum disulphide powder onto a metal surface with cottonwool or cloth. The rubbing should be done smoothly and uniformly, always in the same direction, and will give a glossy blue-black film about 0.1 μm (4 μin) thick. Thicker films, up to 10 μm (0.4 thou in) thick, can be produced by repeated addition of powder and burnishing, and can give lives of many hours at 1000 lb/in^2 contact pressure at low sliding speed.

Films can also be produced by dipping or spraying with a dispersion of molybdenum disulphide in a volatile solvent or water and allowing the liquid to evaporate. Such a film can at first be easily scraped off, but when rubbed on or burnished it becomes very durable.

Very thin, strong, durable films are produced by a technique called sputtering. However, only a few experienced suppliers of such films are available. Much more readily available are bonded films in which a resin is present as a binder. The mixture of molybdenum disulphide and resin is dispersed in a solvent and applied by spraying, often from an aerosol can,

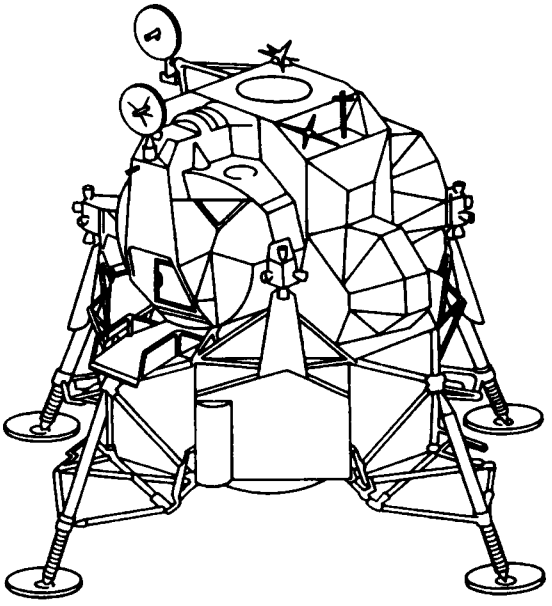


Fig. 8.3 Extendible legs on Apollo lunar module lubricated with bonded molybdenum disulphide (courtesy of American Metal Climax Inc.)

or by brushing or dipping. The solvent evaporates and the binder is then cured either at room temperature or at temperatures up to 200 °C to give a fairly hard varnish-like film which has very good life. Bonded films have the one disadvantage over sputtered films that they are very much thicker and therefore they are more difficult to incorporate in precision bearing systems.

A wide variety of different bonded molybdenum disulphide films has been produced. For low temperatures, organic binders such as alkyd, phenolic, epoxy or silicone resins are usually preferred. For high temperatures polyimide or various inorganic binders such as sodium silicate, aluminium phosphate or boric oxide can be used.

One of the earliest successful high-temperature films contained 71 percent molybdenum disulphide, 7 percent graphite and 22 percent sodium silicate as a binder. Subsequently the graphite content was shown to encourage corrosion in humid environments, and later formulations have tended to use less graphite, or none. Antimony trioxide has been found to improve the performance of bonded films, possibly by reducing the rate of oxidation.

Some of the softer bonded films can be scraped off by hard edges, but like deposited films they can be burnished to produce a harder, more durable film. This has the added advantage for some applications of being much thinner, so that it is possible to maintain tighter control of tolerances.

Table 8.3 lists the characteristics of the four main types of molybdenum disulphide film. All of these types of film give their best performance if the metal surface has a finish of 0.5 – 1 μm centre-line average (CLA) (20 – 40 μin), preferably produced by grit-blasting, and if the surface is then given one of the following pretreatments:

Steel	Phosphate or sulphide
Aluminium	Anodize
Magnesium	Dichromate
Titanium	Anodize or phosphate-fluoride

The coefficient of friction of such films varies from 0.03 at high contact pressure to 0.1 at low pressure.

As with graphite, the proportion of crystal edges present increases if the powder is ground too fine and for most purposes an average particle size of 2–3 μm is probably best. The film should preferably be run-in at low load before full service load is applied, as the running-in process helps to make the film more compact, and therefore stronger.

Films do not adhere so well in the presence of a liquid; nevertheless dispersions of molybdenum disulphide in lubricating oils and greases are widely used. There are considerabe differences of opinion about the value of molybdenum disulphide in vehicle engine oils, and some early experiments indicated that there was slightly more wear when it was used. More recently fleet tests in large trucks did not report any disadvantages, but did show a small saving in fuel, presumably because of decreased friction.

At concentrations of 3–5 percent in greases, a major increase in load-carrying capacity is obtained, so for very highly loaded bearings or moving contacts such a grease may be useful. A further advantage is that if for some reason the grease is lost from the bearing, a residual film of molybdenum disulphide on the surfaces can continue to give satisfactory lubrication for a brief period. Greases containing 1 percent molybdenum disulphide have been used for vehicle wheel bearings, while greases containing 1–3 percent are used for chassis lubrication points. Greases containing more than 3 percent should probably not be used in high-speed rolling bearings.

Table 8.3 Characteristics of molybdenum disulphide films

Type of film	*Film thickness (μm)*	*Film characteristics*
Burnished	0.1–10.0	Very low friction, thin durable
Sputtered	0.2–2.0	Fairly low friction, very thin, durable
Organic bonded	2.0–40.0	Low friction, thick, high wear rate
Inorganic bonded	3.0–40.0	Low friction, thick, wide temperature range

Molybdenum disulphide can also be incorporated in metallic or polymeric composites, which can be machined to produce bearings or other low-friction components. The coefficient of friction then tends to be higher, perhaps 0.1 to 0.3, depending on the composition, the load and the speed.

Molybdenum disulphide begins to oxidize at 350 °C in air, although it can still be used for short periods up to 450 °C. The oxidation produces molybdic oxide (MoO_3) which is itself a fair lubricant at higher temperatures but wears rapidly. In vacuum the problem of oxidation does not arise, and some reports have claimed satisfactory lubrication up to 1000 °C in high vacuum.

The maximum load-carrying capacity depends on the form in which the molybdenum disulphide is used, but it can be extremely high. In a four-ball machine (see Chapter 11) it is possible to extrude a hardened steel ball through a small orifice without seizure using a grease containing a high concentration of molybdenum disulphide.

Due to its poor thermal conductivity the maximum sliding speed is limited. The limiting PV also depends strongly on the form in which it is used, but may be of the order of 3.5 MN/ms (100 000 lb/in^2 × ft/min).

The life in vacuum is determined by the film thickness and the wear rate, but in air it has been shown that molybdenum disulphide oxidizes, even below 350 °C, presumably due to the effects of flash temperatures caused by friction. The coating will fail when it loses cohesion because of oxidation. Apart from oxidation, it is stable to most chemicals, but is attacked by strong oxidizing acids and by alkalis.

On the whole, molybdenum disulphide is a very versatile and useful material where oils or greases cannot be used or do not have sufficient load-carrying capacity. Its main properties can be summed up as follows:

- low friction, 0.03 – 0.1, depending on load;
- maximum PV probably about 3.5 MN/ms;
- excellent adhesion, especially when dry;
- usable at low temperatures and to 350 °C in air;
- excellent performance in vacuum;
- temperature limit in vacuum approaches 1000 °C;
- very high load-carrying capacity;
- black and therefore unacceptable for some processes.

8.5 Other inorganics

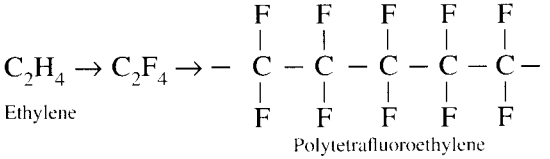
Many other inorganic compounds have useful properties for lubrication, but none are widely used. This is because of poor film-forming properties or complicated application techniques or cost, or some other problem. Some of the compounds, and their important characteristics, are summarized in Table 8.4.

Table 8.4 Characteristics of some inorganic solid lubricants

Material	*Characteristics*
Calcium fluoride	Usable 400-900 °C, low friction, low wear rate
Graphite fluoride	Usable up to 470 °C, low friction, fairly low wear rate; slightly abrasive
Molybdenum trioxide	Usable 300–1000 °C, friction fairly low; adhesion fair
Boron nitride	Usable 300–950 °C (1700 °C if no oxygen present); friction about 0.2–0.3
Lead monoxide	Usable 200–700 °C, friction and wear rate low

8.6 PTFE and similar polymers

PTFE (polytetrafluoroethylene) is a polymer of tetrafluoroethylene, which in turn is ethylene gas (C_2H_4) in which all the hydrogen atoms have been replaced by fluorine.



PTFE is often referred to as Teflon, but this is simply a trade name for PTFE manufactured by Dupont, just as Fluon is the trade name used by ICI. It is a white solid with a slightly waxy appearance, hard to the touch but easily cut and deformed.

PTFE is usually fabricated by sintering or hot compression moulding at above 300 °C. It is difficult to form large components accurately, but they can be finish machined without difficulty provided that the cutting speed and depth of cut are kept low to avoid thermal expansion. Bonding PTFE to metals has always been difficult, but it is said that treatment with hot alkali gives a surface which can be bonded, and adhesives are available commercially which are claimed to be suitable. It should also be kept in mind that toxic and irritant vapours can be emitted from PTFE and other fluorinated polymers if the temperature rises during machining.

PTFE is stable in use to almost 300 °C, but it changes its state at 325 °C and cannot be used above that temperature. It can also be used at very low temperatures, even down to –200 °C or lower in liquefied gases. There is however, some evidence that the wear rate increases at very low temperatures. It is also very resistant to oxidation, and can be used for lubrication or sealing in oxygen systems.

The attractive forces between the long straight-chain molecules are low,

so that PTFE has fairly poor mechanical strength. For the same reason the long molecules slide easily over each other, and it is this which gives it its low-friction properties.

In view of this stability and low atomic forces, it is not clear why PTFE forms good smooth strongly adhering films to metal surfaces, but in fact it does, probably more readily than graphite.

PTFE is probably the most widely used of all polymers in sliding applications, because of its exceptionally low friction. In dry sliding against metals the friction of pure PTFE can be as low as 0.03 at high load and low speed, but it probably rises to 0.1 or more at low load and high speed.

The maintenance of low friction and wear depends on the establishment of a smooth film on both surfaces. Such a film is very readily produced by transfer onto clean metal surfaces which slide against PTFE. The presence of liquids interferes with transfer film formation, and although quite low friction can still be obtained, the wear rate in the presence of liquids can be too high to be acceptable. However, in many large-scale civil engineering applications, such as bridge bearings, PTFE composites have been found to give excellent lubrication and wear life, even when immersed in water.

Even under ideal conditions the wear rate of pure, or unfilled, PTFE tends to be very high, but the use of fillers or reinforcement can reduce the wear rate by a factor of 10 000. Useful reinforcing fillers include glass fibres, carbon fibres and molybdenum disulphide. With all of them, however, the coefficient of friction increases, commonly up to 0.1 or 0.2. Unfilled PTFE also yields slowly under load, and will extrude out of a loaded bearing. The maximum PV is probably about 60 kN/ms. The use of fillers increases its modulus and yield stress so that such deformation is reduced or eliminated.

Two types of reinforced PTFE are very widely used. In one, Glacier DU, the PTFE is incorporated in the pores of a sintered bronze strip which has a steel backing strip. In the other, Ampep Fiberslip, the PTFE in the form of

Table 8.5 Some commercial PTFE composites

Type	*Filler/reinforcement*	*% Filler*	*Friction*	*PV limit (MN/ms)*
Rulon A			0.12–0.14	0.5–0.7
Fluorocomp 103	Glass fibre	15	0.14	0.35–0.5
Fluorocomp 174	Glass fibre Molybdenum disulphide	15 5	0.14	0.4–0.6
Fiberslip	Glass fibre		0.10–0.20	3.5
Glacier DU	Sintered bronze lead powder		0.10–0.20	3.5

Table 8.6 Properties of some fluorinated polymers

Polymer	*Friction*	*Maximum temperature (°C)*	*Characteristics*
Unfilled PTFE	0.04–0.12	290	Low wear resistance, hard to process
Filled PTFE	0.1–0.2	290	High wear resistance, hard to process
PTFCE	0.12–0.3	200	Fairly easy to process
Filled PVF_2		150	Wear resistant, easy to process
Filled PVF_2/TFE	0.10–0.13	150	Wear resistant, easy to process

fibres is interwoven with glass fibre and the whole three-dimensional weave is impregnated with phenolic resin, which also fixes it to a steel backing strip. There is also a cheaper, lower temperature material called Fiberglide, similar to Fiberslip but with the glass fibre replaced by a synthetic textile fibre.

The maximum PV for all these three materials is probably about the same, at about 3.5 MN/ms (100 000 lb/in^2 × ft/min). However, the woven types can carry higher loads, while the copper-reinforced DU can operate at higher speeds because of the better thermal conductivity of the copper matrix.

There are many other different commercially available composites containing PTFE and several are listed in Table 8.5.

The white colour of PTFE is an advantage in certain industries, such as textiles, where the dark colour of graphite and molybdenum disulphide is unacceptable.

Several other polymers are similar to PTFE in certain respects. They all have higher friction, but give some compensation in lower wear rate, higher structural strength or easier bonding to metals. None of them is as readily available or widely used as PTFE. The properties of PTFE and some of these other polymers are compared in Table 8.6.

To sum up, the important characteristics of PTFE are:

- very low friction, from 0.03 to 0.1;
- high wear rate in unfilled state;
- deforms slowly under load in unfilled state;
- reinforcing fillers reduce wear rate and deformation, but increase friction;
- usable from –200 to +300 °C;
- highly resistant to chemical attack;
- white colour useful in some applications;
- easily machined.

8.7 Nylons

Nylons are a group of linear polymers, chemically known as polyamides. The common types are nylon 6, nylon 6/6, nylon 6/10, nylon 11 and

nylon 12. Their properties differ to some extent, but some general remarks can be made about nylons as a whole.

They are tough polymers, with high mechanical strength, which will creep or permanently deform under continuous load, but to a much lower degree than unfilled PTFE. Their mechanical properties can be very much improved by fillers or reinforcing fibres. They have good resistance to chemical attack, although not as good as PTFE or FEP. They are also susceptible to moisture absorption, which makes them swell and soften; the resulting reduction in strength is very considerable, by a factor of almost 3 to 1 for nylon 6/10 and over 5 to 1 for nylon 6.

Nylons form smooth transfer films on metal counterfaces, and when unlubricated their friction is fairly low, from 0.1 to 0.2 at low speed depending on load and temperature. Their wear rate is also quite low at low speed, being perhaps 50 times lower than for PTFE. At higher speed, however, above about 1 m/s, the friction and wear increase rapidly because of surface melting.

Bearing performance is markedly improved by the use of fillers such as PTFE and molybdenum disulphide, and reinforcement such as glass or carbon fibre. Bearings have to be designed with large clearances to cope with the effects of moisture swell and thermal expansion.

Nylons are especially suitable for use where liquids are present, and are widely used with water or oil lubrication, where the moving parts are small, lightly loaded or fairly slow moving. In low-viscosity liquids like water they have advantages over metal components in that there is little tendency to gall or seize when surfaces rub against each other. The liquid cools the surfaces so that they can operate satisfactorily at higher speeds than when dry.

Nylon is often used for small gear sets (e.g. car window winders and windscreen wiper motors) and bearing bushes and sliding bearings (e.g. door locks) because of ease and cheapness of manufacture, and because the tolerances are large so that no finish machining is needed. Such components are usually grease-lubricated so that technically this is not solid lubrication.

Table 8.7 Some properties of different nylons

Type of nylon	*Friction*	*Wear resistance*	*Maximum temperature (°C)*
Unfilled nylon 6	0.2–0.3	Fair	100
Filled nylon 6	0.2–0.4	Good	150
Unfilled nylon 6.6	0.1–0.28	Poor	130
Filled nylon 6.6	0.2	Fair	200
Unfilled nylon 6.10			110
Filled nylon 6.10			200

However, they will often continue to operate adequately even when grease is no longer present.

Some relevant properties of nylon are listed in Table 8.7.

8.8 Acetals

Acetals are similar in their uses to nylons, being more often used lubricated than unlubricated. In dry sliding the coefficient of friction is between 0.1 and 0.4 but can be reduced to 0.07 by using PTFE as a filler. The wear rate is also similar to that of nylons, and is improved by fillers and reinforcements. The temperature limit is only about 110 °C.

In lubricated applications acetals are outstanding, especially with regard to wear rate. This is the case even when the speeds are low and loads high, so that continual boundary conditions exist. However, acetals also have the advantage that they are not damaged when lubrication fails, so they can be recommended for applications where the lubrication is sparse or intermittent.

Their main disadvantage is that they are difficult to attach to metal components and so they are difficult to incorporate into a piece of equipment. Where possible it is therefore best to use a commercially available type of bearing such as Glacier DX, in which the acetal is mechanically locked into a porous sintered bronze layer.

8.9 Polyetheretherketones (PEEK)

Polyetheretherketones are polymers with very good thermal and tribological properties, as well as other good mechanical properties and chemical inertness. In dry sliding the coefficient of friction of the unreinforced injection-moulded material varies from 0.15 at low speed and 200 °C to 0.58 at high speed and 20 °C. The bearing grade material is reinforced with carbon fibre and solid lubricant such as graphite or PTFE and has a coefficient of friction in dry sliding between 0.11 and 0.17 over a wide range of temperatures and sliding speeds.

The wear rate of the same reinforced grade is less than that for similarly reinforced nylon but higher than for reinforced acetal and polyimide. The limiting PV in dry sliding is claimed to be over 10 MN/ms. The limiting temperature for continuous use is 260 °C and, for brief periods, 300 °C.

PEEK is easily processed by injection moulding and can be attached to metal components.

8.10 Other polymers

No other polymers are widely used as dry lubricants or dry bearing materials. For slow, lightly loaded sliding contacts many are useful because they give fairly steady friction, low wear rate and have a much lower tendency to

seizure than metal against metal. In general, however, they have no advantages over acetal, nylon or reinforced PTFE except at very high temperatures, where polyimide, polyphenylene sulphide and polysulphones can be useful.

Several polymers, such as phenolics, epoxies and polyimides, are used as binders for molybdenum disulphide or other dry lubricants in coatings. In addition, for a variety of reasons, several different polymers are used for lubricated bearings, with either oil, grease or water. Their dry rubbing properties may become important if the bearings are starved of lubricant.

The following paragraphs summarize a few relevant points about some of the many other polymers. It should be remembered that almost any polymer can be strengthened by reinforcement and its friction reduced to 0.1 or 0.2 by incorporating some PTFE in it.

(a) *Polyimide.* Usable continuously to 350 °C under high load; coefficient of friction 0.1–0.2 and steady. They are excellent bearing materials, but they are difficult to process and are generally only used where their high-temperature capabilities are important. Have been used as binders for molybdenum disulphide coatings.

(b) *Polyethylene.* Temperature limit about 75 °C, and attacked by solvents. High-density form (HDPE) is used to some extent for bushes in water, but they are damaged if they run dry. Ultra-high molecular weight form (UHMWPE) is used for 'bearings' in artificial hip joints.

(c) *Polysulphone.* Temperature limits vary from 150 to 260 °C; coefficient of friction 0.14–0.22. Could be used as binders for coatings, and could replace nylon for many purposes, but at present not widely used.

(d) *Polyphenylene sulphide.* Temperature limit over 250 °C; friction rather variable, 0.2–0.5. Performs well with water lubrication but not when dry.

(e) *Phenolic.* Used very widely with fabric reinforcement for lubricated bearings, with either oil, grease or especially water. Also widely used as a binder for PTFE or molybdenum disulphide in coatings and for PTFE in composites. Mechanical properties very good. Without lubricating fillers not very useful in dry sliding, and the friction varies from 0.16 to 0.5 or more.

(f) *Epoxy.* Epoxy resins are used as binders for molybdenum disulphide coatings and for composites. Also used in the same way as phenolic resin for water or grease-lubricated bearings, but not as widely. Better than phenolics in dry sliding, with friction 0.2 and high wear resistance. Would not normally be deliberately used for dry rubbing applications.

8.11 Metals as solid lubricants

It was explained earlier that the friction of a material depends, to some extent, on the force needed to shear it. Soft metals like lead can be sheared easily,

Table 8.8 Properties of some lubricating metals

Metal	*Melting point (°C)*	*Hardness (Moh scale)*
Gallium	30	1
Indium	155	1
Tin	232	1.8
Thallium	300	1.2
Lead	327	1.5
Barium	704	
Silver	961	2.5
Gold	1063	2.5

so that in certain circumstances they can also be used as solid lubricants. Being soft, they will not support heavy loads without deforming, so they are used as thin coatings on stronger metal surfaces.

The coefficient of friction is not low, being usually about 0.3, but the films are stable, can be used to quite high temperatures and have the additional advantage that they are good conductors of heat and electricity. Table 8.8 gives the melting points of some of the metals which are of most use as lubricants.

At low speed and load the metals can be used at temperatures approaching their melting points, but at higher speed or load frictional heating increases the actual surface temperature and local melting may occur.

Apart from silver and gold, metal films are mainly used as lubricants in vacuum, and it is presumed that oxidation in air interferes with smooth sliding. In tinplate manufacture and forming, the tin on the surface provides useful lubrication, but this is only needed for relatively short periods.

Films are usually about 0.25–1.0μm (10–40 μin) thick, and must be very smooth and uniform. The friction is found to increase with either thicker or thinner films.

Silver and barium films have been used successfully on lightly loaded ball bearings in high-vacuum X-ray tubes. Silver and gold have been tested successfully for use in high vacuum in spacecraft applications. Perhaps the most successful applications so far have used thin films of lead on ball bearings for high vacuum, such as in spacecraft.

Lead and copper powders are also used in anti-seize compounds for high-temperature use, where their softening at high temperature further reduces the friction.

8.12 Composites

Any solid materials which contain two or more different solid phases mixed together are known as composites. Common examples are 'fibre-glass',

Table 8.9 Materials used in lubricating composites

Matrix	*Lubricant*	*Reinforcement powders*	*Fibres*	*Additives*
PTFE	PTFE	Graphite	Glass	Antimony trioxide
Nylon	Molybdenum disulphide	Carbon	Carbon	Lead phosphite
Acetal	Graphite	Molybdenum disulphide	Steel	Sodium nitrite
	Calcium fluoride			
Polyimide	Lead	Lead	Copper	Alumina
Bronze	PTFCE	Copper	Terylene	Butyl phthalate
Cast iron	Niobium diselenide	Silica	Nomex	
Nickel	Lead monoxide	Alumina	Rayon	
Silver	Boric oxide	Mica		

which contains glass fibres dispersed usually in an epoxy or phenolic resin, and most rubbers, which contain carbon black or other fillers as well as the rubber polymer.

For bearing use most polymers are strengthened by glass or carbon fibre, and many of them have PTFE or molybdenum disulphide added to reduce friction. Table 8.9 lists some of the materials which can be used in composites, and since the number, types and concentration of different substances used can all be varied, it is obvious that the variety of different possible composites is enormous. A few examples will be enough to indicate the way in which composites are formulated.

(a) *Glacier DU.* Briefly described earlier, Glacier DU consists of a porous sintered bronze strip with a steel backing. The pores of the sintered bronze are filled with PTFE in which lead powder is dispersed, and a thin layer of lead-filled PTFE coats the surface. The steel backing strip gives structural strength and maintains the bearing shape. The sintered bronze strip supports and reinforces the PTFE and gives high thermal conductivity. The PTFE provides low friction while the lead powder reduces the wear rate of the PTFE and appears to improve transfer film formation.

(b) *Deva metal.* This is in fact the general name for a series of rather simple composites, each containing only natural graphite (4–14 percent by weight) and a metallic matrix (either cast iron, nickel, leaded bronze or tin bronze). The complexity arises in the manufacture. The graphite and metal powder are thoroughly mixed, and it seems probable that in mixing the graphite

forms an adherent film on the surfaces of the metal powder. The powder is then compressed in a mould and sintered. This gives a strong metal matrix whose pores are filled with graphite, and releases graphite as a dry lubricant during use. The metal matrix again gives high thermal conductivity.

(c) *Duroid 5813*. Typical of a large number of commercial composites which consist of PTFE with glass fibre reinforcement (15–25 percent) and molybdenum disulphide (3–5 percent). The glass fibre gives high structural strength, while the molybdenum disulphide reduces the wear rate and improves transfer film formation.

8.13 Diamond-Like Carbon (DLC)

Very different in many ways from all the above dry lubricants are Diamond-Like Carbon and similar materials. They are hard coatings, usually deposited on metal surfaces by a variety of physical or chemical deposition processes. These processes include magnetron sputtering, electron beam excited plasma, cathodic arc, and radio-frequency plasma-assisted chemical vapour deposition. It is sometimes argued that they are not solid lubricants, but they are certainly usable in dry bearings.

DLC consists of a thin layer of hard amorphous carbon, with hardness between 1000 and 2000 VPN, and are sometimes referred to as amorphous carbon overcoats. They often incorporate other elements, especially hydrogen, nitrogen, or silicon. The friction and wear behaviour vary considerably with the application conditions and with the other elements present, but coefficients of friction in dry sliding have been reported over the range 0.015 to 0.7 in dry air.

The major use of DLC so far has been in magnetic storage devices, especially hard discs, where they are commonly lubricated with a thin layer of perfluoropolyether. Very few applications have yet been reported in mechanical engineering industries, but they appear to have potential for use in situations in which hard surfaces slide in the presence of low-viscosity liquids, such as in automotive fuel injectors and pumps.

At present much needs to be done to establish the effects of application conditions and composition, and they are the subject of a great deal of research effort, but they are likely to become increasingly important in the future.

8.14 Selection of solid lubricants

The selection of solid lubricants falls basically into two parts. The first involves the decision as to whether solid lubrication should be used instead of oil, grease or gas lubrication. The second involves deciding which is the most suitable of the available solid lubricants.

The first decision depends on the advantages and disadvantages of solid lubricants as compared with oils and greases, as summarized in Section 8.2. It follows from the advantages listed that solid lubricants may be the preferred choice when one or more of the following factors applies:

- temperature too high for oil or grease;
- temperature too low for oil or grease;
- high-vacuum environment;
- important to avoid contamination, e.g. textiles or electrical contacts;
- reactive chemical or radioactive environment;
- equipment needs to operate quickly and reliably after long storage, e.g. safety devices or missiles;
- loads are high, with little or no sliding speed;
- vibrating contacts.

Even where these factors apply, the decision may not be an obvious one, because a system can often be redesigned to allow oil or grease to be used. For example, additional heating or cooling may allow an oil or grease to be used, sealing may protect the system from the high vacuum or reactive chemicals, shielding may reduce the radiation and so on. As in all equipment design the choice then becomes a matter of balancing the advantages and disadvantages of the different possible solutions.

In the end the decision to use a solid lubricant will often be based on the simplicity of design possible with it, as compared with the complexity needed to cope with oil or grease in adverse conditions.

The second part of the selection process depends on the properties of the individual solid lubricants, and an attempt has been made previously to summarize those properties which are likely to influence the selection. It must be remembered, however, that compromises can be obtained by combining two or more of them in a composite.

8.15 Designing for solid lubricants

Solid lubricants wear away in use. This limits their service life, unless some system of replenishment can be arranged. In addition, wear causes an increase in bearing clearances, play, backlash etc. The problem of replenishment will be considered later, but in most applications replenishment will not be possible, and all the lubricant required must be incorporated at the beginning.

Being solids, they have shape or form, and an important part of designing for solid lubricants is to decide what shape or form is required, how it is to be produced and how it is to be built into the system.

8.15.1 *Wear life*

Two properties of solid lubricants must be known in order to plan their performance and wear life.

The first is the combination of speed and load at which they can be used. The PV factor was explained in Section 8.1, together with the need to quote the maximum permissible pressure and the maximum permissible sliding speed. These last two properties are not often quoted, and reliable figures are hard to obtain. Some figures for limiting PV, pressure and sliding speed are listed in Table 8.10, but these may not be very accurate.

The second important property is the wear rate. It has been found that with certain solid lubricants and many other materials which wear smoothly, the volume of material removed by wear depends only on the contact *load* (not pressure) and on the total sliding distance. This rule applies as long as the limiting PV, pressure and speed are not exceeded.

If the volume removed is proportional to the load and the sliding distance, we can write

$$\text{Volume (mm}^3\text{)} = k \times \text{load (newtons)} \times \text{distance (meters)}$$

where k is a constant called the specific wear rate. This equation can be written

$$k = \frac{\text{volume}}{\text{load} \times \text{distance}}$$

where k is written in mm^3/Nm. It has become increasingly common in recent years to quote the specific wear rates for different solid lubricants.

If the total load on a bearing, the contact area and the specific wear rate are known, the depth of wear after a certain sliding distance can be calculated. For example, suppose a bonded molybdenum disulphide film for use in vacuum is 50 μm thick with a specific wear rate of 10^{-5} mm^3/Nm, a contact load of 20 N, contact area 5 × 6 mm and sliding speed 0.1 m/s, then

$$\text{Volume removed} = 10^{-5} \times 20 \times \text{sliding distance}$$

Table 8.10 Approximate speed and load limits for solid lubricants

Solid lubricant	*Limiting PV (MN/ms)*	*Maximum speed (m/s)*	*Maximum pressure (MN/m²)*
Graphite	0.7	0.5	70
Molybdenum disulphide	3.5	0.2	2000
Unfilled PTFE	0.06	0.01	10
Filled PTFE	0.50	0.02	100
Reinforced PTFE	3.5	0.1	400

The film will be completely removed when the contact area, 5 × 6 mm, is worn down 50 μm, so that

$$\text{Volume removed} = 5 \times 6 \times 0.05 \text{ mm}^3 = 1.5 \text{ mm}^3$$

The sliding distance will then be given by

$$\text{Sliding distance} = \frac{1.5}{20 \times 10^{-5}} \text{ m} = 0.75 \times 10^4 = 7500 \text{ m}$$

At a sliding speed of 0.1 m/s this distance will be covered in 75,000 seconds or 20 hours and 50 minutes.

A safety factor should be applied to the design to allow for the fact that the wear would not be completely uniform and that the specific wear rate is only approximate. It might, however, be reasonable with these figures to expect a wear life of 10 hours or more.

For a service life of 150 hours, the simplest approach might be to increase the contact area to 20 mm × 20 mm, or to use a stronger film with a specific wear rate of 10^{-6} mm^3/N m.

This type of calculation is valid for molybdenum disulphide in vacuum or for many other types of solid lubricant in air. As pointed out earlier, the life of molybdenum disulphide in air may be limited by oxidation.

In the example quoted, the bearing life was limited by the thickness of the bonded film. With a thicker film the life might not be much longer, because thicker films are often weaker, and the maximum permissible thickness for bonded or burnished films is usually about 50 μm.

If the lubricant is incorporated in a polymer, thicker films or even bulk solids can be used, but the wear limit is then likely to depend on the amount of increased play or slackness which can be tolerated.

8.15.2 *Applying the solid lubricant*

If the solid lubricant is to be used in the form of a bonded film, then the suppliers' instructions about pretreatment, application and film thickness should be followed. Bonded films are similar to paint films, and can be applied in similar ways, but the thickness required for effective lubrication is much thinner than for a good paint film.

Burnished films can be applied up to 10 μm thick. Sputtered films are generally thinner and stronger, but can only be applied by specialists.

Where the solid lubricant is in the form of a bulk solid, such as nylon or reinforced PTFE, the problem is to machine the component to the required shape and incorporate it into the assembled system.

Machining of most of the lubricating polymers is straightforward provided that the material is kept cool to avoid thermal distortion. It is, however,

subject to the problems of toxic and irritant vapours mentioned earlier. Assembly into the equipment is sometimes more difficult because of low structural strength and differential thermal expansion; this is why many commercial lubricating composites are supplied with a steel backing strip.

So far it has been assumed that solid lubricants cannot be replenished in service, and generally this is true, but a few techniques have been used.

Molybdenum disulphide powder has sometimes been supplied to ball bearings and gears by means of an air jet, but the technique has not been widely used.

Both molybdenum disulphide and graphite can be supplied with grease or oil to a bearing, but in these cases they are acting as additives rather than simply as solid lubricants. It is possible to supply them in a volatile solvent, which then evaporates, but it is not easy to get a uniform spread. Similarly a dispersion of graphite in a polyglycol can be fed to a very hot bearing (between 200 and 500 °C). The polyglycol decomposes and volatilizes away, leaving the graphite as a solid lubricant.

The most useful replenishment technique is the transfer technique used mainly with PTFE or molybdenum disulphide. With this technique a block of PTFE or a molybdenum disulphide composite in a suitable form is mounted in a position where it is in sliding contact, directly or indirectly, with the parts which require lubrication. These parts thus become coated with the solid lubricant, which eventually coats all the sliding surfaces. With suitable design the transfer technique can provide replenishment of the solid lubricant for a long period.

8.16 Some applications of solid lubricants

In terms of numbers, the most important applications of solid lubricants are domestic rather than engineering, with graphite in pencils and PTFE in non-stick frying pans and other utensils. PTFE has also been used for artificial ski-slopes and for coating skis. Nylon is used for bearings and gears in washing machines, windscreen wipers, car window winders and many other consumer products, although it is common to use a grease or oil with it, at least initially.

In engineering, solid lubricants have been used in almost every type of component, including plain and rolling bearings, slider bearings, gears, seals, electrical brushes, brakes and clutches.

8.16.1 *Plain bearings*

PTFE is probably the most widely used solid lubricant for plain bearings. Many of these are simple cylindrical bushes with unfilled PTFE being used for lightly loaded bushes and reinforced PTFE for more heavily loaded ones. The more complex PTFE composites and woven forms are used in highly

critical situations such as support bearings of bridges, and control surface and variable geometry wing bearings in high-performance aircraft. PTFE is also used to lubricate the tracks when bridges are slid bodily into position to minimize interruption of road or rail traffic.

Molybdenum disulphide tends to be used on sliding surfaces of all sorts of shapes, because it can be easily coated onto the basic metal surfaces. It is also used as a filler in some PTFE bearings.

8.16.2 *Rolling bearings*

Many different techniques have been tried for lubricating ball and roller bearings with solid lubricants. The most common now is to use a reinforced PTFE cage or separator, possibly with molybdenum disulphide as a filler. The cage is rubbed by the balls or rollers which become coated with a transfer film of PTFE, and in turn transfer it to the races.

8.16.3 *Gears*

The best technique for solid lubrication of gears is also to transfer the lubricant to the gear teeth. Figure 8.4 shows a Russian design for transferring PTFE or molybdenum disulphide to gear teeth from an idler gear made of a suitable composite.

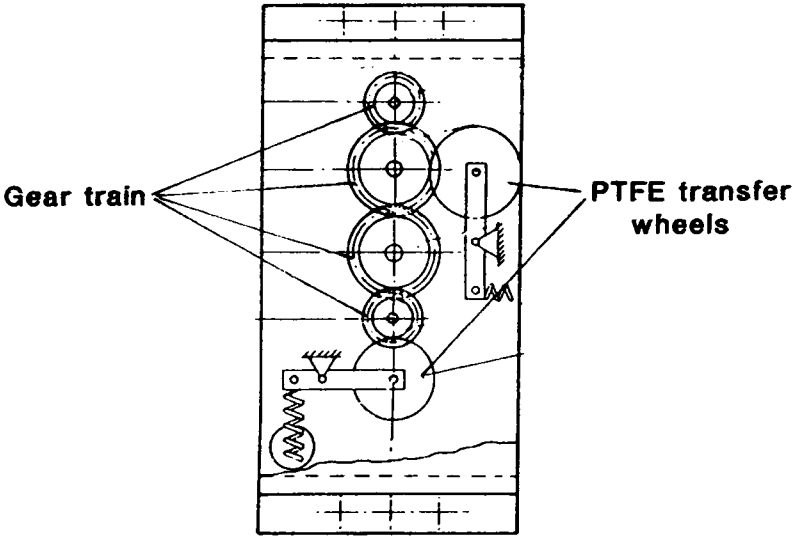


Fig. 8.4 Transfer lubrication of gear train

8.16.4 *Electrical brushes*

The traditional solid lubricant for electrical brushes is carbon-graphite. The use of molybdenum disulphide as an additive to carbon-graphite has been mentioned previously, but for space use one of the best materials is a composite containing 82.5 percent silver, 2.5 percent copper and 15 percent molybdenum disulphide.

8.16.5 *Brakes and clutches*

The friction of brakes and clutches is not necessarily particularly high, and a typical figure for the coefficient of friction is between 0.3 and 0.4. It is important, however, for the wear rate to be low and for the friction to be constant and not badly affected by heat. In order to achieve this, brake composites contain small amounts of graphite or molybdenum disulphide to control the friction.

Appendix to Chapter 8

Theory of Friction of Solid Lubricants

The frictional force, F, between two solids is roughly equal to the critical shear stress, S, of the softer of them, multiplied by the real area of contact, A, between the two. (This assumes that the friction is largely adhesional, see Chapter 1.) In lamellar solid lubricants the sliding ideally takes place between adjacent lamellae (flat crystals) or sheets of straight polymer chains oriented parallel to the sliding direction.

If there is no tangential force or motion, the real area of contact, A_n, with a ductile material is equal to the normal force, W, loading the two surfaces together, divided by the plastic yield pressure, p. If a tangential force is applied to one of the components, the force which has to be supported is the resultant of the normal force and the tangential force, and the real area of contact increases. This phenomenon is known as junction growth.

A practical limit A_1 to the real area of contact with junction growth is often between $3A_n$ and $6A_n$.

The yield pressure, p, or hardness for many materials is typically about 5 times the critical shear stress, so the coefficient of friction will be

$$\mu = \frac{F}{W} = \frac{A_1 S}{A_n p}$$

and, since $p = 5S$ and A_1 is (3–6) A_n,

$$\mu = 0.6\text{–}1.2$$

Adhesion and junction growth can take place between the solid lubricant and a metal substrate, so that the friction will be high.

Between two films of dry lubricant, however, the effective yield pressure, p, is that of substrate, and is high compared with the very low critical shear stress, S, and junction growth probably does not occur. If p is as much as $10S$, and $A_1 = A_n$ we will have

$$\mu = 0.1$$

In practice, p may often be greater than $10S$ because the actual coefficient of friction may be even lower under ideal conditions.

Chapter 9

Gas Bearings

9.1 Principles of gas bearings

A gas can be used as a lubricant in much the same way as an oil is used in a hydrodynamic bearing. The main differences arise from the fact that a gas has a much lower viscosity than a liquid.

The theory of hydrodynamic lubrication was explained briefly in Chapter 1, but the situation can be summarized by saying that, for a given surface roughness, the load which can be carried increases with the lubricant viscosity and the speed. Due to the very low viscosity of a gas compared with an oil, 'gas dynamic' bearings generally differ from hydrodynamic bearings in the following ways:

- the operating speeds are higher;
- the loads are lower;
- the surface finishes are better (i.e. smoother);
- the clearances are smaller, both to optimize load-carrying and to reduce gas flow;
- as a result the bearing tolerances must be very close.

The load carried by a gas bearing can be increased if the gas is pumped in under high pressure, so that the externally supplied pressure carries the load. Such bearings are known as 'externally pressurized' bearings. Since they rely on the external pressurization rather than speed to provide the load-carrying capacity, they may differ from gas-dynamic bearings in that:

- they can operate more slowly, or even stationary;
- they can have poorer, (i.e. rougher) surface finish, although usually they do not;
- they can carry higher load.

However, for efficient operation it is still necessary to reduce the volume of gas required to a minimum. As a result, in practice externally pressurized gas bearings also have small clearances, tight tolerances and high-quality surface finishes. These factors are less critical than for gas-dynamic bearings.

The basic design of the bearing is not much more difficult than for oil lubrication, but it is complicated by the requirements for smooth surfaces and tight tolerances. It follows that gas bearings represent a very high level of precision engineering, and their design and manufacture tends to be done by specialists.

Gas-bearing technology is in fact largely a matter of design and manufacture, which are outside the scope of this book. The remainder of this short chapter will be concerned with the factors involved in deciding when and how to use gas bearings.

Before leaving the subject of gas bearing types, it may be helpful to mention the various names which are used for them. There is no clear agreement about the names except for the cumbersome terms 'self-pressurizing' and 'externally-pressurized' gas bearings. The following alternative names are used.

(a) Self-pressurizing gas bearings;
Aerodynamic bearings;
Hydrodynamic gas bearings;
Gas-dynamic bearings.

(b) Externally pressurized gas bearings;
Aerostatic bearings;
Hydrostatic gas bearings;
Gas-static bearings.

9.2 Properties of the gas

Any gas can be used as the lubricant in a gas bearing, provided that it is clean enough and does not react with the other materials in the system.

Solid contaminants can cause two problems. The first problem is that large particles may be caught between the bearing surfaces, causing damage to the surfaces and disturbing the stability of motion. Externally pressurized bearings may have clearances of the order of 25 μm (0.001 in), similar to those in oil-lubricated bearings, so that filtration to a nominal size of 10 μm may be adequate.

The second problem with solid contaminants is that they can cause erosion of surfaces, especially where the flow rates are high, such as at orifices. Erosion is related to the total concentration of particles and their size and abrasiveness. Erosion can be reduced by avoiding sharp changes in the direction of gas flow.

With self-pressurizing gas bearings the clearances may be very much

smaller; consequently greater cleanliness will be needed. On the other hand, the volume flow rates are generally low, and the air will often recirculate within the housing so that a high level of sealing can be used. It is also possible to design the inlet with a restriction smaller than the bearing clearance, to exclude damaging particles.

Liquid contaminants can cause problems if they settle out on the bearing surfaces or on high-speed components, causing either sticking or imbalance. The same can apply to vapours which might condense out in the bearings, so that for example if dry steam is used as the operating gas it must be kept well above its condensation temperature.

The use of gas lubrication removes one of the major restrictions on liquid lubrication, namely the restricted temperature range of use. All substances which are liquid at normal temperatures will be solid at –100 °C and gaseous (or decompose) at 600 °C. Gases can exist at any temperature provided the pressure is low. Even at pressures high enough to be practical for gas bearings some of them exist as gases at any temperature above –200 °C. A substance will exist as a gas whatever the pressure if the temperature is above its critical point. Table 9.1 lists the critical points of a few common gases.

The viscosity of a gas increases with increase in temperature, as shown in Fig. 9.1. This effect is not enough to simplify the design problem at high temperatures, since for example even at 1000 °C the viscosity of nitrogen is still less than 0.1 cP, or one-tenth of the viscosity of water at normal temperature. It does, however, increase the difficulty of designing self-pressurizing gas bearings for very low temperatures. There have been reports of the use of hydrodynamic gas bearings in cryogenic systems, but generally externally pressurized gas bearings are likely to be preferred.

The choice of gas is not often a problem. It will usually be the one most readily available, and in fact the vast majority of gas bearings are lubricated with air. If some other high-pressure gas is being used in a system, then it may be very economical to use it as a lubricant. Many gases are used in large

Table 9.1 Triple point and critical temperatures

Gas	*Critical temperature (°C)*	*Critical pressure (bars)*	*Triple point (°C)*
Carbon dioxide	+31	73	–57
Fluorine	–129	52.1	218
Helium	–268	2.26	
Hydrogen	–240	12.8	–259
Nitrogen	–147	33.5	–210
Oxygen	–119	49.9	–219
Water	+374	217.7	+0.007

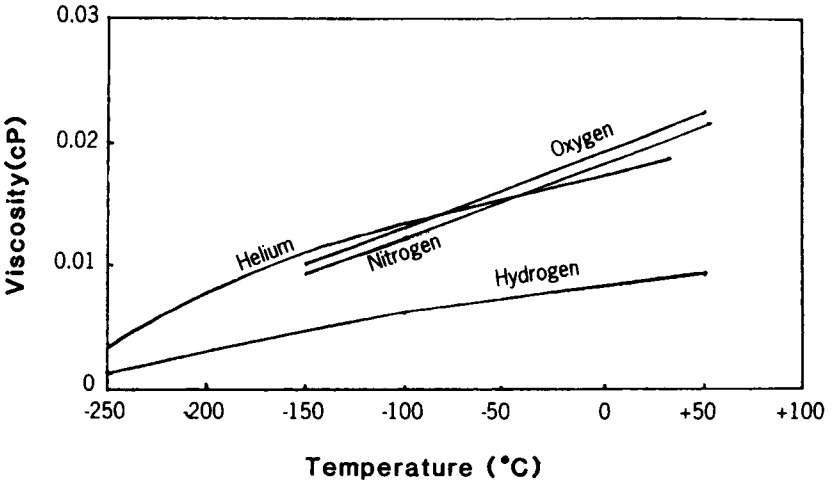


Fig. 9.1 Increase in viscosity of gas with temperature (Note: Dynamic viscosity in centipoise is shown in this figure because the kinematic viscosity in centistokes is almost meaningless for a gas.)

quantities nowadays including nitrogen, oxygen, hydrogen, ammonia, methane and propane. There is a great deal of scope for using them for lubrication of the components used in handling them.

Apart from air, two gases sometimes chosen and supplied specifically for gas bearing use are helium and nitrogen. Nitrogen is readily available and relatively cheap, either compressed or in liquid form. It is chemically very inert, and is therefore safer to use than other readily available gases like oxygen and hydrogen, or even compressed air. It is sometimes used for externally pressurized gas bearings, especially in experimental equipment.

Helium is neither readily available nor cheap, but it is even more inert than nitrogen, and is sometimes used for self-pressurizing gas bearings in small sealed systems such as inertial gyroscopes.

It was said earlier that any clean gas can be used provided it does not react with system materials. There are, of course, many gases which will attack common metals, and they would not normally be chosen for gas bearings. Where they are being manufactured or processed they may still be a good choice for lubrication because this avoids the problem of separating them from some other lubricant. It will then be necessary to choose inert bearing materials such as glasses or ceramics to avoid attack by the reactive gas.

9.3 Advantages and disadvantages of gas bearings

The main advantage of gas bearings has already been mentioned, namely the very wide temperature range over which they can be used, from perhaps –200 to 2000 °C. In practice it would be very difficult to construct a single bearing to cover a range of even 500 °C because of the problems of thermal expansion and maintaining clearances. It would not, however, be impossible, and designs such as conical self-pressurizing bearings might well cover much wider ranges.

Very high and very low temperatures can also be achieved with solid lubrication. The choice between gas and solid will generally be an easy one to make, since solid lubricants are suitable for low speeds and high loads, while gas lubricants are suitable for high speeds and low loads. In addition the friction of solid lubricants will usually be between 0.03 and 0.1, while that of gas bearings may be too low to detect.

It is theoretically possible to use a solid lubricant to manufacture a gas bearing, so that as the load increases and the gas film ceases to separate the surfaces, the solid lubricant can take over. The practical difficulty with this technique is that solid lubricants wear away with rubbing and it is difficult to maintain the very precise shape needed for a gas bearing. A compromise sometimes used is to coat the surfaces of a gas bearing with a very thin sputtered or burnished film of a solid lubricant. This will reduce friction and damage with the occasional 'touch-down' of the bearing, but the hard substrate will ensure that the shape is maintained.

Another advantage of gas bearings is the high bearing stiffness or rigidity which can be obtained. In most cases this is due to the very small clearances, or in other words to the very thin lubricant film, which ensures that the moving parts maintain very precise location. A secondary factor in very high-speed rotating gas bearings is their gyroscopic rigidity. Where the bearings are kept at the same orientation in space, as in inertial gyroscopes, this also assists the bearing stiffness; however, where they are moved about, as in a dentist's drill, the opposite is true.

The advantages and disadvantages of gas bearings can be summarized as follows:

Advantages

- wide temperature range;
- high bearing stiffness;
- usable at very high speeds;
- no requirement for special lubricant supply for self-pressurizing gas bearings;
- clean in use;
- can operate in completely sealed environment;
- exceptionally low friction.

Disadvantages

- generally low load-carrying capacity;
- detailed design complicated;
- precise control of shape and surface finish required;
- need very clean gas supply;
- bearing surfaces easily damaged by touch-down in stop–start operation or overloading.

9.4 Examples of gas bearing use

9.4.1 *Dentists' drills*

High-speed drills used by dentists have often had externally pressurized air bearings, and been driven by an air turbine. The arrangement is shown in Figure 9.2, and includes a journal bearing and a thrust bearing. The journal bearing is an ideal application for a gas bearing, as the speed is very high, of the order of 100 000 r/min, and the loads are relatively low. The radial loads consist of minute out-of-balance loads together with the radial component of the drilling loads. The smaller thrust bearing supports the axial component of the drilling loads, and is the critical part of the design.

The only supply required is the compressed air supply. This is by a rubber hose, so that the control of the drill is very flexible. The high bearing stiffness gives very precise control of the drill.

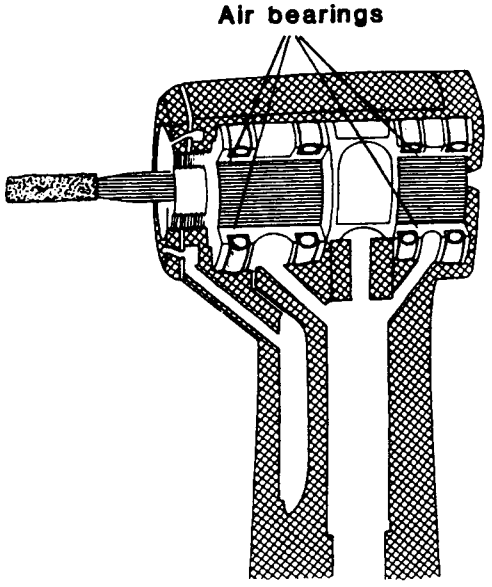


Fig. 9.2 Externally pressurized air bearings in a dental drill

9.4.2 *Precision grinding heads*

The high precision and stiffness of a gas bearing are the main reasons for their use in precision grinding heads. There is an externally pressurized journal bearing with a thrust collar to maintain axial position. The speed of rotation is relatively low, but the load is quite high, and this makes it necessary to use an externally pressurized bearing rather than a self-pressurizing type. Apart from the higher load-carrying capacity of an externally pressurized bearing, this type of bearing allows the rotor to lift off before rotation starts, and thus avoid damage.

9.4.3 *Inertial navigation gyroscopes*

The gyroscopes used in inertial navigation systems for aircraft and ships are required to operate for lengthy periods without any precession, or tilting of their axes. This is achieved by means of high gyroscopic rigidity, which in turn requires high speeds of rotation, such as 24 000 r/min. The gyroscopes are therefore mounted on small conical self-pressurising gas bearings, as shown in Fig. 9.3.

Since they are self-pressurizing, the air film decreases in thickness as the bearing slows down after use, and the surfaces touch while they are still rotating. Similarly they must start rotating again before their surfaces are separated (before 'lift-off'). This makes it important to ensure that their wear resistance is high, so that they maintain their precise shape and surface finish. It is also important that the sliding friction is low, and remains low, so that they restart easily.

Experimental work has been carried out on the use of boundary lubricants, coated onto the bearing surfaces to reduce friction and wear.

To avoid oxidation and corrosion, the gyroscopes are contained in sealed

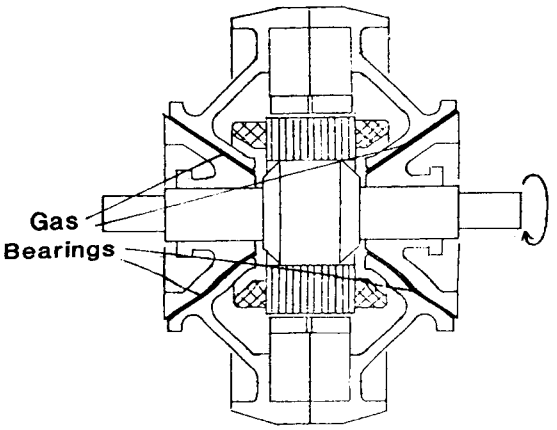


Fig. 9.3 Gas bearings in an inertial gyroscope

housings filled with dry helium. The bearings are therefore helium gas bearings and not air bearings.

The start and stop problem applies potentially to aircraft inertial navigation systems, since a typical flight will be between 3 and 12 hours. In a ship the system may be operating continuously for several days or even weeks, and the problems associated with frequent starting and stopping will not apply.

Chapter 10

Sealing of Lubricants

10.1 Principle of sealing

Seals are used to prevent a fluid (i.e. a liquid or gas) from escaping from one place to another. The technology of sealing is very broad and often complex, and is covered very well in publications such as '*Seals and sealing handbook*' (Elsevier Science Publishers, 1995). This chapter will only deal with those aspects which are relevant to the sealing of lubricants.

Often the same seal will succeed in confining the lubricant and in excluding other fluids, but this is not always the case. Many seals are effective in only one direction, and to separate a lubricant from another fluid it may be necessary to use two or more seals 'back-to-back', each preventing movement of one of the fluids.

In general it is easy to prevent a fluid from escaping provided that no moving parts are involved. Containers can be made of all sorts of materials from paper and rubber to glass and steel, and any openings can be effectively closed by lids or stoppers of the same wide range of materials. There are fluids which are hard to contain because they are strong solvents or corrosive, but some suitable materials for a container can always be found.

The problem becomes much more difficult when a moving shaft has to pass through the seal, and this is the usual situation where lubricants are involved. The seal has to cope with movement between its own surface and that of the shaft. These surfaces are bearing surfaces, having the same need to control friction and wear as other bearings, but with the added need to ensure that the gap between them does not allow the sealed fluid to escape.

Many different techniques are used to cope with this problem of sealing moving components. They can be conveniently described in four groups: static, semi-static, rotating and reciprocating. The last two seals are known as dynamic seals.

A fifth technique is to avoid the need to separate a lubricant from another

process fluid by using the process fluid as the lubricant, thus eliminating the sealing problem entirely. Probably the most widespread use of this fifth approach is in the so-called 'glandless pumps' used mainly in the chemical industry.

10.2 Static seals

One method for sealing a moving shaft efficiently is by completely enclosing the shaft in a stationary container, and driving it by means of a rotating magnetic or electromagnetic force.

The simplest method for achieving this is shown in Fig. 10.1. It involves a rotating magnet outside the container and a corresponding magnet attached to the shaft inside the container.

The internal magnet will orient itself so that the opposite poles of the two magnets are in proximity. As the outer magnet is rotated, the inner one also rotates to keep the opposite poles close together.

Any friction in the supports of the inner shaft will make it lag behind the outer one. The greater the lag, the lower is the magnetic force acting on the slave magnet. A situation can easily be reached with a particular combination of drive magnet speed and inner shaft friction where the inner shaft fails to rotate.

This simple system has rarely, if ever, been used for precision machinery,

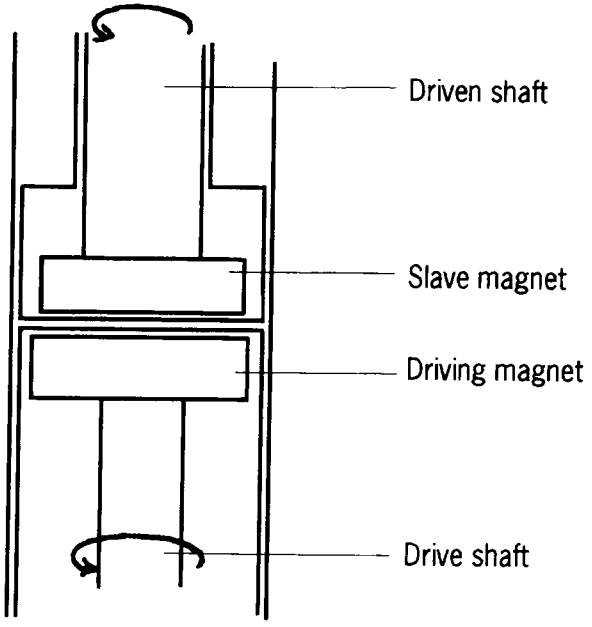


Fig. 10.1 Magnetic drive through static seal

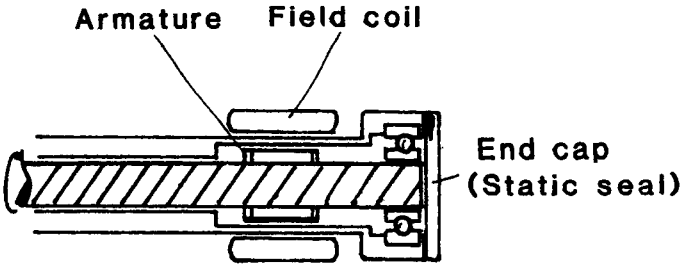


Fig. 10.2 Split electric motor drive with static sealing

but it has been used for magnetic stirrers, children's toys and advertising demonstrations.

A more sophisticated system is to mount the field coil of an electric motor outside the container and the armature on the rotary shaft inside it, as shown in Fig. 10.2. This provides a much more precise and controllable device. It has been used in spacecraft to protect the lubricant in the shaft support bearings from the effects of space vacuum. It has also been used in other high-technology applications, but never very widely.

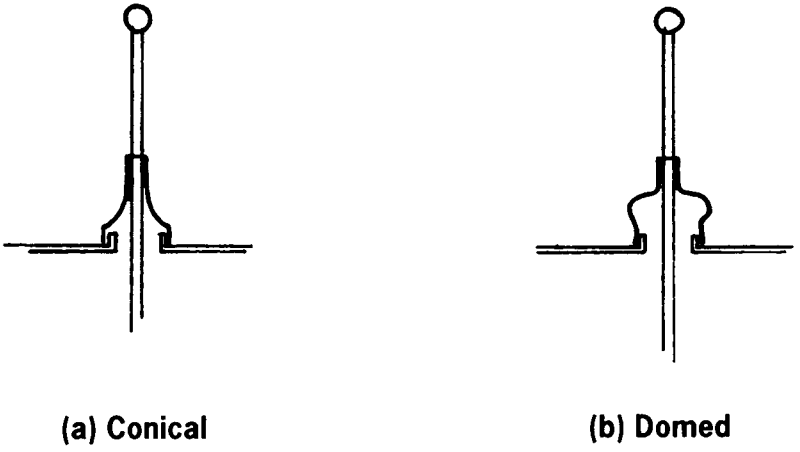
10.3 Semi-static seals

In some lubricated systems the movement which is taking place is oscillatory and of low amplitude compared with the size of the components involved. In such a case, very effective sealing can be achieved by means of a flexible sleeve or shroud which is tightly fitted to the stationary and moving part or parts. There is then no movement between the surfaces of the seal and the surfaces of the components, and all the movement takes place in the material of the seal.

One of the simplest and best-known versions is used on manual multi-speed gearboxes such as those on vehicles or machine tools. Where the gear-change lever enters the gearbox it is common practice to fit a domed or conical rubber sleeve which is attached tightly to the lever and to the outside of the box. Two versions of this device are shown in Fig. 10.3.

A sleeve of this type can cope with a wide change in angle of the gear-lever. It can also accommodate any increase or decrease in the volume of air and oil in the gearbox due to changes in temperature. In this way a gearbox can be completely sealed, without an air vent or breather having to be fitted.

The actual sleeve shape chosen will depend on the angle through which the lever must be able to move, and on the extent to which expansion and contraction must be handled. The form shown in Fig. 10.3a will permit large angular movements but little expansion while the one in Fig. 10.3b will allow a great deal of expansion.



(a) Conical **(b) Domed**

Fig. 10.3 Rubber sleeve as static seal for gearbox

Where the relative movement is entirely – or almost entirely – axial, the best flexible seal may be a bellows. A typical example of such an application may be at a splined coupling.

It is often necessary for a rotary drive to be applied through a universal coupling, and the coupling may have to permit wide changes in angle. A common example is in the drive to a rolling mill, especially the early stages of a hot mill. A flexible sleeve called a 'muff' will sometimes be fitted to the input and output shafts to surround the coupling, as shown in Fig. 10.4. Such a seal will ensure that the lubricant stays where it is needed, and will reduce the fire risk by preventing a flammable lubricant from coming into contact with hot metal. It will also reduce the risk of accidents occurring due to leakage of lubricant over the working area.

Flexible semi-static seals such as the muff are easy to design and manufacture, and can be used in a wide variety of shapes and sizes to suit

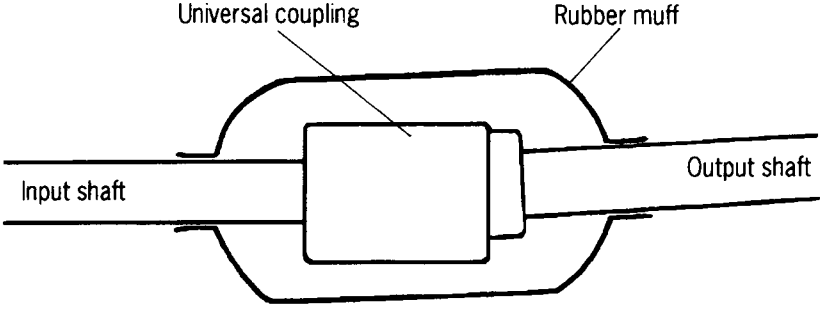


Fig. 10.4 Rubber muff as static seal for universal coupling

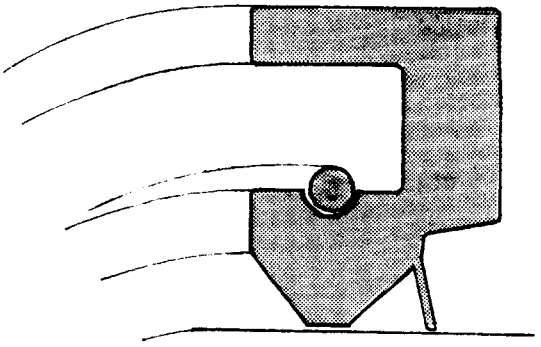


Fig. 10.5 Sections of a lip seal

different applications. However, the life of such a seal depends on the degree of flexing and will be reduced where the amplitude of flexing is high.

10.4 Rotary seals

The majority of seals are used in conjunction with rotating shafts, and there are many different types. For oil-lubricated systems such as crankcases and gearboxes a particular type of rubber lip seal is most commonly used, to such an extent that this type is commonly called an 'oil seal'. The general form of a lip seal is shown in Fig. 10.5. Other types of seal which may be used include simple O-rings, compression packings and mechanical seals; a special form of lip seal is used for sealing grease in ball bearings.

The variety of rotary seals is enormous, and it is intended here only to give a brief description of the most important types used in conjunction with lubricants.

All are dynamic seals, which slide against a second surface, or counterface. It is important to keep the friction between seal and counterface low, and to minimize the wear which takes place. Where a lubricant is being sealed, the friction and wear are both reduced if a thin film of the lubricant can be maintained between seal and counterface. The wear of the counterface is also reduced by making it of a relatively hard material. It is given a very smooth surface by grinding or lapping in order to reduce the wear of the seal and to reduce leakage.

Care is needed to maintain high sealing efficiency; this subject is covered in more detail later.

10.4.1 *Lip seals*

Several different explanations have been given for the mechanism by which a lubricant film is maintained in a lip seal, but none has ever been universally

accepted. The film is almost certainly hydrodynamic, but there is no obvious pressure wedge to generate hydrodynamic pressure. It may be that the asperities on the surfaces create wedges, and thus a micro-elastohydrodynamic lubrication.

The leakage rate depends on the pressure of the lubricant and on the size of the gap between seal lip and counterface, or in other words the thickness of the lubricant film. Just as with a hydrodynamic plain bearing, the ideal condition is where the thinnest possible lubricant film is present. The film thickness decreases if the contact pressure between lip and shaft increases. Too low a contact pressure leads to a thicker film and higher leakage. Too high a contact pressure leads to a film which is too thin and there will be unacceptable friction and wear. Fortunately the surface tension of the film also tends to prevent leakage, and even a film thick enough to prevent surface contact completely may allow no leakage.

If the lubricant pressure is increased there is a tendency for more leakage through the gap. The lip, however, is designed so that increased lubricant pressure increases the total contact pressure and thus reduces the thickness of the gap. The contribution of lubricant pressure to the total contact pressure is therefore an important factor in maintaining seal efficiency.

If an oil seal is mounted the wrong way round, the lubricant pressure will reduce the total contact pressure, and the seal efficiency will be very much reduced. Many seal housings will permit a seal to be mounted either way around, so it is important to ensure that the seal is fitted correctly. The garter spring should always be on the oil side.

Due to this strong directional effect, a lip seal is not very efficient if used to separate two lubricants, or a lubricant and another liquid. Two separate seals can be used back-to-back, each sealing one of the two lubricants, or a double seal may be used. This situation may arise if a hydraulic fluid must be separated from a gear oil, or a rolling lubricant in a rolling mill from the roll support bearing lubricant. However, it is often found that the space available does not allow two conventional oil seals to be fitted, and special seal designs exist to provide the same effect within a limited space.

Simple lip seals are probably limited to a maximum oil pressure of about 100 kN/m^2 (15 lb/in^2) because of the flexibility of the rubber. For higher pressures a steel support ring may be built into the outer part of the seal. Such supported lip seals are usable to almost 1000 kN/m^2 (145 lb/in^2).

If the shaft rotates in only one direction, helical ridges can be incorporated in the bore of the lip to pump oil back towards the pressure side. Although these positive action lip seals will withstand slightly higher oil pressure than conventional lip seals, their main use is where eccentricity or vibration are too high for the conventional types.

The restriction of positive action lip seals to a single direction of rotation is overcome in certain ingenious designs which give positive pumping action with a reversible shaft rotation.

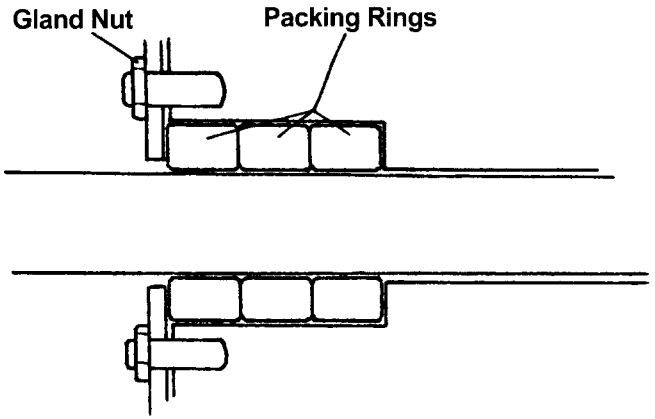


Fig. 10.6 Compression packing

10.4.2 *Compression packings*

These are seals in which a ring or series of rings of a flexible material are mounted in an annular space around the shaft, and are loaded against the shaft surface by some form of axial compression. An example is shown in Fig. 10.6.

Compression packings can withstand much higher pressures than lip seals, up to 30 MN/m^2 (4300 lb/in^2), but are limited to lower rubbing speeds. They are used in high-pressure hydraulic systems, and for many non-lubricant applications.

The simple O-ring is a similar device, but the loading against the shaft surface is obtained by a small radial interference between the O-ring and the shaft and housing.

10.4.3 *Bearing seals*

To retain the lubricant in a ball bearing, and to keep dust or dirt out, it is possible to fit seals to cover the annular gap between the inner and outer races. The axial space available is very small, and the seals used are usually very thin supported lip seals without a garter spring. They depend on the flexibility of the rubber for their contact pressure. They are made rather stiff and may be held in position by thin metal covers.

10.4.4 *Mechanical seals*

In simple terms, the sealing in a mechanical seal takes place on a radial face between two bushes, loaded axially against each other, as shown in Fig. 10.7. One of these bushes is fixed and sealed to the rotating shaft and the other to the housing.

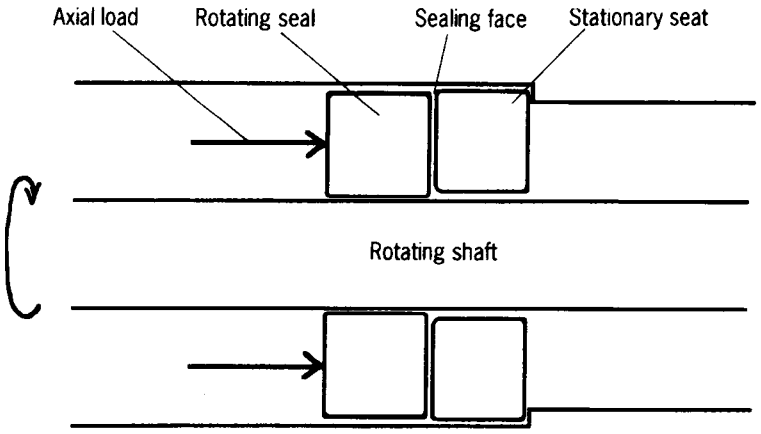


Fig. 10.7 Basic design of mechanical seal

Within this simple definition there is an enormous variety of mechanical seals, some of them being of considerable complexity. One of the two bushes is made of, or faced with, a dry bearing material such as graphite or PTFE, and this is normally called the bush. The other is made of steel or some harder material such as tungsten carbide, and is known as the seat. Either the bush or the seat may be fitted to the rotating component. The axial load can be provided by a helical spring, a Belville washer or hydraulic pressure.

The stationary seal between bush or seat and shaft or housing may be a rubber sleeve, one or more O-rings, or even a lip seal with a garter spring. In this way the flexible seals do not also have to cope with sliding motion, and their flexibility no longer limits the maximum sealable pressure. On the other hand, the seal bush and seat surfaces can be made of inflexible materials machined to give very smooth sliding contacts. Being radial instead of circumferential the sealing faces can cope with greater eccentricity.

One example of a mechanical seal is shown in Fig. 10.8, in this case for preventing a process liquid from contaminating a grease-lubricated ball bearing. This particular seal has a graphite sealing bush, able to float radially, but sealed to the shaft by means of a rubber sleeve. The steel seat is sealed into the housing by two O-rings, and the axial load is provided by a helical spring.

The seal face is normally lubricated by a very thin film of the sealed liquid, but where this liquid is not a good lubricant the sliding properties of the bush material will determine the friction and wear life. The axial spring load maintains a steady contact pressure between bush and seat, and compensates for wear of the seal face. For the same reason the axial positioning is not critical during assembly, within perhaps ±5 percent of the compressible length of the spring from the correct design position.

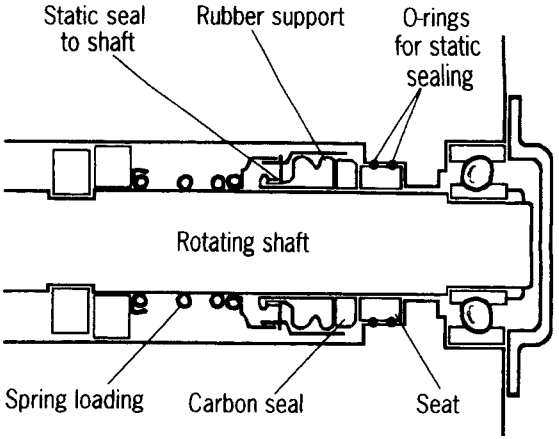


Fig. 10.8 Example of a mechanical seal

The pressure of the sealed liquid is often used to provide additional axial contact load at the seal face. In this way an increase in liquid pressure produces increased contact load and maintains effective sealing against the greater pressure. However, with very high liquid pressures the contact pressure may become excessive, causing lubrication failure and excessive wear or surface break-up. For high-pressure applications the seal will therefore be designed so that the hydraulic pressure is used to balance out part of the axial load.

Unbalanced mechanical seals can be used to about 1 MN/m^2 (145 lb/in^2) while balanced types can be used to 10 MN/m^2 or even, with special designs to over 20 MN/m^2 (2900 lb/in^2).

10.4.5 *Clearance seals*

All the types of rubbing seal described so far have several disadvantages. They are complicated and expensive, critical in fitting, wear out in service and generate friction. If the liquid which is being sealed is not flooding the seal location, but is only reaching it by splashing, or creeping along the shaft, it may be possible to provide adequate sealing by means of a non-rubbing, or clearance seal. The most common types are labyrinths and bush seals; these are depicted in Fig. 10.9.

The floating bush seal (Fig. 10.9c) is very widely used, having the advantage that shaft eccentricity is compensated for by radial movement of the bush, so that a smaller bush clearance can be used. If the direction of shaft rotation is constant, a helical labyrinth can be mounted on the shaft so as to pump the liquid back by a screw-feed mechanism. This is called a viscoseal.

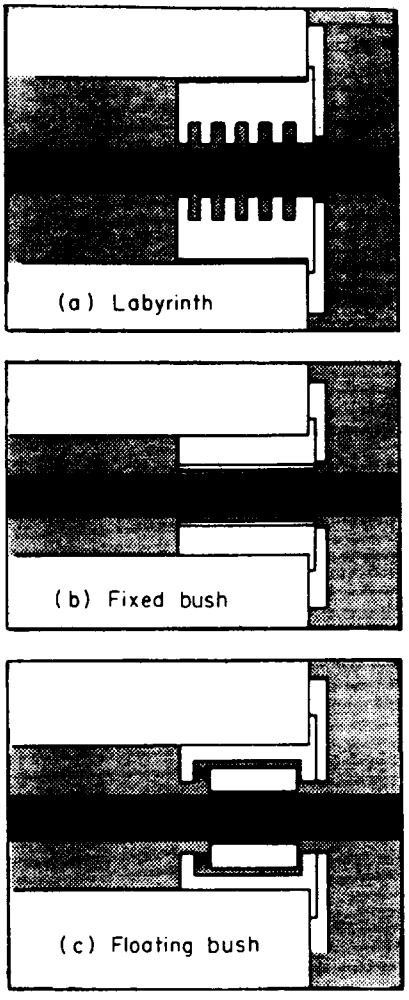


Fig. 10.9 Three types of clearance seal

10.4.6 *Flinger rings*

Where the sealed liquid reaches the seal location mainly by flow along the shaft, much of it will be flung off by centrifugal action before reaching the seal. This effect can be improved by mounting a ring on the shaft. The centrifugal force is proportional to the square of the ring diameter, so that it is an advantage to use a ring of the highest convenient diameter. A ring with a diameter twice that of the shaft will have four times the throwing effect. In addition, however, any liquid which flows on past the flinger ring must flow inward against the centrifugal effect; this will further reduce the amount of liquid passing the ring location.

It will sometimes be possible to mount a flinger ring just inside the casing, so that the oil flung off from the ring returns immediately to the sump. More often the ring will be mounted inside a housing, and it must then be co-located with drain grooves in the housing. Several flinger rings and drain grooves may be fitted. These can give excellent control of the liquid, even where there is extensive splashing and spraying taking place, as in a high-speed gearbox or crankcase.

10.5 Sealing reciprocating shafts

Many of the seals already described can be used with reciprocating motion of a shaft. For small amplitudes bellows or even diaphragms may be suitable, while for low speeds with good lubricants O-rings, packed glands and even lip seals can be used.

There are in addition several types specially designed for use with axial movement, and a few of the most important are U-rings, chevron packings and piston rings.

10.5.1 *U-rings*

Figure 10.10 shows a typical U-ring in position as the seal for a hydraulic actuator rod. It consists of a rubber ring with a U-shaped cross-section. The loading of the lip against the rod surface is given by the deformation of the ring shape by compression between rod and housing.

The ring should preferably be installed so that the rod moves away from the open side of the 'U' when that side is under pressure. Thus in Fig. 10.10 the rod should be moving to the right when the hydraulic fluid to the right of the seal is at high pressure and to the left when the fluid pressure is reduced.

All rubber ring seals in reciprocating systems must be installed so that the

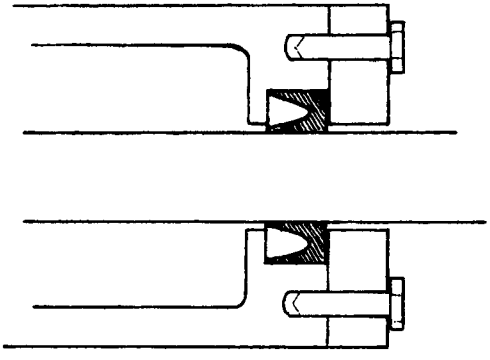


Fig. 10.10 U-ring seal for a hydraulic actuator rod

extent to which the rubber protrudes from the housing (i.e. the clearance between shaft and housing bore) is small compared with the axial thickness of the ring.

10.5.2 *Chevron packings*

One common form of compression packing is the chevron, in which the cross-section of the compressible ring is in the form of a broad 'V'; and this form is particularly suitable for reciprocating shafts. Chevron packings can be used singly or in multiple sets. When used as rotary seals they are compressed mechanically. For reciprocating use they are mounted between shaped metal rings with little or no mechanical pressurization. The necessary pressurization is given by the sealed liquid.

It is sometimes considered desirable to provide some means of axial adjustment of the seal housing. In normal operation this would be used only to eliminate play during assembly. If excessive leakage occurs later, due to seal or rod damage, it may be useful as a strictly interim measure to tighten up the adjustment and compress the chevron to give a tighter fit on the rod and reduce leakage pending a proper repair.

10.5.3 *Piston rings*

The most familiar type of piston ring seal is probably the split metal ring used in an automotive piston engine, in which the ring is split axially at one point. The ring is mounted in a square section circumferential groove in the piston under slight compression, so that it expands tightly against the cylinder wall. The split in the ring leaves a very small gap in the seal, but this is acceptable, especially since three or more rings are normally used in series.

The chief value of the all-metal piston ring is that it withstands the high temperatures and oxidizing conditions in the cylinder of an internal combustion engine. They can only be used with lubrication, although a solid lubricant such as PTFE or a molybdenum disulphide composite has been used with some success, in the form of an additional ring

Where the temperature is lower, especially if liquid lubrication is not possible, similar piston rings made of reinforced PTFE, carbon, graphite or various lubricating composites can be used. Rubber U-rings and chevrons can also be used as well as many modified forms, such as double U-rings, W-rings and lobed O-rings.

10.6 Seal materials

In selecting seal materials, their compatibility with the lubricant must be taken into account in accordance with Table 4.4. The maximum temperature

limit will also be important. Natural rubber can be used to about 80 °C, nitrile to 120 °C, and viton and silicone rubbers to 200 °C.

10.7 Handling and fitting

Probably the most important single factor in seal performance is the smoothness and conformity of the seal and counterface surfaces. Any roughness or scoring of either will provide leakage paths and destroy the effectiveness of the seal.

Flexible seal materials are generally soft and easily damaged, and they should be stored and handled carefully. For assembly it will often be helpful to moisten slightly with the type of lubricant which is present in the system.

Lip seals, O-rings and other rubber rings often have to be assembled onto a shaft having locating grooves, keyways, ports, threads and so on. The rubber lip can easily be damaged by any sharp discontinuity.

Wherever possible grooves, keyways and ports should be slightly radiused before seals are fitted, and threads should preferably be cut below the main shaft diameter. A thin metal or hard plastic sleeve can often be fitted over a thread or other discontinuity to prevent damage when a seal must be slid past them.

Chapter 11

Lubricant Testing and Specifications

11.1 The object of testing

The most important factor in testing is to decide clearly just what is the purpose of the tests, and then to match the test programme to the objectives which have been identified.

Testing of a lubricant, or of anything else, may be done for a number of different reasons and the following are some examples:

- to find out if it will work well in a particular piece of equipment;
- to find out if it will survive in particular conditions, such as heat or humidity;
- to ensure that it is safe to use, and not toxic or highly flammable;
- to ensure that it meets a specification;
- to find out if it is the same type of oil as a previous shipment;
- for legal purposes, for example to find out if it meets a flammability limit, or falls into a particular category for excise duty.

The tests which are used for lubricants fall into three main categories:

(a) *Functional tests.* These are designed to show how the lubricant performs its function as a lubricant, or one of its secondary functions as a hydraulic fluid, coolant or corrosion preventive. They usually involve simulating to some extent the conditions under which the lubricant will be expected to operate.

(b) *Chemical tests.* These involve measuring some chemical property of the lubricant, such as acidity, or the concentration of some chemical substance which is present in it, such as calcium or naphthenes.

(c) *Physical tests.* Physical properties may be measured either because they are themselves important, as with viscosity, or because they give information about some other important aspect, as when colour indicates the state of a used lubricant.

The effort and cost involved in testing is of course important. In general functional tests are most directly useful in predicting how a lubricant will perform in service, but they are also the most expensive. Chemical tests are very useful because if enough is known about the chemical nature of the lubricant this will go a long way towards predicting how it will perform in service. Chemical tests tend to be much cheaper than functional tests, but more expensive than physical tests.

Physical tests, although the cheapest, are also usually the least valuable in predicting service performance. An exception is viscosity measurement, which is relatively inexpensive but extremely important in that it directly predicts hydrodynamic performance. On the other hand, even if the material tested has a viscosity of, say, 20 cSt, and this is ideal for the application, the information is not much use if it is not known whether it is a lubricant, an adhesive, or sulphuric acid. In other words physical test results generally have to be used in conjunction with information from other sources.

The usefulness of a test is increased considerably if the result can be compared directly with results obtained by others. For this reason there has been a great development of standardized test methods, especially during the last 50 years.

11.2 Functional tests

If a bearing, or a machine, is completely conventional, and operating well within its limits, the selection of a lubricant for it may be quite straightforward, and no testing will be needed. On the other hand, if the design is unconventional, or if the load, speed, temperature, environment or some other factor is unusual, then testing will be essential.

Prediction of lubricant and bearing behaviour in unusual conditions is not highly reliable. There is then only one way to make sure that the lubricant will perform satisfactorily in a particular piece of equipment and under particular service conditions. That is to carry out a service trial in which the lubricant is tested in the actual service equipment under actual service conditions.

Unfortunately there are several factors which make service trials unsatisfactory:

(a) *Duration of the trial.* If the life expected of the lubricant in service is a year, or 5 years, then the service trial will have to last longer than that, to make sure that there is a margin available over the minimum life required. In most cases it would not be possible to wait that long for a result.

(b) *Insufficient control.* It is often not possible in a service trial to cover all the possible environmental conditions which may be encountered eventually, from arctic cold to tropical heat, or from jungle humidity to desert dryness.

(c) *Difficulty of monitoring.* It is usually not possible in a service trial to measure important factors such as friction, bearing temperature and wear rate. If a bearing failure occurs, the damage may be too great to show whether the lubricant or some other quite accidental factor caused the failure.

(d) *Cost.* A service trial will often be expensive, so that although one will eventually be needed, some cheaper form of sorting test may be preferable initially. On the other hand, a well-controlled laboratory test can sometimes be more expensive than a service trial.

An alternative to a service trial is a laboratory test based on the actual service equipment. This has many advantages:

(a) The operating conditions can be controlled and varied over a wide range, if necessary covering every set of conditions which might be met in service.

(b) Special instruments can be fitted to measure operating performance, such as thermocouples to measure oil and bearing temperature, accelerometers to monitor vibration and torque meters to measure friction.

(c) The results may be obtained sooner by accelerating the test, although this must be done with great care. An increase in load, for example, may wreck a bearing which would operate perfectly well under the actual service conditions. Increasing the speed may also wreck the system or, on the other hand, may help it to survive by taking the bearing conditions from boundary to hydrodynamic. One way which is generally safe is to reduce the amount of idle time. For example, in service a generator might operate

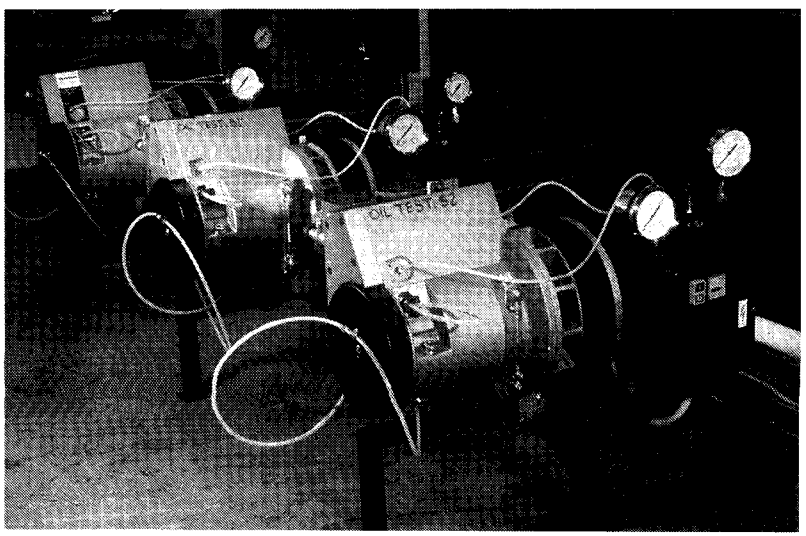


Fig. 11.1 Compressors set up for oil testing

only twice a day for a total of 1 hour. In a laboratory test it might be run 30 times a day for a total of 15 hours without changing the operating conditions, and thus without invalidating the test.

Figure 11.1 shows a bank of compressors set up for laboratory testing of lubricants, with additional gauges and filters fitted to improve monitoring and control. The most important class of laboratory lubricant tests based on actual service equipment comprises the many engine tests used to develop and evaluate automotive engine oils.

There are many situations in which it is impossible to use the service equipment for testing, either in the field or in the laboratory. This may be because it is too expensive, or because only one example will be built, as with a ship or a spacecraft, or because the design has not yet been finalized. Under these circumstances laboratory test rigs must be used.

When a piece of service equipment is used for testing, there is always a good simulation of the shape and the operating conditions. The simulation

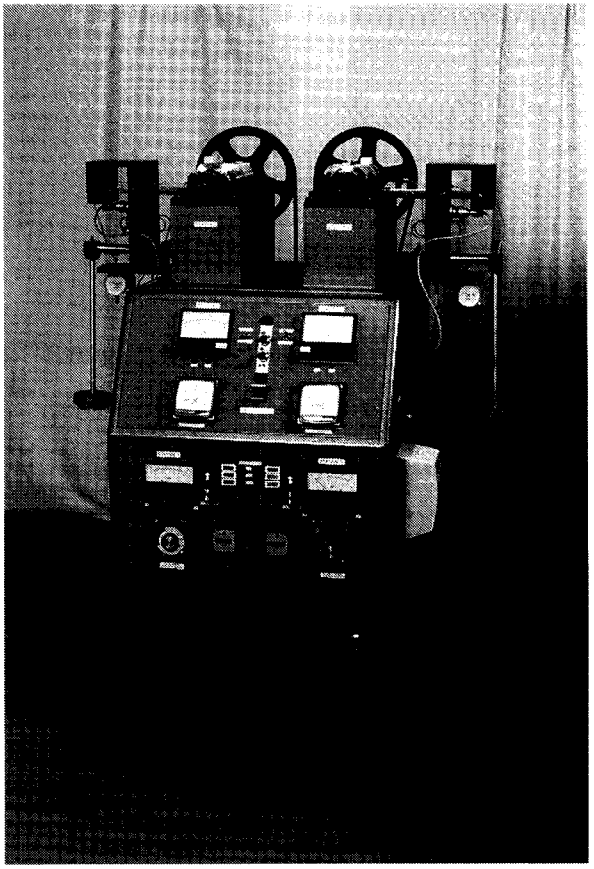


Fig. 11.2 Coturnix journal bearing test machine

is never as good with a test rig, but efforts must always be made to see that the following important factors are imitated as accurately as possible:

- contact shape;
- bearing size;
- bearing speed;
- contact pressure;
- lubricant flow;
- temperature;
- environment.

Some laboratory test rigs are built to simulate the bearing or other components for which the tests are being made, and it may then be possible to reproduce all the above factors. Often, however, a general purpose test rig will be used; it should be capable of imitating as many of the important factors as possible, especially the speed, pressure and temperature. Since the simulation is not complete, tests should also be carried out over a range of speeds, pressures and temperatures, to make sure that there is a safety factor available in the lubricant performance.

Many general purpose laboratory test rigs are commercially available; Fig. 11.2 shows one which can be used to test lubricants in a wide variety of different journal bearing types.

The discussion so far has concentrated on lubricant performance testing from the user's point of view. The problem for the lubricant manufacturer is different. It is impossible for an oil to be tested in every type of equipment in which it might be used, although in fact a major oil company might test a new engine oil in 30 different types of engine. At the early development stage, however, test rigs are needed which will test small quantities of oil or grease in such a way that one can be reasonably confident of applying the results to a wide range of service users. Table 11.1 lists a number of the most common test rigs of this type.

Table 11.1 Some common lubricant test machines

Test rig	*Method numbers*
Seta-Shell four-ball lubricant test machine	IP 239, ASTM D-2596
Timken wear and lubricant testing machine	IP 240, ASTM D-2509
Falex lubricant tester	ASTM D-3233
FZG gear machine	IP 334
Rolling bearing test machine	IP 168
Alpha LFW-1 friction and wear testing machine	ASTM D-2714

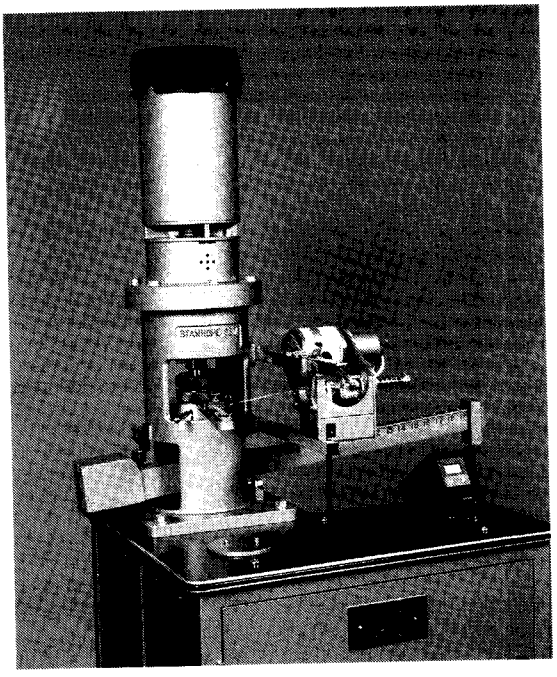


Fig. 11.3 Seta-Shell four-ball machine

Perhaps the best-known of all lubricant test machines is the Seta-Shell four-ball machine (Fig. 11.3). This is often criticized because it does not simulate any real bearing geometry. However, the results obtained with it have been used satisfactorily in the development of hundreds of different lubricants.

The results from such machines are often quoted in specifications. These are commonly used in purchase agreements, so the test conditions must be tightly controlled. Many of these machines have been the basis of test methods standardized by the British Institute of Petroleum (IP), the American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) and other standardization organizations. Some of these standard methods are listed in Table 11.1.

There is yet another class of functional tests for lubricants in which it is not the lubricating performance but some other function which is tested. These are also often standardised methods and several of the more widely recognized ones are listed in Table 11.2. They include tests for corrosion, flammability, emulsification and so on. On the whole, no attempt is made with such tests to simulate the conditions of any one particular application. The basic assumption is that if lubricant A is better than lubricant B in the test, then A will also be better than B in service. Where the tests have been nationally standardized it can reasonably be taken that this assumption is likely to be correct.

Table 11.2 Other functional tests for lubricants

Test	*Method numbers*
Cast iron corrosion characteristics of petroleum products	IP125
Rust-preventing characteristics of steam-turbine oil	IP135, ASTM D-665
Foaming characteristics of lubricating oils	IP146, ASTM D-892
Evaporation loss of lubricating greases	IP183, ASTM D-972
Water washout characteristics of lubricating grease	IP215, ASTM D-1264
Determination of rust-prevention characteristics of lubricating grease	IP220
Seal compatibility index of petroleum oils	IP278
Rust prevention characteristics of metalworking fluids	IP287
Stability of water-in-oil emulsions	IP 290
Water separability of petroleum oils and synthetic fluids	ASTM D-1401
Frothing characteristics of water mix metalworking fluids	IP 312
High-temperature foaming characteristics of lubricating oils	IP 453
Leakage tendencies of automotive wheel bearing greases	ASTM D-1263
Sonic shear stability of polymer-containing oils	ASTM D-2603
Sonic shear stability of hydraulic fluids	ASTM D-5621
Extreme-pressure properties of lubricating grease	ASTM D-5706
Friction and wear properties of lubricating grease	ASTM D-5707

Thus functional tests may vary from perfect simulation in a service trial to complete non-simulation in a standardized laboratory test. All of them can give valuable information, provided that the results are interpreted in relation to results obtained from other sources, and that the differences between the test conditions and those which will arise in service are kept in mind.

11.3 Chemical and physical tests

Even if only nationally or internationally recognized methods are considered, there are probably hundreds of different chemical and physical tests which

can be applied to lubricants. It would be a waste of space to attempt to describe all of them, and anyone faced with the problem of devising lubricant test programmes will be well advised to obtain the IP and ASTM volumes listed in the Bibliography. It will be enough here to describe some of the more important types of method, and those which relate to other parts of this book.

An excellent guide to the use of tests for lubricants was the 'Lubricants' chapter of *Criteria for quality of petroleum products* produced by the Institute of Petroleum (Applied Science Publishers, 1973), but unfortunately that book is now obsolete and difficult to obtain.

Table 11.3 Standardized oxidation tests for lubricants

Test	*Method numbers*
Oxidation stability of lubricating greases (bomb method)	IP142, ASTM D-942
Oxidation characteristics of inhibited mineral oils	ASTM D-943
Oxidation stability of steam-turbine oils (rotating bomb)	IP229, ASTM D-2272
Oxidation stability of inhibited mineral turbine oils	IP280
Oxidation stability of straight mineral oil	IP306
Oxidation stability of mineral insulating oil	IP307
Oxidation stability of mineral turbine oils during use	IP328
Oxidation stability of inhibited mineral insulating oils	IP335
Oxidation characteristics of extreme-pressure oils	ASTM D-2893
Sludging tendency of inhibited mineral oils	ASTM D-4310
Oxidation stability of gasoline engine oils	ASTM D-4742
Oxidation induction time of lubricating greases	ASTM D-5483
Oxidation and thermal stability of gear oils	ASTM D-5763
Universal oxidation test for hydraulic and turbine oils	ASTM D-5846
Oxidation induction time of lubricating oils	ASTM D-6186

11.3.1 *Oxidation tests*

Oxygen does not dissolve readily in oils, and most oxidation is caused by free oxygen in the form of a gas. The rate of oxidation depends on the extent to which the oxygen comes into contact with the oil. This involves the amount of oxygen present and how much mixing takes place, as well as the temperature and any other substances present which may catalyse (increase) or inhibit (decrease) the rate of oxidation. As a result many different oxidation tests have been developed to simulate different service conditions; Table 11.3 lists some of these tests.

The results of one test cannot be compared directly with another, so users need to choose the test which is most appropriate for their own application. For example, IP229 is most suitable for steam-turbine oils, and IP 142 is most suitable for lubricating greases. IP229, IP280 and IP328 can be applied to used oils to determine their remaining oxidation service life.

Table 11.4 Some tests for thermal deterioration

Test	*Method numbers*
Thermal decomposition	
Thermal stability of water mix metalworking fluid	IP311
Oxidation and thermal stability of gear oils	ASTM D-5763
Thermal breakdown of greases	
Dropping point of lubricating grease	IP132, ASTM D-566
Dropping point of lubricating grease (automatic method)	IP396
Dropping point of lubricating grease, wide temperature range	ASTM D-2265
Loss of volatile components	
Evaporation loss of lubricating grease	IP183
Evaporation loss of lubricating greases and oils	ASTM D-972
Evaporation loss, lubricating greases, wide temperature range	ASTM D-2595
Evaporation loss of lubricating oil (Noack method)	ASTM D-5800

11.3.2 *Thermal stability*

Thermal stability is usually less important in practice than oxidation stability, and does not depend as strongly on the conditions of use. There is therefore less need for a wide variety of different tests for thermal stability. Those listed in Table 11.4 fall basically into three groups.

(a) IP132, IP180, ASTM D-566 and ASTM D-2265 are concerned with breakdown of the structure of greases at high temperature.
(b) IP183, ASTM D-972 and ASTM D-2595 measure the extent to which volatile components of oils or greases evaporate away at high temperature.
(c) Only IP311 and ASTM D-2160 are designed to show the tendency of an oil to break down chemically as the temperature is raised. In both cases the tests are used to assess the effect of temperature in a situation where little or no oxygen is present.

11.3.3 *Flammability*

Like oxidation, flammability of a lubricant depends very much on the conditions present, and not simply on the temperature. As a result a variety of different tests are used, some of which are listed in Tables 11.5 and 11.6, but the results cannot be compared from one test to another. The effects of different conditions are discussed more fully in Chapter 14, together with some of the relevant tests.

Due to the great effect of different test conditions on ignition behaviour, it has been difficult to obtain agreement on the selection of standard tests. This is illustrated by Table 11.6, which lists eight different widely used flash point tests. The general principle of all of them is the same, in that a sample of the test liquid is heated and a flame is brought near its surface. The lowest liquid temperature at which the vapour above the surface ignites is the flash point. The many methods differ in the size of container, whether it is open or closed, the rate of heating, precision and so on, all of which can affect the flash point.

Flash points are the most commonly used flammability tests, and are usually quoted for any liquid lubricant. They are also used to define

Table 11.5 Some flammability tests

Test	*Method numbers*
Reaction threshold temperature	ASTM D-2883
Linear flame propagation rate	ASTM D-5306
Auto-ignition determination of liquid chemicals	ASTM E-659
Hot manifold test	AMS 3150c
Flammability spray test for hydraulic fluids	BS DD61

Table 11.6 Commonly used flash point tests

Test	*Method numbers*
Closed flash point (Pensky–Martens)	IP34, ASTM D-93
Open flash and fire point (Pensky-Martens)	IP35
Open flash and fire point (Cleveland method)	IP36, ASTM D-92
Flash point (Abel closed cup method)	IP170
Flash point rapid equilibrium method	IP303, ASTM D-3828
Flash point closed cup equilibrium method	IP304
Flash point by tag closed tester	ASTM D-56
Closed flash point (Pensky–Martens method)	IP404

flammability for certain legal purposes. In spite of this, however, their precision is poor.

Flash points of mineral lubricating oils are generally above 160 °C, but may be as low as 80 °C for light lubricating and hydraulic oils. The flash point test is a useful test for fuel contamination of engine oils, as even 5 percent of a fuel in an engine oil will reduce the flash point considerably.

11.3.4 *Composition*

There are over 40 Institute of Petroleum standard tests and a similar number

Table 11.7 Tests for acidity and alkalinity

Test	*Method numbers*
Acidity	IP1
Acidity and alkalinity of lubricating grease	IP37
Saponification number – titration method	IP136, ASTM D-94
Acid or base number by colour indicator titration	IP139, ASTM D-974
Weak and strong acid number (potentiometric titration)	IP177, ASTM D-664
Inorganic acidity of petroleum products	IP182
Base number perchloric acid potentiometric–titration method	IP276, ASTM D-2896
Total acid number by semi-micro colour indicator titration	ASTM D-3339
Base number of petroleum products (potentiometric titration)	ASTM D-4739
Base number – conductimetric method	IP400

of ASTM tests which can be used to obtain information about the composition of lubricants. These are in addition to those used mainly to analyse contaminants.

One important group are the tests for acidity and alkalinity, listed in Table 11.7. Alkalinity, or base number, is an indication of the presence of alkalyne additives, such as sodium or calcium compounds. Base number tests may be carried out on new lubricants as a quality control method, or on used lubricants, where they indicate the amount of additive still available.

Acidity is also used as a quality control test to monitor the purity of an unused lubricant. A typical acid number for an unused lubricant is less than

Table 11.8 Some tests for lubricant composition

Test	*Method numbers*
Sulphur (high-pressure combustion method)	IP61, ASTM D-129
Calcium content of lubricating oil	IP111
Zinc content of lubricating oil	IP117
Asphaltenes (heptane insolubles)	IP143
Phosphorus content of petroleum products (flask method)	IP245
Total metals in unused lubricating oils and additives	IP339
Hydrocarbon types in lubricating oil basestocks	IP368
Petroleum products – determination of vanadium and nickel content	IP433
Petroleum products – determination of sulphur content	IP447
Aromatic carbon content of lubricant mineral base oils	IP451
Additive elements – lubricating oils (ICP–AAS)	ASTM D-4951
Additive/wear elements – used lubricating oils	ASTM D-5185
Phosphorus in lubricating oils and additives	ASTM D-1091
Lubricant additive components (X-ray fluorescence)	ASTM D-4927
Total nitrogen in lubricating oils (Kjeldahl method)	ASTM D-3228
Lithium and sodium in lubricating greases	ASTM D-3340
Determination of phosphorus, sulfur, calcium and zinc	ASTM D-6481

0.3 mg KOH/g. Acidity is also a valuable check on a used lubricant, as it indicates the degree of oxidation which has taken place.

There are many other tests for composition; some examples are listed in Table 11.8.

More general information about the composition of the base oil is easily obtained by the technique called infra-red spectroscopy, and its more modern version FTIR (Fourier transform infra-red) spectroscopy. This is a cheap technique requiring only a tiny sample, and will distinguish all the types of synthetic oil and the main composition types in mineral oils, but it requires specialist knowledge to carry it out. Some examples of infra-red spectra of different base oils are shown in Fig. 11.4.

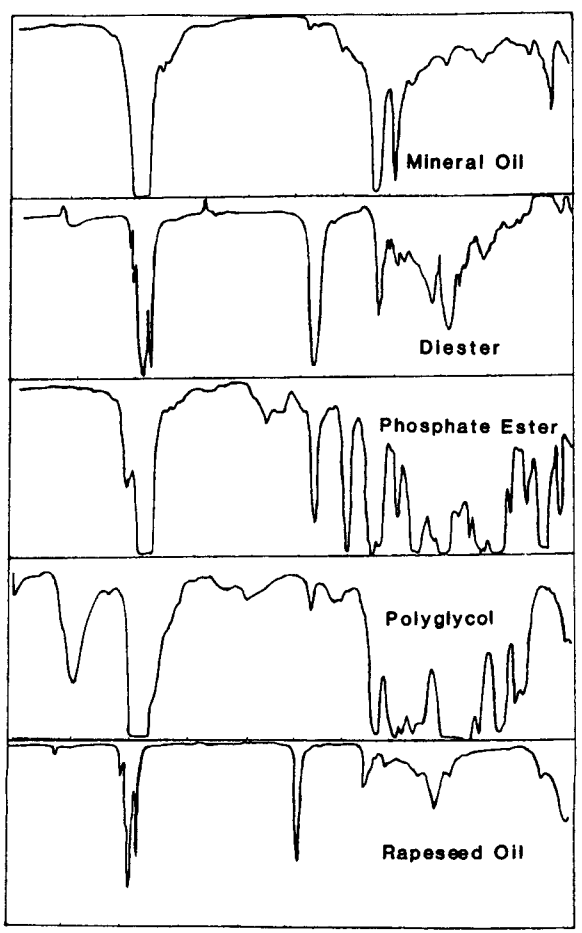


Fig. 11.4 Infra-red spectra of different base oils

Table 11.9 Some tests for contaminants in lubricants

Test	*Method numbers*
Gasoline engine crankcase oil fuel dilution	IP23, ASTM D-322
Water content of petroleum products – distillation method	IP74, ASTM D-95
Total solids in used engine oils	IP316
Deleterious particles in lubricating grease	ASTM D-1404
Water in liquid petroleum products (Karl Fischer)	IP438, ASTM D-1744
Glycol-base antifreeze in used lubricating oils	ASTM D-2982
Contaminants in used lubricating oils (ICP–AES)	ASTM D-5185
Wear metals and contaminants in used lubricating oils	ASTM D-6595

11.3.5 *Contamination*

The subject of contamination analysis is discussed in more detail in Chapter 12, but some of the more important standard test methods for contaminants are listed in Table 11.9. In addition, of course, any composition test is a test for contaminants if it is used to detect something which was not originally present. Thus IP117 is used to analyse zinc-containing additives, but could equally detect zinc contaminant in an oil.

Similarly, flash point determinations will indicate the presence of low-flash-point contaminants (fuels or solvents) in lubricating oils.

11.3.6 *Viscosity and consistency*

A number of test methods for viscosity and consistency are listed in Table 11.10. The preferred test method for viscosity of an oil is the capillary viscometer method standardized in IP71, ASTM D-445. The method is based on the measurement of the time taken for a known volume of oil to flow under gravity through a calibrated glass capillary viscometer. A typical capillary viscometer is shown in Fig. 11.5. This gives the kinematic viscosity in mm^2/s or cSt; the dynamic viscosity, in Pa s or cP, is obtained by multiplying the kinematic viscosity by the density of the oil, g/cm^3 at the same temperature.

The capillary viscometer is not suitable for use with extremely viscous liquids. For this reason oil viscosity at very low temperatures is measured

Table 11.10 Tests for viscosity and consistency

Test	*Method numbers*
Oils	
Pour point	IP15, ASTM D-97
Kinematic viscosity and calculation of dynamic viscosity	IP71, ASTM D-445
Calculation of viscosity index from kinematic viscosity	IP226, ASTM D-2270
Low-temperature viscosity of automotive fluids	IP267
Apparent viscosity (cold cranking simulator)	IP383, ASTM D-5293
Dynamic viscosity – high shear viscometer method	IP370
Greases	
Cone penetration of lubricating grease	IP50, ASTM D-217
Dropping point of lubricating grease	IP132, ASTM D-566
Low-temperature torque of lubricating grease	IP186, ASTM D-1478
Cone penetration of grease (small scale)	IP310, ASTM D-1403
Apparent viscosity of lubricating greases	ASTM D-1092

by rotary systems in IP267 and ASTM D-2602. The lowest temperature at which the oil will flow at all is indicated by the pour point method, IP15/ASTM D-97.

The consistency of a grease is normally measured by the cone penetration method (described in Section 7.5.1) of IP50/ASTM D-217, or if smaller samples must be used, by the smaller scale versions of IP310/ASTM D-1403. The temperature at which a grease begins to flow under gravity is given by the dropping point method IP132/ASTM D-566. The apparent viscosity of a grease when it is made to flow is indicated by ASTM D-1092. Due to the difficulty of predicting grease behaviour, the critical problem of starting greased bearings at low temperatures is assessed directly by the low-temperature torque tests of IP186 and ASTM D-1478, but the precision of these tests is poor.

11.3.7 *Other physical tests*

The density or relative density (specific gravity) of a lubricant has some importance in itself, as for example in converting kinematic to dynamic viscosity, but is more often measured as a quality control technique in the

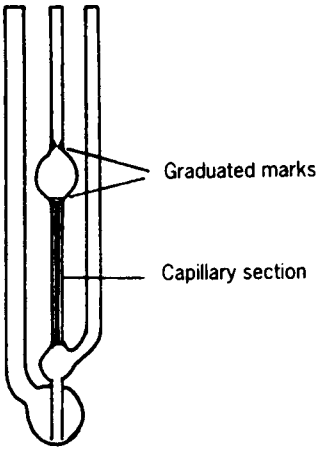


Fig. 11.5 Suspended level capillary viscometer

manufacture or sale of lubricants. It is usually measured by means of a hydrometer (IP160, ASTM D-1298) or a pycnometer (IP189, IP190).

The colour of a lubricant is also assessed as a quality control technique, and one widely standardized method is IP196, ASTM D-1500, ASTM *Colour of Petroleum Products*.

11.4 Standards and specifications

Lubricants are generally bought or sold by the manufacturers' brand names, such as BP Visco 2000, Shell Rimula X15/40, Esso Dortan 12 or Mobilgrease 28. Once a user has established that a particular brand is satisfactory for the chosen application, the brand name may be a sufficient guarantee of performance. On the other hand, a brand name gives no information on performance to a potential user seeing it for the first time, and it needs to be supported by a document giving properties and performance figures.

Such a document is a specification, although it may be called a data sheet or a standard. In general data sheets are issued by lubricant suppliers to describe typical properties of one or more of their products. A typical data sheet might list the properties shown in Table 11.11.

A supplier's data sheet may not give the user any direct information showing that the lubricant is suitable for a particular application, but it does two useful things. The first is to indicate to the user the typical properties which the supplier tries to maintain for that brand, and thus give the user some yardstick by which to assess the lubricant. The second is that if data sheets for two different brands list very similar properties, the user can have increased confidence that it is possible to change safely from one brand to another.

Table 11.11 Typical data sheet properties

	Oil No.1	*Oil No.2*	*Oil No.3*
Viscosity:			
cSt at 40 °C	75	165	240
cSt at 100 °C	8.9	14. 8	18.4
Viscosity index	95	95	95
Pour point (°C)	–20	–10	25
Acidity (mg KOH/g), maximum	0.2	0.2	0.25
Flash point, closed cup (°C)	195	210	215
Specific gravity	0.887	0.894	0.900

Remember, however, that similar data sheets give no guarantee that the two brands concerned can be interchanged safely, especially in some application not covered by the data sheets. For example, two hydraulic fluids from different manufacturers may have almost identical data sheets, but if no data on cleanliness is given, one of them may work well in a system while the other, being dirtier, causes plugging of valves and complete failure.

To avoid this problem, major users will often draw up their own specifications which cover the performance aspects which are important in their own applications. In the example quoted above, the user might specify limits on the solid particle contamination, and in this way avoid the risk of damage from a dirty fluid.

Technically a specification differs from a data sheet in that it lays down limits for various properties or test results, as shown in Table 11.12, whereas a data sheet normally gives only typical values. A specification is often used as the basis for a purchasing contract, and the specification limits then

Table 11.12 Typical specification requirements

Test	*Limits*	*Method*
Viscosity, kinematic:		
cSt at 40 °C	60-75	IP71/97*
cSt at 100 °C	8.3-8.5	IP71/97
Flash point, closed cup (°C)	Min. 190	IP34/99
Pour point (°C)	Max. –10	IP15/95
Total acid number (mg KOH/g)	Max. 0.1	IP177/96
Copper corrosion, classification	Max. 1	IP154/2000

* The second number indicates the date of most recent revision. This date can often be omitted in general use, but in specifications it should always be quoted.

become contractual obligations. For this reason it is usually not possible for a small user to persuade a major supplier to supply a lubricant to meet the user's specification.

Major users, such as Government Departments or large transport undertakings, will often represent a big enough market for them to be able to insist that lubricant supplies meet their purchase specifications. Common examples are the defence departments of most countries, and national railways and utility companies.

In other cases major groups of users, or joint groups of suppliers and users, may produce a specification covering joint needs. Examples of such specifications are those of the ASTM and SAE.

The small user may be able to take advantage of such specifications in one of two ways. If the user's application is similar to one for which a major specification exists, then it may be possible to buy a lubricant certified as meeting that specification. Alternatively if a lubricant supplier advertises a branded product as meeting the specification, it can be purchased with confidence that it does so.

When a specification becomes so widely used that it comes to represent the normal level of quality or performance expected from a particular class of product, it may become a standard. Standards are generally established at a national or international level.

The older standards-making organizations are all national, the oldest of all being the British Standards Institution. There are now over 80 national standards organizations, of which the more important include the following:

- British Standards Institution (BSI), Britain;
- American National Standards Institute (ANSI), United States;
- Deutsche Institut fur Normalisation (DIN), Germany;
- Association Francaise de Normalisation (AFNOR), France;
- Gosudarstvyeny Standart (GOST), Russia.

The increases in international trade and communications in recent years have brought a need for standardization on an international basis. In the field of lubricant standards, the first important international organization was the Conseil Europeen de Normalisation (CEN), but the most important is now the International Standards Organization (ISO).

In the United Kingdom many of the petroleum test methods developed by the Institute of Petroleum have been adopted and published as standards by the British Standards Institution in the BS2000 series, retaining the IP method number as a subsidiary part number. For example IP50 *Cone Penetration of Lubricating Grease* is published by BSI as BS2000: Part 50.

Many ISO standard test methods are also based on original IP or ASTM test methods, and IP50 is also internationally standardized as ISO 2137.

Standards may be of many different types. Some are typical specifications, and BS4475 is a specification for straight mineral lubricating oils. Others

cover test methods such as those in the BS2000 series. Yet others are classifications, such as BS4231 *Classification for Viscosity Grades of Industrial Liquid Lubricants* or guides to recommended practice, such as BS2000: Part O: Addendum 2 *Significance and Usage of IP Precision Data.*

As far as lubricant tests are concerned, the most important standardizing bodies are still the Institute of Petroleum and the American Society for Testing and Materials. Eighty important methods are published jointly by both bodies, such as IP34/ASTM D-93 *Closed Flash Point – Pensky–Martens.* Sixty IP methods, including 35 IP/ASTM Joint Methods, are published as British Standards in the BS2000 series. Forty IP/ASTM Joint Methods are also published as ISO methods.

This broad standardization of test methods leads to a wide acceptance of specifications for lubricants, and thus to wide acceptability of performance standards. There are also considerable advantages to the use of standardized lubricants, since standardization over a wide geographical area is likely to ensure more ready availability.

Basically, the drawing up of a specification is simply a matter of deciding what composition limits and what tests are necessary to make sure that the product will be satisfactory in use. This will be illustrated later in Section 11.6.

11.5 Automotive engine oil specifications

A brief summary of the requirements, composition and properties of automotive engine oils has been given in Chapter 4. It is a curious fact that although such oils are very similar, their specification situation is complicated and confused. This is probably because the consumption of vehicle engine oils is greater than that of all other lubricants put together. They represent a major source of income for the suppliers, and considerable financial involvement for the users.

With the introduction of detergent oils certain engine manufacturers, notably General Motors and the Caterpillar Tractor Company, developed their own engine tests to assess diesel engine lubricants. A number of those tests were incorporated in the first US Army specification 2-104B in 1942. This was replaced by the military specification MIL-O-2104 in 1950, and subsequently MIL-L-2104A. The latter, in turn, went through several stages of amendment, and the latest version at the time of writing is MIL-L-2104F.

In 1951 the British Ministry of Supply introduced a specification DEF-2101 which was technically equivalent to MIL-O-2104. This was also amended from time to time, and the last version was DEF-2101D Am. 1. DEF-2101 has now been supplanted by a variety of DEF STAN and TS specifications, and the resulting complexity and unfamiliarity has probably been one cause of the virtual disappearance of these specifications for non-military use.

The original Caterpillar L1 engine test was progressively increased in severity, leading to Series 1, Series 2 and Series 3 oils. The last of these was matched by the US Army which introduced a specification MIL-L-45199A for Series 3 oils. Similarly the British DEF-2101B specification included a procedure for testing oils with higher sulphur fuel (i.e. comparable with Series 1 and 2 oils) and these oils were known as Supplement 1 oils.

All these terms, MIL-L-2104, MIL-L-45199 and DEF-2101, with all their later amendments, Series 3 and Supplement 1, may be found in oil descriptions, although strictly speaking the Government specifications only apply to oils they approve for their own use.

In parallel with these developments, the American Petroleum Institute (API) in 1952 introduced a classification system for diesel engine oils which was based on the severity of engine service. This led in 1969 to cooperation with ASTM and SAE to produce a system of classification which is now in widespread use for commercial oils. The oils are described as CA, CB, CC etc., the latest version being CG, and a supplementary number may be added, giving CG-4, for example. In theory all of these designations could still be used to describe oils for progressively more severe applications. In practice the categories CA, CB, CC, CD and CE are no longer officially approved ('active').

Roughly speaking, the later categories are suitable for more severe engine use, and CF, for example, would be suitable for all engines requiring oils from CA to CE. However, CF-2 is intended particularly for severe two-stroke diesel applications, CF-4 for four-stroke diesels and CF for indirect injected diesels.

The situation for spark-ignition ('Otto-cycle' or petrol) engine oils is less complicated, since the military specifications for such oils have never been widely used. A similar API classification exists, progressing from SA to SJ with generally increasing severity. Categories SA to SH are no longer entirely current; SH only being 'active' in combination with the diesel categories CF, CF-2, CF-4 and CG-4.

With the growing use of turbocharged, supercharged and petrol-injection engines, the oil requirements for gasoline engines came to be similar in some respects to those of diesel engines, and from about 1986 certain oils have been labelled, for example, CF–SH, indicating that they meet both the CF and SH performance requirements.

Many of the larger vehicle manufacturers issue their own engine oil specifications, including Volvo, Chrysler-Daimler, General Motors, Ford and Volkswagen. However, these are intended mainly to determine which oils are recommended for use in their various vehicles, and the oils themselves are usually quoted as meeting the API or MIL-L-2104 requirements. As a result the vehicle manufacturers' specifications are largely of interest to specialists, although their requirements can sometimes be critical for particular applications.

In an attempt to ensure that, in Europe at least, oils could be produced to satisfy the requirements of all the vehicle manufacturers, the Comité des Constructeurs d'Automobiles du Marché Commun (CCMC) also introduced a classification system, a recent specification level being D5. However, the CCMC has since become the Association des Constructeurs Européens d'Automobile (ACEA), which introduced the following sequences: TGO, TG1 and TG2 for petrol engines; TPD1 and TPD2 for diesel-engined cars and TD1, TD2, TD3 and TD4 for heavy-duty diesel engine lubricants. These in turn have now been replaced with the categories shown in Table 11.13.

This situation is extremely confusing, and is likely to be understood only by specialists. There has therefore been some progress in recent years towards international standardization of automotive engine oil classifications.

A major development was the formation of the International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee (ILSAC) between the American Alliance of Automobile Manufacturers Inc. (AAM) and the Japan Automobile Manufacturers Association Inc. (JAMA). ILSAC has issued a specification GF-2 for an oil for gasoline engines, and work is currently under way on issue GF-4.

Further progress was the introduction in April 2001 of the first 'global'

Table 11.13 ACEA oil categories

A1	Oil for gasoline engines designed to use low-friction, low-viscosity oils with high-shear-rate viscosity between 2.9 and 3.5 mPa s
A2	General purpose oil for most gasoline engines
A3	Oil for high-performance gasoline engines or for extended drain intervals
B1	Oil for car and light van diesel engines using low-friction, low-viscosity oils with high-shear-rate viscosity between 2.9 and 3.5 mPa s
B2	General purpose oil for most light diesel engines, but may not be suitable for some high-performance engines
B3	Stay-in-grade oil for high-performance engines or extended drain intervals
B4	Primarily for use where special quality oils are required
E2	Oil for heavy-duty diesels with normal drain intervals
E3	Oil for heavy-duty diesels meeting Euro 1 and Euro 2 emission requirements and with extended drain intervals.
E4	Stay-in-grade oil for highly rated diesels meeting Euro 1, Euro 2 and Euro 3 emission requirements and with significantly extended drain intervals
E5	Stable stay-in-grade oil for highly rated diesels meeting Euro 1, Euro 2 and Euro 3 emission requirements and with significantly extended drain intervals

automotive oil specification by ACEA, AAM, JAMA and the American Engine Manufacturers Association (EMA). This was specification DHD-1 for heavy-duty diesels, and was followed in early 2003 by specifications DLD-1, DLD-2 and DLD-3, roughly equivalent to ACEA B2, B1 and B3 respectively, but with the inclusion of a Mitsubishi engine wear test.

A recent development is the introduction in lubricant specifications of requirements controlling environmental effects. These are reflected in the Euro 1, 2 and 3 requirements mentioned in Table 11.13 and can include restrictions such as to reduce heavy metal contents, chlorine, sulphur and phosphorus, improve fuel economy, reduce oil consumption and reduce noxious emissions like particulates.

Apart from all these various performance specifications, engine oils are also classified in accordance with the SAE viscosity grades listed in the Appendix to Chapter 3.

11.6 Drawing up a specification

It sometimes happens that a lubricant specification is written to cover the requirements of a new application, before either the equipment or the relevant lubricants exist. In that situation it also sometimes happens that no lubricant is available which meets all the requirements of the specification. It may then be necessary to compromise on the specification requirements or even to modify the design or operation of the equipment to enable available lubricants to be used satisfactorily.

As a rule, however, a specification is written to define the requirements of lubricants which are already known to exist and to be suitable for the application.

There are basically three ways of specifying a lubricant. The first is to define the exact range of composition, or formulation, which is acceptable. This is commonly done by the lubricant manufacturer, who writes a production specification for each product. A composition specification can rarely be used by the buyer of a lubricant, because the formulation will be kept confidential by the manufacturer. There are exceptions, where the composition is simple, such as in the British anti-seize specification DEF STAN 80-80 which contains equal parts of a well-defined graphite powder and of a soft petrolatum. However, because of the importance of small variations in base oil composition, even the lubricant manufacturer will not normally rely purely on a composition specification, but will also specify quality control tests.

The second way to specify a lubricant is to require certain minimum results in functional tests, such as four-ball tests, gear tests, corrosion tests and so on. Such tests are usually expensive to perform, and may be uneconomical for use with every batch of lubricant which is manufactured or bought. They may be used to check performance when a lubricant is first made, or when

it is first submitted for an application, and may also be used for occasional random checks on subsequent batches.

The third way to specify a product is to place limits on a number of simple physical or chemical tests. These will be relatively cheap to carry out, so that they can economically be used for every production batch. They will not give any direct indication that the lubricant will perform satisfactorily, but they can ensure that a batch is similar to previous batches which are known to have performed satisfactorily.

A major specification for an important lubricant will often contain composition requirements, performance test requirements and simple batch control tests. An example of such a specification is the British Defence Standard 91-30 for a graphite-containing lubricating oil.

The first thing to consider is the range of products which will be acceptable in the applications which are to be covered. If the lubricant is an oil, how tightly must the viscosity be limited? If it is a grease, what NLGI grade or what range of penetration is acceptable?

Once this is decided, there will probably be a clear indication of the properties of the lubricants which are suitable, and the specification can be designed around those lubricants.

11.6.1 *Composition*

If all the base oils which are known to be suitable are mineral oils, and the user does not wish to become involved in the complications of assessing other types of base oil, then the base oil can be defined immediately as 'mineral oil' and this can perhaps be included in the title. Similarly if the choice is restricted to any other single type of base oil, that can be specified.

The best test to use to ensure that the right base oil is present will probably be the infra-red spectrum. On the other hand, it may not be considered desirable to restrict the type of base oil, in which case this composition aspect will not be stated.

Other composition factors can be defined as far as this is possible without unnecessarily limiting the choice of lubricant. For example a grease may be defined as 'mineral oil thickened with lithium soap and containing anti-oxidants'.

It is not usual to specify the type or amount of additives, as these will have to be varied to compensate for variations in the base oil, but the amount of graphite or molybdenum disulphide may be defined as 3.0 ± 0.5 percent, or 3–5 percent, or 45–55 percent, depending on the type of lubricant.

11.6.2 *Physical properties*

The acceptable viscosity range of an oil will usually be specified at a recognized reference temperature such as 40 or 50 °C. If the oil must be

usable over a wide temperature range then either a minimum viscosity index will be required, or an additional viscosity limit will be defined at 0 or 100 °C. If the low temperature limit is critical, the pour point may be specified, for example as 'below –25 °C', or a viscosity limit at low temperatures in the Brookfield Viscometer or Cold-Cranking Simulator may be imposed.

For a grease, the penetration range or NLGI grade number will usually be stated. For the upper temperature limit the dropping point is the best criterion. Remember, however, that some high-temperature greases will not show a dropping point but will still be unusable above a certain temperature. If low-temperature starting is important with a grease, a low-temperature torque test can be specified, but the results of such tests are not precise.

Other physical properties will often be specified, such as specific gravity or relative density, colour or even refractive index. These properties will probably not be important in themselves, but will be defined, and tested, to rule out the possibility of some completely different type of lubricant being introduced. Thus a change from one mineral oil to another, or to a synthetic oil, can often be detected by a change in physical properties.

Similarly, some of the simpler chemical tests, such as total acid number, total base number or tests for a particular constituent such as calcium or zinc, might be used to ensure uniformity of supplies or 'batch-to-batch uniformity'.

11.6.3 *Functional tests*

For a critical application it is quite reasonable to require that 'any lubricant submitted as a candidate for this specification may be required to demonstrate satisfactory performance in the appropriate equipment in service.' In practice this service testing will probably only be required when a completely new type of oil is submitted. Such a test would constitute a 'type approval test.'

Other functional tests which are laborious or expensive would also be used only as type approval tests, including standardized engine tests. Some of the simpler and less expensive functional tests, such as four-ball extreme pressure, copper corrosion, dynamic anti-rust or oxidation stability will also be used mainly as type approval tests, although they may occasionally be required on every batch where some special problem justifies it. A few functional tests, such as flash point and oil separation of grease may be carried out on every batch.

11.7 Precision of tests

Very few tests can be relied on to give exactly the same result every time. If a skilled analyst or technician repeats a test with the same sample and the same test equipment, there will still be some variation between the results. The term 'repeatability' is used to describe the precision of the test under these conditions, and is defined as:

Table 11.14 Some examples of test precision

Test method	*Repeatability*	*Reproducibility*
IP59 Method D	0.000 016 g/ml	0.000 016 g/ml
ASTM D-4049	6%	18%
IP50/ASTM D-217 (Worked)	7 units	20 units
ASTM D-3704	23%	39%

'that difference between two such single results as would be exceeded in the long run in only one case in twenty in the normal and correct operation of the test method.'

Where results are compared between different test operators in different laboratories, there will be a bigger variation between results. The term 'reproducibility' is used to describe the precision under these circumstances, and is defined as:

'that difference between two such single and independent results as would be exceeded in the long run in only one case in twenty in the normal and correct operation of the test method.'

Most IP and ASTM tests quote repeatability and reproducibility figures which have been obtained by statistical analysis of lengthy correlation programmes. The repeatability and reproducibility can vary enormously from one test to another; Table 11.14 shows some simple examples.

Repeatability figures can be useful in that they enable an operator to check the precision of his own results against the published standard.

Reproducibility can lead to problems when a test method is not very precise. A lubricant supplier and a user may obtain results for a test such that the supplier's results show that the lubricant meets a specification while the user's results show that it fails. In most cases repeat tests will resolve the difference. However, for cases where a dispute cannot easily be settled, a recommended procedure can be found in British Standard BS EN ISO 4259 *Recommendations for the Application of Precision Data to Specifications for Petroleum Products*.

Chapter 12

Lubricant Monitoring

12.1 The objects of lubricant monitoring

Lubricating oils and hydraulic fluids are unique parts of a machine or system. They are themselves vital components, whose condition is at least as important as that of other components. They are, however, unique because they can be sampled and inspected in great detail without damage to the machine and often without even interrupting its use. In operation the oil contacts other machine components, including many of those which are most critical, and the changes in the oil can directly indicate the state of the bearings, gears, valves and so on – the so-called 'oil-swept surfaces'. Doing the right tests on the oil can therefore reveal a great deal about the condition of the plant, whether it is an engine, a gearbox, a rolling mill or any other lubricated system.

It follows that monitoring of a lubricant can be valuable for two distinct reasons. The first is to provide information about the condition of the lubricant itself. The second is to obtain information about the condition of all the components which come into contact with the lubricant.

Systematic testing of lubricant samples from a piece of equipment is called lubricant monitoring, and if it is used to keep track of the condition of the equipment it is a form of plant condition monitoring or 'plant health monitoring'.

Some of the simplest methods of checking oil condition have probably been used for almost a hundred years, but originally in a rather haphazard way. The systematic use of lubricant monitoring has largely developed since 1950, and it now involves some expensive techniques and complex organization. Such techniques and organization can only be justified where the lubricated equipment itself is large or expensive, or where safety problems are involved, but simple tests can be usefully applied even to very small systems.

The removal of oil samples for analysis suffers from some disadvantages such as the problem of finding a suitable sampling point, the labour involved in taking samples, delays in transporting samples to the place of analysis and sending the results back, and the obvious problem of obtaining representative samples.

As a result there has been a considerable demand for on-line lubricant monitoring techniques, and a wide variety are now available. In general such on-line techniques are less informative than off-line techniques, but they have the major advantage of instant response.

The choice between on-line and off-line systems is not always simple. As in all things, safety and cost are major considerations. It may be sensible to install an expensive device giving limited information in a large passenger aircraft, but it is unlikely to be justified in a light aircraft or a road vehicle.

Similarly it may be appropriate to use even very sophisticated on-line equipment in monitoring a large power station, where only one critical lubricating system must be monitored. For a chemical plant or steel works, where a large number of separate and different systems must be monitored, it may be more cost-effective to bring samples to a central test facility.

There are two broad categories of test technique which are applied to samples removed from lubricating systems. The quality of the lubricant itself is monitored by a variety of chemical, physical and sometimes even mechanical tests. Alternatively, the condition of the lubricated components can be monitored by studying the nature and quantity of the wear debris carried in the lubricant.

12.2 Monitoring the quality of the lubricant

By taking a sample of the oil from a system from time to time and examining it, a great deal can be learned about the condition of the oil. This information can then be used as a basis for a number of decisions as follows:

(a) If the condition is very bad, this may indicate that the oil should be drained and replaced immediately.
(b) If there are signs of breakdown, and the additives are becoming depleted, it may be possible to plan a shut-down for an oil change at some convenient time in the near future.
(c) If the oil and additives are not degraded, but there is solid contamination or water present, it may be desirable to drain it, clean it up ('launder' it) and return it to the system.
(d) If the oil is virtually as good as new, it may be possible to plan confidently to leave it unchanged for a very long time.

In other words, testing a sample of the oil may make it possible to use oil more economically, and to plan maintenance more efficiently. As oil prices increase, this may become more and more important.

The processes by which a lubricant deteriorates have been described in Chapters 3 and 6, but the most important are oxidation of the base oil and additives, depletion of additives and contamination. Many of the laboratory tests described in Chapter 11 can be used to monitor these processes. The choice of a suitable test or tests depends on the way in which the lubricant is likely to deteriorate.

12.2.1 *Overheating and oxidation*

If a lubricant is overheated, the best indication is given by the presence of oxidation products. Many oxidation products of oils or additives, such as organic aldehydes or acids, contain a 'carbonyl' group, in which a carbon atom is linked by a double bond to an oxygen atom. This group produces a characteristic absorption band in the infra-red spectrum, as shown in Fig. 12.1, so that infra-red spectroscopy is a useful and inexpensive way to check for oxidation. However, it cannot be used in ester-based lubricants or any other lubricants which contain a carbonyl group in their normal unused condition.

A more quantitative test for oxidation is to analyse for organic acids by the acid number test in IP139, IP177 or IP431. At the same time the base number test in IP139, IP276, IP400 or IP417 can be used to show the amount of certain additives remaining (see Fig. 12.2).

More extensive oxidation can give tarry or solid oxidation products. These are normally insoluble in pentane and other light hydrocarbons, so that a test for 'pentane insolubles' can be used to check for severe oxidation. However, many other solid contaminants are also insoluble in pentane, and the results must be interpreted with caution.

If anti-oxidants are still present, and severe oxidation has not begun, it may be useful to assess the amount of anti-oxidant still present. This can be done by means of some of the oxidation tests mentioned in Section 11.3.1.

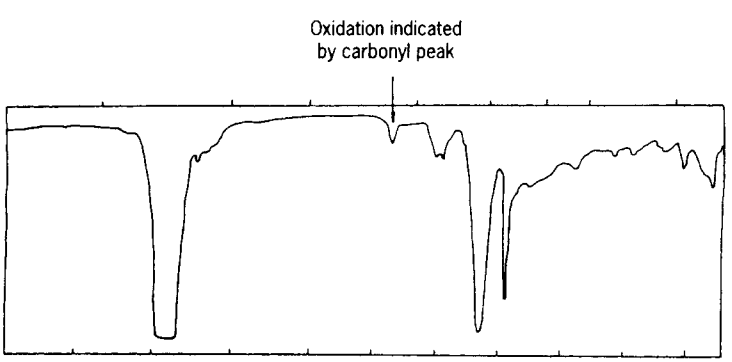


Fig. 12.1 Infra-red spectrum showing oxidation

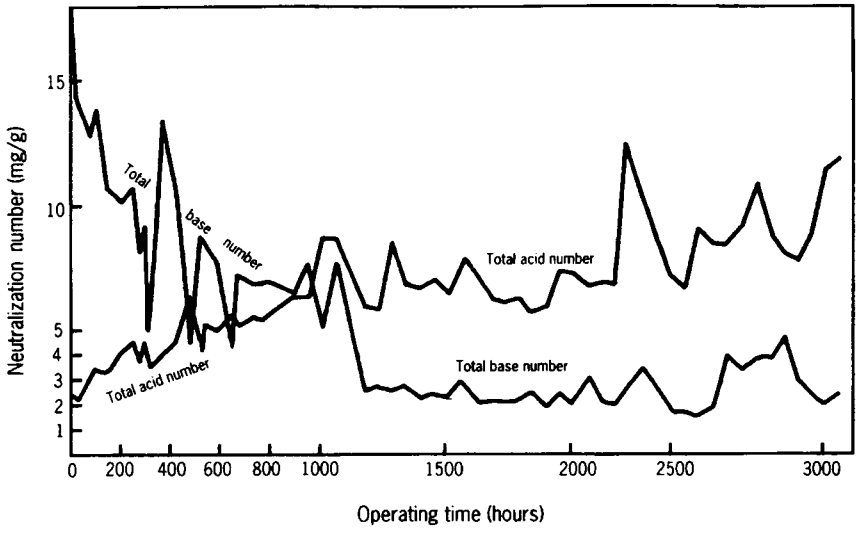


Fig. 12.2 Neutralization number change in a diesel engine

There is also an interesting technique called RULER (Remaining Useful Life Evaluation Routine) developed by Castrol which directly estimates the remaining anti-oxidant life by a voltammetric method.

Oxidation will take place to some degree in any oil system. Tests such as these must therefore be assessed in relation to the time that the oil has been in use. If oxidation takes place unusually quickly it probably shows that some part of the system is too hot.

12.2.2 *Depletion of additives*

Many additives contain elements which are not found in the common base oils. For example, anti-oxidants often contain nitrogen or phosphorus, while anti-wear and extreme-pressure additives contain sulphur, phosphorus or, less commonly, chlorine. One very widely used class of additives is that of the metal dialkyl dithiophosphates, which contain sulphur, phosphorus and a metal such as zinc, magnesium or vanadium.

It can therefore be straightforward to monitor the depletion of such additives by analysing for the relevant elements. It must be borne in mind, however, that any of their breakdown products still present may also contain the same elements.

Institute of Petroleum and ASTM Standard Methods include tests for many elements, such as chlorine, nitrogen, phosphorus, sodium, sulphur, zinc and other metals. These are based on colorimetric, gravimetric, polarimetric, potentiometric and other techniques. All are accurate but more or less laborious and therefore expensive.

Some additives containing metal elements, phosphorus or silicon can be monitored accurately and cheaply by spectrometric oil analysis. This technique is mainly used for the monitoring of wear metals, and is therefore described in detail later.

It is also possible to test for depletion of additives by functional tests, such as those described in Table 11.2. This could theoretically be done for loss of anti-wear or extreme-pressure additives, using a test such as the four-ball test, or for a corrosion inhibitor by a static corrosion test; in practice, however, such a test would only be justified for a large volume of lubricant. A more practical example would be to use the foaming characteristics test IP146 to test for depletion of an anti-foaming agent. Depletion of a viscosity index improver can of course be assessed by the kinematic viscosity test IP71.

12.2.3 *Contamination*

A lubricant may become contaminated by almost anything, but the most important classes of contaminant are fuel (diesel fuel or gasoline), process fluids, solids or water.

12.2.3.1 *Contamination with fuel*

Fuel contamination can be caused by condensation of fuel in the cylinders of an engine at low temperature, or by an over-rich combustion mixture due to badly adjusted carburettors or injectors, or simply by leakage, especially from injectors.

There are some tests which are designed specifically to measure dilution of lubricating oil by gasoline, such as ASTM D-322 and IP23. Contamination by gasoline or diesel fuel can be checked by a fractional distillation test such as IP123/ASTM D-86 *Distillation of Petroleum Products*, or by gas chromatography. All of these methods are relatively laborious and expensive and are therefore not suitable for monitoring purposes, but they can be useful in failure investigations.

The most obvious effect of contamination of the lubricant by fuel is usually a reduction in viscosity; this can be monitored accurately and economically by a viscosity test such as IP71. Figure 12.3 is a typical record of change in viscosity for a diesel engine oil and, shows the effect of a fuel leak from an injector. For processing large numbers of samples, more recent automatic and semi-automatic methods are available with adequate accuracy and lower operating cost.

Flash point can also be used to check on fuel contamination, since even a small amount of fuel will produce a marked reduction in a closed flash point such as IP34. For more rapid testing of large numbers of samples an automatic flash point tester or a rapid equilibrium method such as IP303 can be used.

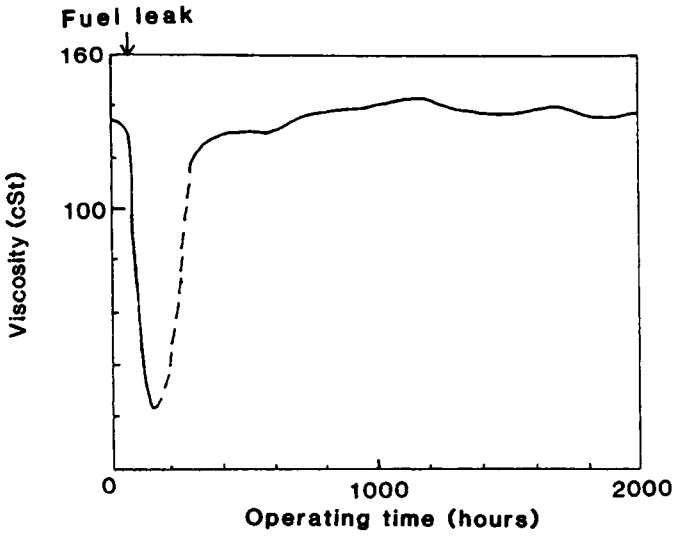


Fig. 12.3 Viscosity monitoring showing effect of a fuel leak

12.2.3.2 *Contamination with solvents or process fluids*

Like fuels, most solvents or process fluids will reduce the viscosity of a lubricating oil and can be tested for by a viscosity measurement. Similarly, a flash point procedure may indicate the presence of contaminants, provided that the contaminant has a flash point which is very different from that of the lubricant. Some contaminants such as chlorinated solvents or fluorinated refrigerants can completely suppress a flash, while as mentioned above most fuels will have a flash point much lower than a lubricant.

12.2.3.3 *Contamination with solids*

The pentane insolubles test mentioned earlier is a useful test for most solid contaminants, because pentane is a good solvent for mineral oils and several synthetic oils but a poor solvent for most solids. Figure 12.4 shows the increase in pentane insolubles in a diesel engine in which poor injector timing was causing a great deal of sooty combustion products to be formed. This type of contamination can increase the viscosity of the oil, and Fig. 12.5 shows the viscosity trace taken for the same engine.

An alternative method is to measure the benzene insolubles or toluene insolubles. Benzene and toluene are better solvents than pentane, and will dissolve most tarry oxidation products. The insolubles in these cases will therefore include a different range of substances from those insoluble in pentane. However, benzene is toxic and consequently its use in laboratories is discouraged, and is subject to careful handling procedures.

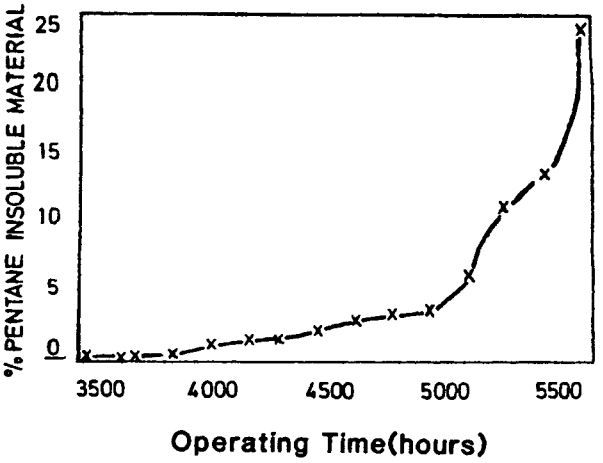


Fig. 12.4 Increase in pentane insoluble materials in a faulty diesel engine

12.2.3.4 *Water contamination*

Lubricants can be contaminated with water from condensation, burned fuel or leaks. One crude but effective test is to heat a sample of the lubricant to above 110 °C. If much water is present the lubricant will make a bubbling or crackling noise like a deep fish fryer, and the test is commonly known as the 'crackle' test. (*Caution*: this test must be carried out carefully, not in a narrow or confined vessel, and with a gauze cover; the heat should not be

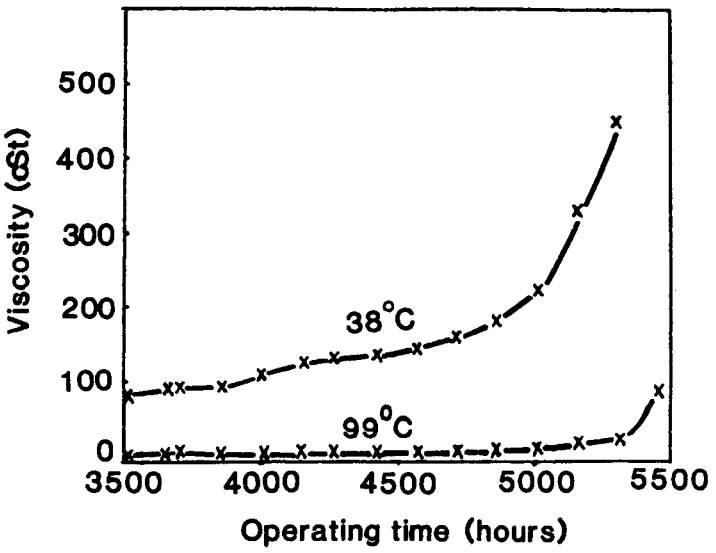


Fig. 12.5 Viscosity increase due to sooty contaminants

applied quickly. Water vaporizing rapidly can cause hot oil to escape from the vessel.)

A more precise test for water is called the Dean and Stark method (IP74/ASTM D-95), while for accurate measurement of very small amounts of water the Karl Fischer method is used.

In the special case of water containing a glycol anti-freeze, leaking into engine oil because of a damaged gasket or cracked block, the ASTM D-2982 test can be used to show the presence of the glycol.

12.3 Wear monitoring

The first systematic attempts to monitor wear followed the introduction of magnetic drain plugs in oil systems. Magnetic plugs were introduced to remove ferromagnetic wear debris from oil systems and thus prevent further damage. Originally they replaced the ordinary drain plugs and could only be examined at the time of an oil change. It then became obvious from the debris present whether serious wear was taking place in the system. From this the idea of adding a magnetic plug solely for wear monitoring was derived.

Further developments in magnetic plugs and filter systems, sometimes in combination, followed the simple plug, and these are described later.

The great development of lubricant monitoring since 1950 has been concerned with wear debris monitoring to check on the condition of the lubricated equipment. The initial expansion was associated mainly with one technique, known as spectrographic or spectrometric oil analysis. This is probably still the most widely used technique. Spectrographic oil analysis will therefore be described in the next section, followed by some of the other important monitoring techniques.

12.3.1 *Spectrographic oil analysis*

In spectrographic (or spectrometric) oil analysis (SOA) it is the metallic wear debris which is analysed, and not the oil itself.

The technique was first investigated by some of the American railways in 1954. After some years of development it was found to give a very useful early indication of failures of diesel engines in railway locomotives. This enabled the locomotives to be withdrawn from service for overhaul in time to avoid many breakdowns in service.

In this way the cost of repairs was very much reduced, and perhaps even more important, disruptions to rail services were also reduced. By 1965 the technique was being regularly used by British Rail.

In 1955 the United States started to examine the use of SOA for aircraft engines. It seems probable that it was the United States Navy which coined the expression SOAP, meaning 'spectrometric oil analysis programme', and

this name is now in common use. Within a few years, while SOAP was still only being used on an experimental basis, it was considered by the United States Air Force (USAF) that several catastrophic in-flight engine failures had been avoided by its use. At the same time, the overhaul life of jet and propjet engines was rapidly being extended. By 1968 the USAF had taken the remarkable decision to discontinue scheduled overhaul for some of its jet engines, and change to a system of on-condition overhaul. The engine condition was monitored mainly by SOAP, and the decision to base engine changes on SOAP meant that the necessary analytical equipment became a normal part of the equipment of large USAF bases.

By 1970 SOAP was being used regularly by most large air forces for aircraft engine condition monitoring, and by 1980 most airlines had followed suit. Other systems monitored included naval vessels and certain helicopter gearboxes. Due to a particular problem in the gearbox of one type of helicopter, those helicopters were not allowed to fly for more than 10 hours after the latest satisfactory SOAP analysis.

Other industries began using SOAP in the late 1960s, but adoption in industry has been slow and is still not widespread.

The two main instruments used to measure the concentrations of metallic elements in SOAP are the emission spectrograph and the atomic absorption spectrometer. Both depend on the fact that when atoms of an element are excited, such as by heating, their different energy states are separated by steps which produce particular frequencies or wavelengths in the spectrum and are therefore characteristic of the element.

In the emission spectrograph a sample of the oil is ignited by an electric arc from a carbon electrode. The light emitted contains frequencies which are characteristic of the metals present, and the intensity is proportional to the concentration of each element.

In atomic absorption a sample of the oil is burnt in an acetylene flame. A concentrated beam of light is passed through the flame, and some of the light is absorbed at frequencies characteristic of the metal elements present. The amount of absorption at the characteristic frequency depends on the concentration of the element in the oil sample.

Thus in both cases a spectrum is obtained which indicates which metallic elements are present and in what concentrations. The results are provided as a table of metal concentrations in parts per million of oil; some typical sets of results are shown in Table 12.1.

A more modern emission technique uses a rotating disc electrode (rotrode), but the preferred method now is probably an inductively coupled plasma (ICP) spectrometer, in which the sample is 'nebulized' or finely divided in a gas stream, and injected into a hot atomic argon plasma.

Modern instruments of either the rotrode or ICP types are typically microprocessor-controlled and computer-linked to give rapid sample handling and analysis, with on-line curve plotting and report printing. Some

Table 12.1 Typical spectrometric oil analysis results

EQUIPMENT INTEGRITY ANALYSIS

Swansea Laboratory Services,Department of Mechanical Engineering,University College of Swansea,Singleton,Swansea,SA2 8PP tel(0792) 295219

File Name : paper.004.01 Date : 22 Oct 90
Customer : An Integrated Steel Works.
Operation :
Unit No : Component : Gas Turbine
Manufacturer : Model :
Lubricant :

Sample Date		19 feb 89	19 mar 89	10 apr 89	2 may 89	19 may 89
Sample No		cl/-/7	cl/-/7	cl/-/7	cl/-/7	cl/-/7
Lubricant Hours/mileage		n/p	n/p	n/p	n/p	n/p
Equipment Hours/mileage		4433	4895	5255	5600	n/p
Makeup Lubricant		n/p	n/p	n/p	n/p	n/p
Wear Elements	Iron	0	2	2	2	4
	Chromium	0	0	0	0	0
	Aluminium	0	2	0	0	2
	Copper	4	5	11	15*	15*
	Lead	10	24*	59**	82***	114***
	Tin	0	2	2	0	1
	Nickel	0	1	0	0	0
	Manganese	0	0	0	0	0
	Titanium	0	0	0	0	0
	Silver	0	0	0	0	0
	Molybdenum	0	1	0	0	0
Additive Elements	Zinc	99	48	42	33	55
	Phosphorus	72	72	79	66	72
	Calcium	7	7	1	1	2
	Barium	23	3	1	1	1
	Magnesium	0	8	5	4	6
Contaminant Elements	Silicon	0	2	0	0	3
	Sodium	0	4	6	5	12
	Boron	0	0	0	0	1
	Vanadium	0	1	0	0	1
Physical Tests	Fuel	-	-	-	-	-
	Water	Neg.	Neg.	Neg.	Neg.	Neg.
	Dispersancy	-	-	-	-	-
	TBN/TAN	0.19	0.24	0.13	0.12	0.11
Ferrography	Di	2	24	21	8	8
	Ds	1	16	18	4	5
Wear Index	Is	3.0E0	3.2E2	1.2E2	4.8E1	3.9E1
Viscosity (cst at 40°C)		45	42	44	44	43
Result (Internal Ref No)		D1	D1	D19	D19	D19

Sample Date - 19 may 89

Conditions
Critical - This Unit should receive immediate attention

Discrepancy:
Abnormal wear trends suspected.

Recommendation:
Inspect for main journal bearing wear as soon as possible.
Monitor at reduced interval to maintain close surveillance.

* - Reportable , ** Unacceptable , *** - Urgent

Copyright - Spectron - Swansea Laboratory Services

commercial laboratories provide direct data transmission to their clients, thus eliminating delays in providing monitoring results. Detection limits for the various elements have also improved considerably. Table 12.2 lists some quoted detection limits for both types of instrument, although different analysts differ radically in their estimates of detection limits.

One problem with SOA is that large particles of wear debris will not remain uniformly dispersed in the oil. It can then happen that one sample

Table 12.2 Comparison of rotrode and ICP detection limits

Element	*Rotrode detection Limit (p.p.m.)*	*ICP detection limit, undiluted sample (p.p.m.)*
1. Iron	0.50	0.004
2. Silver	0.02	0.004
3. Aluminium	0.43	0.028
4. Chromium	0.72	0.007
5. Copper	0.09	0.003
6. Magnesium	0.01	0.0002
7. Sodium	0.14	0.015
8. Nickel	0.92	0.011
9. Lead	1.05	0.052
10. Silicon	0.38	0.018
11. Tin	1.80	0.055
12. Titanium	0.25	0.002
13. Molybdenum	0.79	0.005
14. Vanadium	0.62	0.003
15. Boron	0.09	0.0005
16. Barium	0.07	0.0005
17. Calcium	0.05	0.0002
18. Zinc	0.57	0.004

will contain a few large particles, while the next sample from the same oil will contain none. The overall concentrations are usually small and therefore the presence or absence of a few large particles can make a major difference to the result, falsely suggesting a major change in the wear situation.

To overcome this problem, it is common practice to filter or centrifuge the oil sample to remove the largest particles. This leaves the fine particles of metal or metal oxide, and the dissolved 'organometallics', reaction products between metals and oil constituents. The results are then much more consistent, and the conclusions drawn are found to be more reliable although the individual concentrations are less accurate. It is also normal to compare the used oil with a sample of the same oil unused.

SOAP therefore gives figures which indicate the changes which have taken place in the metal concentrations, but does not give accurate absolute figures.

An individual SOAP analysis is of little value. The value of SOAP lies in continuous monitoring, which allows the operator to recognize changes in the condition of the system. With experience one can tell the importance of the changes, and decide when the equipment should be taken out of service. Figure 12.6 shows a graph of the change in concentration of some metallic elements over a long period in a diesel generator set.

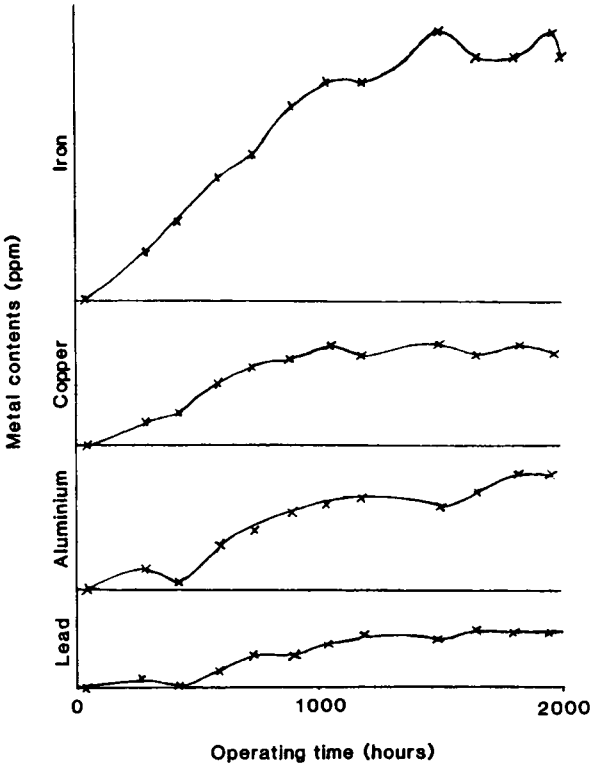


Fig. 12.6 SOAP monitoring of diesel lubricant

SOAP will not distinguish the sources of an element, and metallic additives such as zinc compounds will show up in the same way as wear debris.

The advantages of SOAP are that it is cheap, needs only a small oil sample, and can indicate to some extent the part of the system where something is going wrong. The disadvantages are that it cannot distinguish between different types of damage (e.g. mild wear or corrosion) and may completely miss certain types, such as piston scuffing or rolling contact fatigue which produce mainly large particles.

Overall SOAP has been assessed by various users as between 90 and 98 percent reliable, depending on the type of equipment and the experience of the operators.

12.3.2 *Magnetic plug techniques*

The original magnetic plug consisted simply of a solid steel plug with a magnetized head, designed to screw into the sump of an oil system to replace the standard drain plug.

The plug was inserted into the sump, and could therefore only be examined

when removed in order to drain the system in the course of an oil change. It soon became obvious that the collection of wear particles on the plug gave a useful indication of the severity of wear taking place in the system, and hence that it would be useful to be able to examine the magnetic plug without needing to drain the system.

The next development was therefore to install the magnetic plug at some point in the system other than the sump. It was still necessary for the tip of the plug to be immersed in the oil, and so it was still not possible to remove the plug without loss of oil. A further development was the design of a self-sealing fitting which allowed the plug to be removed without losing oil; this type of plug is now in widespread use.

Magnets have also been used in conjunction with filters to improve the overall catching efficiency, but this complication seems not to have been widely used.

The first really successful on-line system for monitoring wear debris was produced by adding a pair of electrodes to a magnetic plug. Deposition of metallic particles on the magnetic plug eventually bridges the electrodes and activates an alarm. This device is known as a chip detector, and is in very wide use.

One problem with the basic chip detector is that the electrodes can be bridged by a few large metal flakes or by a large number of very small particles. The production of large flakes is always potentially dangerous, but the formation of very small particles is only dangerous if the rate of formation is very high. To resolve the ambiguity of the chip detector, a small electric heater is added. When the electrodes are bridged and a warning is recognized by the operator, he can switch on the heater, which is powerful enough to burn off the fine debris, or 'fuzz'.

This 'burn-off chip detector' is therefore able to give the operator information about three different possible situations. If the warning is not cancelled by use of the 'fuzz burner' then the debris consists of large chips or flakes, and is potentially dangerous. If the warning is cancelled by the 'fuzz burner' but is rapidly re-activated, then the debris is fine but is being generated rapidly, and this again is potentially serious. Finally, if the warning is cancelled by the burner and does not recur rapidly, then the debris is fine and the rate of production is slow, so that there is not likely to be any immediate cause for concern. This is probably the most widely used on-line wear monitoring system at present.

A modification of the standard burn-off chip detector is the Zapper (registered trademark of Tedeco), in which a burn-off pulse is automatically emitted when the electrodes are bridged. This pulse is sufficient to break the electrical continuity if fine debris is present, but leaves the bulk of the debris in position for later examination. By breaking the electrical continuity the Zapper prevents nuisance warnings caused by harmless fine debris. Such 'nuisance' warnings are no more than an irritation to operators of industrial plant, but may cause dangerous distraction to an aircraft pilot.

If the Zapper technique is arranged to prevent any warning indication to the operator from fine debris, then it may mask the very rapid generation of fine debris which can sometimes occur and which is itself potentially harmful. It may therefore be better to arrange that the Zapper allows a brief transient warning. A single indication could then be ignored, but repeated activation, such as with continual flashing of a light, would be a matter for concern and investigation.

The most sophisticated developments of the magnetic plug are the Tedeco quantitative debris monitoring (QDM) system (QDM is a registered trademark of Tedeco.) and oil debris detection system.

12.3.3 *Ferrography*

The Ferrograph (registered trademark of the Foxboro Corporation) is a laboratory-based instrument which in its commonest form provides two distinct wear-monitoring techniques, i.e. the Analytical Ferrograph and the Direct-Read Ferrograph. Both depend on the use of a strong magnetic field to deposit wear debris from a sample of used lubricating oil. Figure 12.7 shows the standard Duplex Ferrograph, comprising both techniques.

In the Analytical Ferrograph an oil sample is pumped by means of a peristaltic pump to flow onto a substrate mounted on top of a powerful

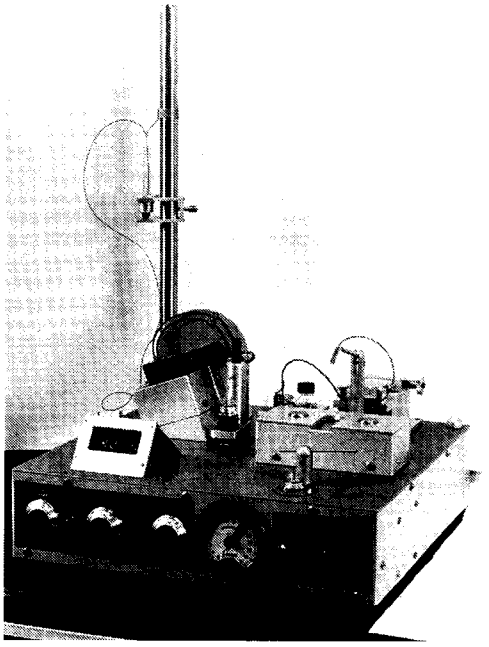


Fig. 12.7 Duplex ferrograph

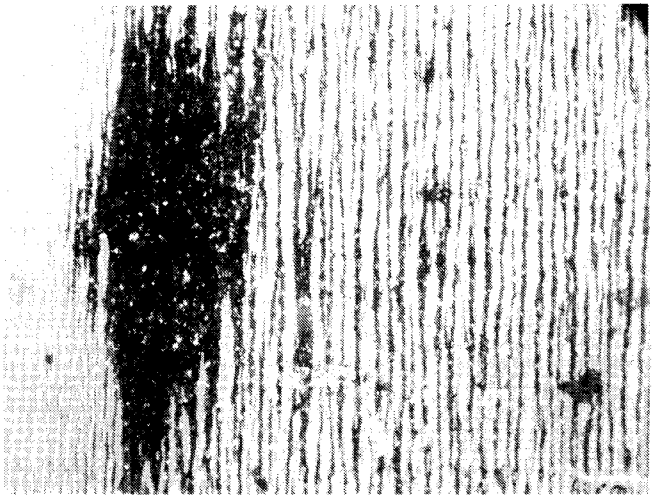


Fig. 12.8 Typical ferrogram

permanent magnet. The substrate is a standard microscope slide on which a barrier film has been deposited to constrain the oil to flow axially along the substrate. The majority of the ferromagnetic debris present, and some other magnetically susceptible debris, is influenced by the magnetic field, which causes it to be deposited on the substrate.

The substrate is then washed to remove all the oil. The debris remains on the surface, where it is held quite strongly. The deposit on the substrate, known as a ferrogram, is in a very convenient form for microscopic examination, either by optical or electron microscopy.

Ferrography was the first simple, convenient technique which enabled wear debris to be examined to establish the type of wear taking place and the severity of specific wear mechanisms.

In theory the more strongly susceptible ferromagnetic particles are deposited first, thus giving a separation of different particle types along the axis of the substrate. In practice this separation is not very efficient; a typical ferrogram is shown in Fig. 12.8.

In the Direct-Read Ferrograph a similar procedure is used to produce a deposit of wear particles in a glass tube. Optical density measurements are then made at two points on the tube representing larger and smaller particles. The two values thus obtained can be plotted independently for trend monitoring purposes, or can be used to calculate a parameter called the 'severity of wear index' which can be used in the same way.

12.3.4 *The rotary particle depositor (RPD)*

The Analytical Ferrograph is a convenient technique for separating wear

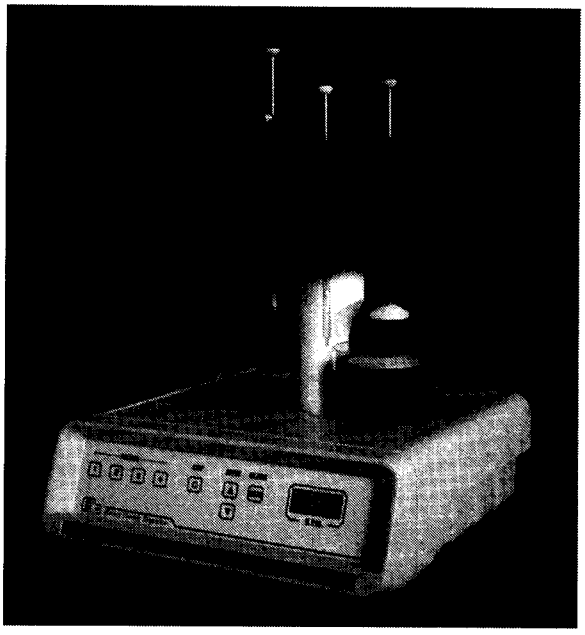


Fig. 12.9 Rotary particle depositor

debris from an oil sample for analysis, but with experience it was found to have some deficiencies.

The RPD was designed to overcome the problem of particle overcrowding at the entry point. The substrate, which is a microscope cover-slip, is mounted on a rotating magnet assembly consisting of an inner solid cylindrical magnet and an outer hollow cylindrical magnet with reversed polarity. The oil sample is made to flow onto the substrate at the centre of rotation, so that it flows radially outwards over the whole surface of the substrate. The positions of highest magnetic gradient are at the circumference of the inner magnet and the inner and outer circumferences of the outer magnet.

The debris is therefore deposited in three concentric rings at those locations. By appropriate selection of the speed of rotation and of the field strengths, the particles are made to segregate themselves in the three rings in accordance with their magnetic susceptibilities. The largest and most highly ferromagnetic particles deposit in the innermost ring, while the other rings contain particles of progressively decreasing susceptibility. At the edges of the magnets the gradients are very high, so that particles of very low magnetic susceptibility are deposited, and the overall capture efficiency is high.

A rotary particle depositor is shown in Fig. 12.9, and some typical deposits of wear debris in Fig. 12.10.

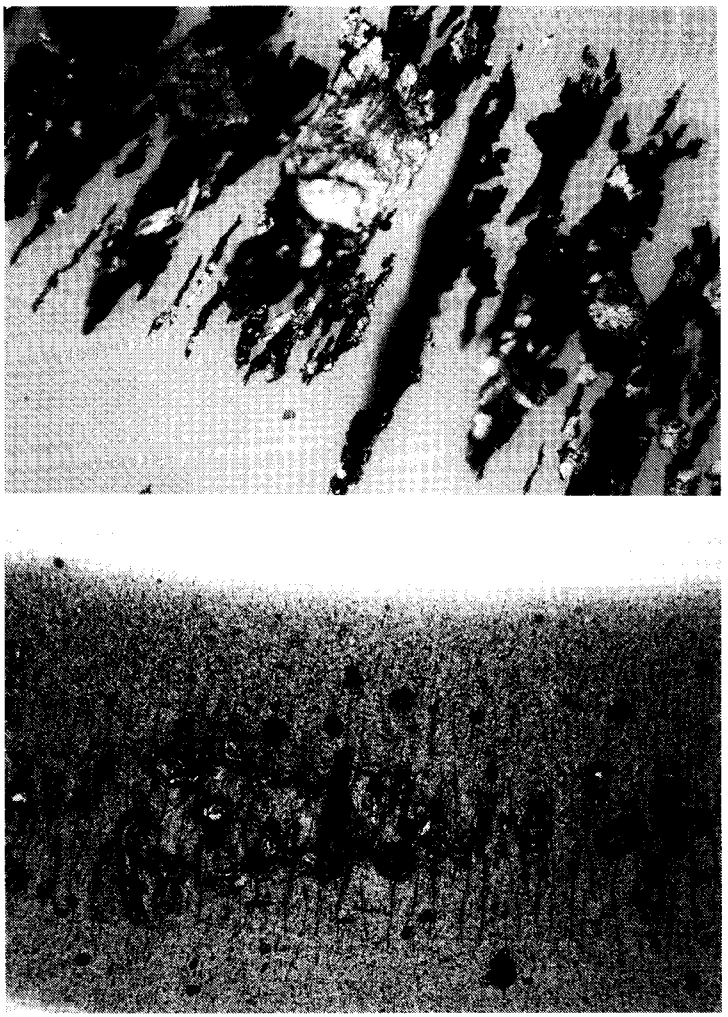


Fig. 12.10 Typical RPD wear debris deposit

12.3.5 *Other monitoring techniques*

Many other wear monitoring techniques are available which have advantages and disadvantages for particular applications.

The Inspection Instruments Debris Tester uses an eddy current technique to obtain a quantitative measure of metallic debris. The debris must first be concentrated on a non-metallic substrate. The normal technique is to filter the required quantity of oil through a fine filter and then measure the quantity of debris on the filter. An alternative technique for engines and gearboxes is to remove the accumulated debris from a conventional magnetic plug by means of adhesive tape, and then attach the tape to a card from

which a reading is taken. The card can then be stored to provide a monitoring record.

Both procedures are cumbersome and labour-intensive, but nevertheless the technique has been widely used, especially in the mining industry and in military aircraft.

The Particle Quantifier (Fig. 12.11) is one of the few techniques which can measure the quantity of debris present in an oil sample without any previous separation. Alternatively the debris can be in the form of an RPD deposit, or on a filter or separated from a specially designed magnetic plug. It uses a high-frequency AC magnetometer, and the reading obtained is strongly influenced by the magnetic susceptibility of the debris, but the results are suitable for trend monitoring.

A direct indication of the abrasiveness of solid particles present in an oil can be obtained with an instrument from Fulmer Research Institute. However, this must be considered more as an oil quality assessment than as a wear monitoring device, since the abrasive may be from airborne dust or any other source.

12.4 Field tests

The laboratory-based tests described in the previous sections are of great value for large or critical systems, and where changes are relatively slow. The on-line systems are valid only for critical systems. In many situations simpler tests are needed which are cheaper and can be carried out on the spot. Such tests are naturally much less precise, but can be very useful for small systems such as goods vehicles or marine diesel engines.

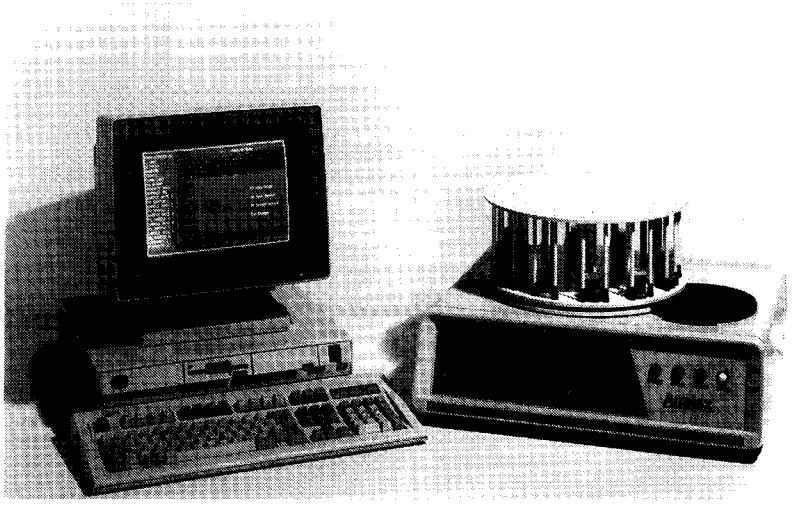


Fig. 12.11 Particle Quantifier ferrous debris monitor

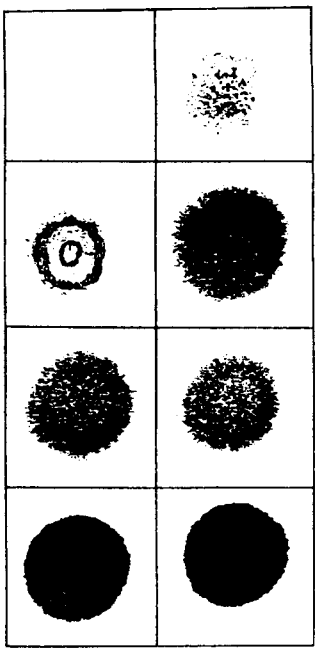


Fig. 12.12 Blotter tests

12.4.1 *Blotting-paper test*

If a drop of oil is placed on a sheet of blotting paper or thick filter paper, it will spread slowly, giving a more or less circular spot, or blot. A new oil without any insoluble additives will give a uniform pale yellow, slightly transparent spot. An oil with solid additives or contaminants will leave them as opaque flecks near the centre of the spot. A degraded oil, or one containing dark contaminants, will give a darker brown spot, or may produce one or more brown or black rings. Some typical blotter test spots are shown in Fig. 12.12.

12.4.2 *Viscosity tests*

A simple viscosity test can be done by any technique which allows a sample of the oil to flow. The enormous effect of temperature on viscosity means that it is easy to be misled about a change in viscosity of the oil; whatever test is used must be done in comparison with a sample of the same oil in its new condition.

One fairly sophisticated example of the on-the-spot viscosity comparison is the Mobil Flo-Stick shown in Fig. 12.13. This is a plastic device consisting of duplicated reservoirs and flow channels. One reservoir is filled with the used oil and the second with the equivalent unused oil. When the Flo-Stick

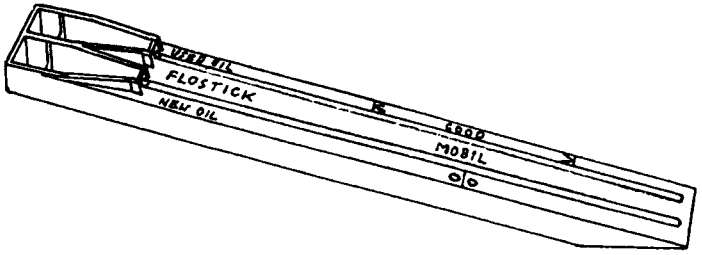


Fig. 12.13 Mobil flostick

is tilted, the two oil samples run down their respective flow channels. When the unused sample reaches a mark on its channel, the used oil is considered to be in satisfactory condition if it has reached a point somewhere between two marks on its channel. Within the accuracy of the device, this is equivalent to saying that the viscosity of the used oil is satisfactory if it is within $\pm x$ percent of that of the unused oil.

Even simpler techniques simply involve watching the used and unused samples flow through a small funnel, or drip from a glass tube, and estimating how much difference there is between them. These simpler techniques are of course very imprecise, especially if solid contaminants in the used oil disturb its flow, but they will show up major thickening or fuel contamination.

12.4.3 *Capacitance tests*

There are several devices, like the Hoppe An-Oil-Iser, in which a static electric charge is generated between two plates immersed in the used oil, and the capacitance is measured. The presence of water, metallic debris or acidic oxidation products will reduce the capacitance.

12.4.4 *Appearance*

With careful observation, a lot can be learned from the visual appearance of the oil, preferably in a small clean glass container, but if necessary even on the surface of a dipstick. Darkening, thickening, carbonaceous deposits and water may all be detected by eye, and with practice the operator can make a sensible decision about the state of the oil.

It is always worthwhile to look at the oil which has been drained from a system. Wear debris, combustion products, water and sludge can be easily seen and will give a clear indication if a more detached look should be taken, either at the oil itself or at the lubricated system.

12.5 Application to grease

There are two problems in applying lubricant condition monitoring to grease-lubricated systems. The first is that it is more difficult, and sometimes impossible, to obtain a sample from an operating system. It can be done where there is a grease nipple or centralized feed, and where surplus grease exudes from a grease valve or seal.

The second problem is that because there is virtually no flow in a grease system, there will be enormous variations between samples from different places only a very small distance apart. For example, wear debris or oxidation products may be present in only one small part of the system, and monitoring which is based on samples from a few millimetres away will completely miss them. It is therefore important that a sample for analysis should be representative of the grease at the working surfaces.

Compared with those two problems, the difficulties in analysing greases are minor. A grease can always be dispersed in clean base oil or solvent, and can then be treated in the same way as an oil. There are of course particular tests, such as penetration or dropping point, which can be applied directly to a grease sample, and changes in these properties can give useful guidance as to whether the system should be re-greased more or less frequently.

In practice grease monitoring is used less than oil monitoring, and one reason for this is that the large, expensive or critical systems are more likely to be oil-lubricated.

Analysis of used grease may be useful in investigating bearing failures, and this is considered in Section 12.7.

12.6 Selecting and designing a monitoring programme

Lubricant condition monitoring can be expensive; equipment failures can be even more expensive. The objective in designing a monitoring programme is to obtain the best possible value for money, in other words to get the best possible prediction of problems for the least possible monitoring effort and expenditure.

The probable cost of a failure will include:

- direct cost of repairs or replacement parts;
- cost of maintenance effort;
- cost of down time (consequential losses);
- risk to life, limb or property.

This last item cannot be costed in simple cash terms, but may be the most important part of the overall risk.

The second factor to consider is the likelihood of failures occurring. This involves:

- frequency of failures (mean time between failures);

- nature of failures, and frequency of each type;
- measures already taken to prevent failures.

This last item can itself be a complicated one, including such measures as frequent lubricant changes and inspections or overhauls, operating at reduced capacity, existing monitoring devices and so on.

The first two factors, i.e. cost and risk of failure, together provide the justification for a condition monitoring programme, but neither the cost nor the risk is easy to assess.

It may be considered, for example, that the cost of failure of a big-end bearing in a heavy goods vehicle would be £2000 including repair and lost revenue, and that the frequency of such a failure is one in a hundred in one year. This would indicate that even if lubricant monitoring could enable all such failures to be avoided, it would not be worth more than £20 per year to monitor every vehicle.

On the other hand, the cost of a brake failure, or even of a seized piston or main bearing, may be enormous. The engine of a truck in North America once failed while it was on a level crossing, and an express train was derailed at a cost of over $10 million. Similarly in large petrochemical works, failures of bearings or hydraulic systems have been known to cause catastrophic fires costing many millions of pounds.

Such incidents are so rare that they are difficult to include in the equation. In this respect condition monitoring is like insurance, in that a small regular expenditure may be a way to avoid occasional catastrophes. In fact it is perhaps surprising that the major industrial insurance companies have not themselves been more in the forefront of promotion of plant health monitoring.

Having by calculation or guesswork decided how much it is reasonable to spend on monitoring, it is then necessary to assess the method of monitoring which can be used, the probability of that method preventing the failure and the frequency of testing – all within the expenditure which can be justified.

It may be interesting to illustrate this problem by means of examples, bearing in mind that this book is concerned with monitoring based on the lubricant, and not on other monitoring techniques such as temperature and vibration monitoring.

A classic case is that of a large jet-propelled airliner, carrying 350 people on the North Atlantic route. It has four engines, and can fly quite safely on three, or even, within certain limitations, on two. The risk of an engine failure is therefore not a risk to life, but a risk that the aircraft may have to be diverted, so that the cost of the flight will be wasted. The cost of the flight may be £50 000, and the mean time between failures for the engines is 10 000 hours, or 1500 North Atlantic crossings. If the probability of SOAP analysis preventing an engine failure is 80 percent, it is well worth spending £5 to have a SOAP analysis carried out on the oil from each of the four

engines before every flight. On the other hand, it would not be worth carrying out analytical ferrography at £20 each on every engine before every flight.

At the other end of the scale, a large articulated lorry is shipping goods from Britain to Italy. The overall cost of an engine failure *en route* is estimated as £3000, and the risk of engine failure from all causes is 1 in every 200 return journeys. If a detailed lubricant analysis costing £40 stood a 60 percent chance of preventing *en route* failures, it would not be worth doing. If a simpler analysis costing £6 stood a 40 percent chance of preventing failure, it might just be worth doing. If an examination of the dip-stick and a blotting-paper test, costing £2 in mechanic's time, stood a 20 percent chance of preventing failure, it would be well worth doing.

Finally, consider the problem of a pump bearing in a petrochemical plant, where the pump is handling an inflammable solvent. Suppose there are 5000 such bearings in similar duty in Britain and that 200 of them fail every year. The normal average cost of a failure is £800, but once in 5 years such a failure starts a fire which costs £500 000. The annual cost per bearing is then

$$\frac{(800 \times 200) + £500\,000 / 5}{5000} = £52$$

It will therefore be worth spending up to £52 per bearing per year for a monitoring technique which will completely prevent failures.

One other aspect affects the frequency of monitoring. This depends on the time it takes for a particular failure mechanism to develop from the detectable stage to failure. Wear of a white metal bearing might take 300 hours to progress from the first detection of tin in the oil to complete failure; it will therefore be useful to carry out a SOAP analysis for tin once per week. A roller bearing may suffer rolling contact fatigue, and progress from the first wear debris to seizure in 40 hours. It would be necessary to carry out analytical ferrography every day to avoid seizures, and a better solution would probably be a vibration detector.

A less evident problem in designing a monitoring programme is to define what indicates failure. In some cases this may be obvious, for example the sudden appearance of severe wear particles in an oil. In many cases, however, there is a steady increase or decrease in the property being monitored, as in Figs 12.4 and 12.5, and there is no obvious sudden change.

Reliable correlation between a monitoring level and the probability of failure can often only be established by experience, and in many cases the decision that a failure is imminent is very subjective.

It is common practice to establish two limits. The first is called a reporting, warning or surveillance limit, and when the monitored property reaches this level, more intensive monitoring or observation of the equipment is carried out. The second limit is the removal or rejection limit, and when that level is reached the equipment is normally taken out of service.

12.7 Investigating failures

A failure takes place when the material of a piece of equipment is subjected to stresses which it cannot withstand. The stresses may not just be excessive mechanical stresses – they may include overheating, corrosion or other types of chemical attack. It follows that if enough is known about the properties of the material and the stresses it has experienced, it will be clear why the component failed.

The general subject of plant failure analysis is outside the scope of this book, but some of the techniques of lubricant monitoring can also be used in failure analysis. One problem with bearing failures is that often the bearing will have been virtually destroyed, so that all the evidence in the bearing surfaces of the nature of the failure will have disappeared. When that happens, the lubricant may still contain particles generated at all stages of the bearing's service. Analytical ferrography of a sample of the lubricant may then show the whole history of the type or types of wear which took place leading up to the failure.

Some other examples of the use of lubricant tests for failure analysis are as follows.

(a) A penetration test may show that a grease had hardened so much that it could no longer supply the bearing surfaces.
(b) Infra-red examination of an oil or a grease may show the presence of contaminants, or oxidation products from overheating.
(c) Filtration of an oil, and examination of the residue with a microscope may show contamination by an abrasive, such as grinding or grit-blasting grit, or sand.
(d) A viscosity measurement may show that the oil is contaminated with fuel or a solvent, or that the wrong oil was used.

Failure investigation requires an open-minded approach, and the use of all techniques which may give useful information. Each investigation is different, but careful thought will usually indicate which tests are likely to be helpful in a particular case.

The most important thing in any failure investigation is not to disturb or discard any component until it is clear that by doing so vital evidence will not be destroyed, and this applies particularly to the lubricant.

Chapter 13

Lubricant Handling and Storage

13.1 Care in lubricant handling

Bearings are almost always precision components, and the bearings, seals, valves and other lubricated items are the most critical in many machines. The lubricant is itself a critical part of such components, and should be handled with as much care as any other piece of precision engineering.

Just as any metallic item can be degraded by heat, moisture, chemical attack or the presence of inclusions, so can a lubricant be damaged by heat, cold, moisture, chemical attack or solid contaminants. Deterioration of a lubricant will be passed on to bearings, gears or any other lubricated parts.

It follows that it is just as important to handle and store lubricants carefully as it is for any other part of a machine. This is not always sufficiently understood, and although the standard has improved enormously during the past 30 years, there is still a tendency in many organizations to treat lubricants with far less care than other items.

Lubricant manufacturers have made great efforts to deal with the problem by ensuring that when lubricants are sold they are as clean as possible and are packaged to withstand mechanical or physical damage. However, all their efforts are wasted if their products deteriorate due to careless handling or storage before they reach the machines.

13.2 Lubricant packaging and delivery

Lubricants are supplied in many different types of package, and the most suitable type depends on the quantity used and the application. The amount to be purchased at any one time is discussed in Section 13.3 in connection with storage.

Oils can be supplied in quantities varying from tiny capsules or bottles of a few grams to bulk deliveries of several thousand litres.

Bulk deliveries are usually made by road or rail tanker, the minimum volume being perhaps 2000 litres for a small road tanker. Delivery may be made direct to the reservoir of a large centralized lubrication system or to a storage tank. It is the responsibility of the supplier to make sure that the tanker and its pumps, hoses and couplings are clean, but the user is usually responsible for making sure that their tanks or reservoirs, and hoses and couplings, are clean and serviceable.

If the oil is identical to a previous batch in the same system, then cleanliness will be the only concern, since any unused oil remaining in the system will not degrade the new oil. If the new oil differs significantly from the previous oil, it may be important to drain and flush the system before the new oil is introduced.

It is worth noting that 2.5 m of 50 mm (8 ft of 2 inch) bore hose will hold 5 litres (over a gallon) of oil, while the film remaining on the walls and bottom of an 'empty' 2000 litre tank may contain several litres of a heavy oil. When the type of oil in a storage tank is changed, the tank and its associated equipment should therefore be thoroughly drained, and either cleaned or flushed throughout with a small quantity of the new oil and again drained. Cleaning may be by steam-cleaning or solvent cleaning; in either case all the equipment must be completely ventilated and dried before the new oil is introduced.

Some manufacturers will supply up to 2000 litres of oil in a portable tank. This is a covered rectangular tank designed for easy handling by a hoist or a forklift truck, and fitted with a sight glass, and a tap. It is delivered full and installed on a raised platform in the lubricant store or cellar, or in a suitable position in the factory. It is then used as a storage tank, from which oil is supplied to dispensers or oil cans. When empty it is replaced by a full tank and returned to the supplier for re-filling.

The most common package for large quantities of oil is the standard European size steel drum or barrel containing 209 litres, equivalent to the old 45 gallon size. These drums are fitted with two screw plugs in the flat top, and the caps are carefully sealed when the drum is filled. The larger cap can be replaced by a tap or pump so that the drum can be used as a storage and dispensing unit.

Smaller drums and cans containing 1, 2, 5, 10 or 25 litres are used to supply smaller quantities of oil for industrial use or for retail supplies of oil to domestic users.

The smallest containers are used for the sale of specialty products such as watch, clock, or instrument oils, and branded retail products for such applications as sewing machines, bicycles, fishing reels and rod ferrules, shot-guns and skateboards. The containers may be bottles or small disposable oil cans made of glass, metal or plastic. The price per litre of the oil sold in these small vessels is far higher than in larger containers, and oil should never be bought in this way unless only a very small quantity is needed.

Greases are normally sold for industrial use in kegs or barrels containing 3–180 kg (7–400 lb), but smaller cans containing 0.5 kg (roughly 1 lb) are available if the usage is small. Some greases are sold in cartridges which are designed to fill a standard size grease-gun. As with oils, specialty grease products are supplied in very small packages containing less than 100 g, and these are usually tubes made of thick metal foil or polypropylene.

The polypropylene tubes are less likely to rupture than the metal ones, but do not remain collapsed after squeezing, so that they may draw air and dust in when they recover their shape. If they are used over a long period, the grease content can become oxidized, hardened or dirty, so the ideal technique is to keep the squeezing pressure applied until the cap has been replaced.

All types of lubricant container must be handled carefully to avoid damage. This applies particularly to the large oil drums and grease barrels which are difficult to handle carefully because of their size and weight. Drums can be rolled safely over flat surfaces, but should never be allowed to drop more than an inch or two because the seams may become strained and leak. Over rough ground or steps they can be rolled smoothly on two lengths of timber set about 0.6 m apart. For unloading from lorries, proper hoists, fork-lift trucks or barrel skids should be used.

13.3 Storage

The first consideration in lubricant storage is to avoid storing too many types of lubricant. In other words lubricant rationalization, as described in Section 4.9, should be carried out before the storage system is designed. If possible the store should then have some spare capacity to cope with additional needs which may arise later.

The second consideration is how much of each type of lubricant needs to be stored, and in what size containers. It is difficult to give any hard and fast rules for this. Oil in a clean sealed drum, kept in a dry place, may remain in perfect condition for many years, while most greases are stable for at least 2 years. Once the containers are opened, however, deterioration is more rapid, and the size of container should probably be chosen to represent between 1 and 3 months supply.

Ideally the stores should have room for at least two containers of each type of oil or grease, unless large storage tanks of 600 litres (roughly 150 gallons) or more are used.

Some of the factors involved in selecting the number and size of containers are as follows.

(a) It is generally more economical to purchase and to store in large quantities.
(b) Small containers are emptied more quickly, and are therefore less susceptible to contamination.
(c) Small containers are easier to handle.

Once the total quantity of lubricant to be stored has been decided, it is possible to plan the location and layout of the stores area.

Lubricant stores should always be under cover. Typical locations include a corner of the enclosed factory area, part of the general stores area, a lubricant 'basement' or 'cellar', or a separate building away from the main factory building.

Where the overall quantities of lubricant are small, location in the factory building or in the main stores is usually preferable.

Where quantities are large, and continuous supplies are made to integrated machinery such as rolling mills, cellar storage has several advantages. A cellar can be centrally located near to the use areas, but the lubricant storage is kept out of the way of production equipment and workers. A minor advantage is that storage tanks can be filled by gravity from road or rail tankers at ground level.

Lubricant storage is often combined with the storage of solvents and paints. The overall fire risk is then quite high, and storage should preferably be in a separate building with adequate fire precautions. Such an arrangement will probably result in reduced insurance premiums for the main factory buildings.

Smoking and naked flames should always be banned in any lubricant storage area, and the bans should be enforced. Access to lubricant stores should also be restricted to a very few people authorized to issue and dispense the lubricants. Problems will always arise if machine operators are allowed to draw their own lubricants, unless they have been given clear guidance on the need to use the correct specified product and the importance of cleanliness.

The lubricant store should also have floor gratings and drainage channels to allow any spilled oil to drain away and reduce floor contamination.

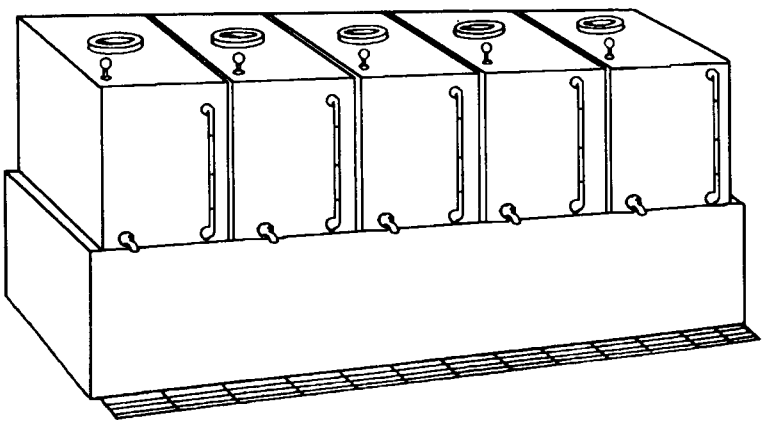


Fig. 13.1 Bulk oil storage tanks

Large oil storage tanks are usually rectangular, as this allows more economical use of space. They may be mounted a few inches above the floor, just enough to prevent moisture from corroding the tank bottoms, or they may be mounted up to 3 ft above floor level. The latter permits small dispensing vessels to be filled from non-drip taps by gravity, whereas the oil has to be pumped out of a floor-level tank. In either case the tank should be tilted slightly towards the front to enable it to be emptied completely. A typical installation of large storage tanks is shown in Fig. 13.1.

Large storage tanks may be filled directly from a tanker, or from barrels, either by pouring or by pumping.

For storing intermediate quantities of oil, drums are very convenient containers. The best arrangement is probably to mount them horizontally in racks, fitted with non-drip taps to enable dispensing vessels to be filled by gravity. A typical rack system is shown in Fig. 13.2. Individual drums can also be mounted on barrel stillages or on barrel trucks, which allow them to be stored upright and tilted horizontally for dispensing.

Drums can be stored vertically, and equipped with a hand-pump to dispense the oil. They should preferably be raised slightly off the floor to prevent moisture from accumulating underneath and corroding their bases. If outside storage of drums cannot be avoided, or if there is any risk of water falling on them, they should never be stored upright. Water can collect in the recess in the top, and even with first-class sealing it will eventually enter the drum. As the drum warms up during the day, the contents will expand, and a small quantity of air will be forced out through the plugs. When the drum cools again at night the contents contract, and this causes a reduction in pressure which will suck in water surrounding the plug. The water then sinks to the bottom of the drum, and the process can be repeated indefinitely. Drums which have been stored for years out of doors have sometimes been found completely full of water, with the seals still intact.

It is generally unavoidable for grease barrels and kegs to be stored upright,

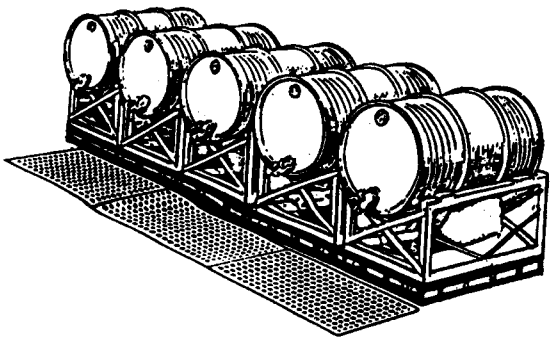


Fig. 13.2 Barrel rack storage

and again wherever possible they should be stored under cover. The lids of grease containers are less deeply recessed than those of oil-drums, but even so, if outside storage is unavoidable the kegs should be tilted slightly to enable water to drain off, and also covered with a tarpaulin or plastic sheet.

Small tins, cans, bottles and tubes of lubricant are most conveniently stored on racks or shelves, or in cupboards – in the same way as other precision parts.

The careful and clear labelling of lubricant containers is even more important than for other components. If the label on a mechanical component becomes unreadable, or missing completely, its size and shape will often identify it, or at least prevent it from being used in the wrong place. A lubricant has no such unique features to identify it, and a lubricant which has been wrongly identified may be used in the wrong system with catastrophic results. A lubricant container which is unlabelled should be discarded.

Equally important is date identification of lubricant containers. Sealed drums or cans of oil should be scheduled for use within a maximum of 1 year of purchase, and greases within 6 months. For specialty materials such as some of the synthetic oils and calcium soap greases the period should sometimes be even shorter. They will of course in most cases keep for much longer periods, but deterioration will continue at a faster rate once the container is opened.

The main object of date labelling is not to fix a maximum storage period, but to ensure that containers are used in the same sequence as they are bought. A container which sits out of sight at the back of the store for several years before being used may cause more trouble than it is worth, and should also be discarded, or at least used only for non-critical applications.

In addition to lubricants the store should also accommodate all the dispensing equipment – pumps, charts and even the cleaning rags – which will be used by the lubrication staff. The cleanliness of all these items is just as important as that of the lubricants themselves, and they are best stored under the same conditions.

The laundering and disposal of used lubricants have been described in detail in Chapter 6. The equipment required for laundering or for collection of used oils will often be located in the lubricant stores area, so that suitable space and facilities should be incorporated in the planning. It should also be separated in some way from the new lubricant storage area, to avoid any possible confusion.

13.4 Dispensing and applying lubricants

The first and vital action before lubricant containers are opened is to clean the outer surfaces thoroughly to make sure that no dirt enters to contaminate the lubricant.

Oil drums are readily fitted with taps which can be screwed into the larger

hole in the drum top in place of the threaded plug. The tap should preferably be the quick shut-off, non-drip type which allows precise control of the amount of oil drawn off, even with very viscous oils. The tap is fitted when the drum is vertical, and the drum is then placed horizontally on a rack or stillage with the tap at the lowest position. The smaller upper plug is loosened to ensure that no oil leaks from it, and is then removed; the lubricant can then be drawn off by means of the tap.

If a barrel or drum is to be kept in the upright position, a hand or air-operated pump can be fitted to the larger threaded hole to enable the oil to be pumped out.

It is desirable to fit a piece of cloth or a loose wad of cotton waste over the ventilation hole to prevent dust or dirt from being drawn in, especially in a dusty atmosphere.

Grease containers present more difficulty because the whole of the top of a grease keg is a lid which must be removed before the grease can be dispensed. Every effort must be made to ensure that dirt or water does not enter while the lid is removed, and the lid must be replaced as soon as possible. Whereas oil can to some extent tolerate solid contaminants, which sink to the bottom of the drum, a grease will hold all the harmful solids which enter, and transfer them to the bearings.

Pumps are available for transferring grease to smaller containers or grease-guns, but a follower plate must be placed on top of the grease to press it down and ensure steady feed at the pump inlet.

The smaller dispensing containers used to transfer oil or grease from store to machine are generally quite well known. For oils there are the conventional oil cans which are used to feed oil direct to a bearing or oiling point. They either have compressible walls which are pressed to expel oil from the spout, or they have a hand-operated piston or trigger which pumps a fixed volume of air into the can and so expels a similar volume of oil.

Larger quantities of oil are conveniently transferred by cans similar to those used for storing and dispensing paraffin. They have a hinged cover to keep out dirt, and either a fixed funnel-shaped spout or a screw-in spout on a flexible pipe. They come in sizes from 0.5 to 10 litres, the 10 litre size being similar in appearance to a garden watering can.

Where very large quantities of oil must regularly be supplied to certain points in the factory, it may be most efficient to install a pipeline from the store to the points of use.

Grease is usually transferred by means of grease-guns, which have been described in Chapter 7, and which can hold up to 2 kg of grease. Transfer of grease in intermediate pails is undesirable because of the difficulty of preventing contamination. If a supply of several kilograms or more of grease must be transferred from the lubricant store, for example to the reservoir of a centralized lubrication system, it may be best to buy it in suitable sized containers.

The exception to this general recommendation is where fully enclosed pressurized or pumped transfer is used. The possibility of contamination is then largely eliminated. Suitable equipment includes portable power-operated pumps and portable grease-gun fillers, both of which can be filled directly from the keg or barrel in the lubricant store by means of a pump.

A portable power-operated pump consists of a grease reservoir, usually mounted on an integral trolley, fitted with one or more delivery nozzles and a suitable pump. For the softer greases up to No. 2, a hand- or air-operated piston pump may be used. For stiffer greases a screw feed is suitable. Portable systems are available which will hold up to 25 kg of grease.

A portable grease-gun filler consists of a vessel like a modified grease pail fitted with a hand- or air-operated pump and a delivery nozzle. A follower plate is necessary for all but the most fluid greases.

Every item of dispensing equipment used for lubricants should be kept for one grade only, or thoroughly cleaned after each use. It is a waste of time, effort and money to specify carefully the best oil for a machine, and then to allow that oil to become mixed with a less suitable one because of a shortage of oil cans.

The importance of correct lubrication means that care must be taken over the selection and training of suitable lubrication staff, and the introduction of a proper system of lubrication control. It is a significant fact that in the former East Germany, factories above a certain size were legally required to appoint a Lubrication Engineer, in the same way that many other countries require the appointment of a Safety Officer.

The importance of correct lubrication has been increasingly recognized in recent years, but there are still many plants where lubrication is carried out by either machine operators, machine minders or labourers. There are problems with any of these situations. In general, modern machine operators are overwhelmingly concerned with maintaining output, and unless they have been trained to understand the need to use the right lubricant in the right quantities, they are likely to place more emphasis on rapid lubrication than on correct lubrication.

The unskilled worker will similarly need effective training and guidance in order to carry out the lubrication requirements satisfactorily. Understanding the need for correct lubrication requires some technical knowledge of the way bearings work. With proper training a responsible unskilled person should be able to carry out the lubrication task reliably, but not as one of a wide range of other duties.

In other words, whoever is required to carry out plant lubrication should be specially appointed and trained to do so. The number of staff required may vary from two in a small works or department to scores in a large integrated works, but in all cases they should be able to specialize in lubrication.

The operation of a correct lubrication programme will be very much

improved if a suitable system of lubricant stock control and lubrication instructions is introduced. One very useful technique is to use colour coding, so that, for example, the colour allocated to a particular oil will be marked on the machine, the dispensing equipment, the central lubricant tank or drum, the rack position, the lubrication instructions and the stock control cards. This system can become complicated in a large works where many different lubricants are used, but the lubrication staff should then be large enough to maintain effective control.

Major lubricant suppliers will carry out a lubrication survey of a plant, and design a complete system, from colour coding and stores design to staff training. Very often a condition for carrying out such a survey is a commitment on the part of the user to purchase that supplier's products.

A user wanting to retain freedom to buy on the open market can arrange for a survey to be carried out by a specialist consultant, but will be charged a fee for the work. The cost may well be recovered by being able to choose between competing suppliers of lubricants.

It cannot be too strongly emphasized that the proper storage, handling and application of lubricants will repay the same care and attention as would be given to any other high-quality precision component.

Chapter 14

Health and Safety

14.1 Overall safety of lubricants

It must be emphasized immediately that this chapter is not intended to give authoritative information about lubricant hazards or about safety precautions to be used with lubricants. For such information those responsible for lubrication matters, in conjunction with works Safety Officers and Medical Officers, should consult the detailed Safety Data Sheets provided by lubricant suppliers, and the information published by organizations such as Government Departments and the British Royal Society for the Prevention of Accidents (RoSPA).

This chapter is intended only to give a broad picture of the types of hazard which can arise in connection with lubricants, and the nature of the working practices which should be used.

Lubricants as a group are not particularly hazardous. Although most of them will burn, they are far harder to ignite than fuels and many solvents and chemicals. Although they can contribute to accidents, so can almost anything on Earth. Finally, although they can lead to health problems, they are far less dangerous to health than many materials which are used in much larger quantities. It is noteworthy that a survey of 45 000 workers in the petroleum industry, carried out by Birmingham University on behalf of the British Institute of Petroleum, found that their overall mortality was well below the national average.

Recent legislation in most developed countries has focused public attention more closely on health and safety hazards, placed responsibility on suppliers, employers and employees to reduce risks, and resulted in more general availability of information about specific dangers and preventive actions.

Such legislation has done a great deal to improve work safety, but the greatest factor in avoiding accidents and industrial health problems is careful

working and commonsense, and this applies to lubrication as well as to most other activities of man.

14.2 Flammability and explosions

One of the major problems in discussing fire-resistant materials is that different materials can be ignited readily under widely different conditions. For this reason it is difficult to classify lubricants simply as flammable or non-flammable. (The word 'inflammable' is not used in discussing fire-resistance because to people unfamiliar with English it could be dangerously misunderstood as meaning non-flammable. The words 'flammable' and 'inflammable' both mean that something can be made to burn, but the word 'flammable' is preferred because it is not likely to be misunderstood.)

Combustion, or burning, is simply a form of rapid oxidation in which enough heat is produced to continue the oxidation. The burning material is broken down, usually to smaller molecules of highly oxidized combustion products.

For combustion to take place, there must be a flammable material, called a fuel, and an oxidant present. Oxygen gas is the most common oxidant, and it is of course present in air in high enough concentration to support combustion of many materials.

Combustion can be started by heat alone if the temperature is raised high enough to produce the necessary rapid oxidation. It can be started at a lower temperature if a flame is present, because the flame itself is at extremely high temperature and contains very reactive substances which encourage oxidation of the fuel.

Many test methods have been developed to assess fire resistance under different conditions, but there has been little agreement on standardizing any of them. It will probably be helpful to explain first some of the terms used in describing ignition, and then to describe the main types of test condition.

A 'flash' is an ignition which is very brief, lasting less than a second, and usually much less than a second. It occurs when a vapour is ignited but when no more vapour is immediately available to sustain the combustion, and the conditions do not enable anything else present to ignite.

A 'flame' is burning gas. A visible flame occurs when the burning is intense enough to cause incandescence, that is for bright light to be produced.

'Fire' is a self-sustaining combustion in which flames are produced. It differs from 'smouldering' which is self-sustaining combustion without flames. In both cases the heat produced by the combustion of some part of the material is sufficient to keep the temperature high enough to ignite a further part. The difference is that with fire the material burns to produce flammable gases and there is enough oxygen present to burn those gases. With smouldering the material burns but either produces no flammable gases or produces flammable gases but there is insufficient oxygen present to burn

the gases. Fire or smouldering will not necessarily continue until all the flammable material is consumed. Sometimes the fire goes out, and the material may then be said to be 'self-extinguishing'.

A 'spark' is a tiny fragment of material so hot that it is incandescent. Its temperature will probably be over 2000 °C.

An 'explosion' takes place when pressure builds up to such an extent that it cannot be contained or disperse slowly. A container explodes when pressure builds up enough to rupture the container violently. An explosive is a material which builds up pressure so quickly that even when it is not in a vessel it has to disperse faster than the speed of sound, producing a shock wave.

The following are the important types of ignition test which are often applied to lubricants.

14.2.1 *Flash point*

Flash points are so often measured that they have already been described in Chapter 11. The flash point is the lowest temperature of a liquid at which the vapour above the liquid can be ignited by an open flame. In most cases it is the lowest temperature at which any ignition risk arises at all, and the risk may in fact be very slight. If a kerosine has a flash point of 50 °C, that means that it must be heated to over 50 °C, and a flame must be brought near it before its vapour will ignite.

The lightest mineral lubricating oils will usually have flash points of over 120 °C, although some special types may be as low as 80 °C. The flash points of synthetic oils depend very much on their thermal stability. For example silicones and polyphenyl ethers, which are stable to quite high temperatures,

Table 14.1 Fire resistance data

Base oil	*Flash point (°C)*	*Spontaneous ignition temperature (SIT)*	*Wick ignition*	*Spray ignition*	*Dieselling*
Mineral	120–240	Low	Very flammable	Highly flammable	Very explosive
Di-ester	230	Low	Flammable	Very flammable	Explosive
Phosphate ester	200	Very high	Flammable	Difficult to ignite	Difficult to ignite
Silicone	300	High	Self-extinguishing	Difficult to ignite	Difficult to ignite
Poly-glycol	180	Medium	Flammable	Flammable	Non-ignitable
Fluoro-ether	None	None	Non-flammable	None	Non-ignitable

have flash points over 270 °C. On the other hand, most other synthetic oils, even including phosphate esters which are specially chosen for their fire resistance, have flash points around 170–200 °C.

Flash points and other fire resistance data for different base oils are summarized in Table 14.1.

14.2.2 *Spontaneous ignition*

If a substance is heated in air, a temperature level may be reached at which it ignites without any flame or spark having to be applied. This temperature is called its spontaneous ignition temperature (SIT), also known as autogenous ignition temperature. If a similar test is carried out in pure oxygen the SIT is lower, sometimes far lower, but this is normally only done where the substance is to be used in an oxygen system.

Warning. In contact with *liquid* oxygen, even at very low temperatures, many materials which are not considered very flammable will ignite violently. This applies to almost all liquid lubricants, notable exceptions being the perfluorinated polyethers and fluorocarbons.

There is one peculiar effect in spontaneous ignition of liquids or gases which makes it difficult to obtain agreement on a standard test procedure. If a spontaneous ignition test of a liquid or gas is carried out in a larger vessel, the SIT will decrease. For this reason tests have been carried out in 175 ml conical flasks, 250 ml conical flasks, 1 litre spheres and 1 cu ft (28 litre) spheres. The ASTM D-2155 test used a 250 ml flask, but it was recognized that a liquid in the open may ignite spontaneously at a lower temperature than in this test.

For this reason, the spontaneous ignition temperatures are listed in Table 14.1 only in relative terms. However, mineral oils and di-esters have consistently low spontaneous ignition temperatures, while phosphate esters, chlorinated and fluorinated silicones, and fluoroethers consistently have very high spontaneous ignition temperatures.

Many other fire resistance tests are in fact spontaneous ignition tests because no flame or spark is applied to cause ignition. They are designed to examine the effect of some special heating source, such as a hot manifold or a bath of molten metal, which is of particular importance to the user concerned.

Since test conditions are not widely standardized, it is not possible to make direct comparisons between spontaneous ignition tests, or between fluids tested by different methods. For example petrol (gasoline) has a lower SIT than paraffin (kerosine) in a flask test, but it may be higher in a hot manifold test because at certain temperatures the petrol will evaporate too quickly to ignite.

14.2.3 *Wick ignition*

A special type of hazard arises when a fibrous material such as fibre insulation, lagging or cotton waste is damp with a flammable liquid. A thin film of the liquid forms on all the fibres, and as a result a small amount of liquid has an enormous surface area. A litre of oil might have a surface area of well over 40 m^2 (440 square feet).

When heated, such as in the lagging of a steam pipe, this thin film may ignite, but because there is little oxygen and little fuel present at any one point, the material does not burst into flame but continues to smoulder. Such a smouldering combustion may remain undetected for some time, but can act as an ignition source for other materials and lead to a more serious fire, as well as producing toxic or suffocating gases. Since it is the liquid which ignites, and not the lagging, such problems can arise even in asbestos lagging.

To test for this effect, wick ignition tests are carried out. They usually consist of a system in which one end of a short wick is dipped into the test liquid under carefully controlled conditions and a flame is applied to the other end.

Apart from the ease with which the liquid can be ignited, two other factors affect the results of a wick test. The first is the viscosity of the liquid, since a more viscous liquid will rise more slowly up the wick. The second is the nature of the combustion products formed from the liquid, since non-flammable solid combustion products can block the flow of liquid and prevent burning.

As a result a phosphate ester which has a low viscosity will burn more easily in a wick than a silicone, which produces blocking deposits of silica when overheated.

The results of wick tests must therefore be interpreted with care and not applied to other combustion situations. They are useful for the particular case of lagging fires, but also in conjunction with other tests help to give a broader overall picture of the fire resistance of different lubricants.

14.2.4 *Spray ignition*

A liquid can be readily ignited when in the form of a fine spray because a large volume of air or oxygen can reach a small droplet of the liquid, and because there is no bulk of liquid in contact to cool the droplet. Since a spray is produced by liquid under pressure, there is often also a continuing supply of fuel available to keep the fire burning. Some catastrophic industrial and aircraft fires have been caused by ignition of a spray.

Tests for spray ignition are carried out by producing a spray of the liquid under pressure through a fine jet and igniting it by means of a flame or an electric arc. The result is stated in terms of the difficulty or ease of ignition, and the persistence of the flame. A high-viscosity liquid is generally harder

to ignite in a spray, simply because it is harder to produce a rapid supply of fine droplets.

Spray ignition tests tend to show that those liquids with low SITs ignite most readily, except for the complicating effect of viscosity.

The test is best used to assess fire risk for systems in which liquids will be present at high pressure, such as in a high-pressure hydraulic system. It also helps to give a broader picture of the fire resistance of different liquids.

14.2.5 *Dieselling*

Dieselling is a term used for ignition which takes place when a mixture of a vapour and an oxidant is compressed rapidly, in the same way as the fuel/air mixture in a diesel engine.

When a gas is compressed rapidly it becomes hot because of adiabatic compression. (Adiabatic means without loss of heat to or from the outside.) It is this heating which causes the mixture in a diesel engine to ignite, and the same situation can arise in some other circumstances. It is not a common phenomenon, but it has been known to cause serious accidents in aircraft undercarriage oleos and in the crankcases of reciprocating compressors if the breather becomes blocked.

Testing for dieselling risk is carried out in a piston–cylinder arrangement, usually with a facility for controlling and increasing the outside temperature. The liquids most resistant to dieselling are those that have high flash points and high spontaneous ignition temperatures, such as silicones and fluoroethers. These are unfortunately not among the best lubricants for a piston–cylinder arrangement, so where possible it may be effective to use a less explosion-resistant lubricant and to fill the void space of the chamber with nitrogen instead of air to prevent dieselling.

14.3 Accidents involving lubricants

There is a relatively high risk of mechanical accidents occurring where loads are carried by moving surfaces. These are exactly the situations where lubricants are used, so that it is natural that lubricants are often involved where accidents occur in machinery. In addition, most common lubricants can burn, so that the risk of fire is added to the dangers of accidents in lubricated systems.

The use of the wrong lubricant, or faults in lubricant supply, may contribute directly to premature failures of lubricated systems such as gears and bearings. For example in a steam turbine in a chemical plant there was a failure in the lubricating oil pump that resulted in an interruption in the oil flow. The standby pump took over almost immediately, but the temporary loss of oil wrecked a tilting pad thrust bearing. This allowed the shaft to move axially, and the turbine wheel was also wrecked and a leak of high-

pressure steam occurred. The plant was then shut down without further damage.

Often, however, the lubricant does not contribute in any way to the failure, but only to the consequences. For example, the propellor shaft of a small ship suffered a fatigue failure just forward of the stern tube bearing. This caused overloading and misalignment at the forward bearing, which seized. The teeth were stripped from the splined drive at the gearbox, and before the engine could be shut down the damaged spline overheated and ignited the oil leaking from the bearing, causing a fire.

The temperatures reached by a damaged bearing or coupling can be very high. In one damaged thrust bearing the temperature was shown to have reached over 1100 °C. With lubricant present to act as a fuel, these high temperatures can very easily cause serious fires, especially where the plant is handling some highly flammable gas or liquid. One such fire alone resulted in damage estimated at over £3 000 000.

Oil is more likely than grease to lead to serious fires, but seizure of grease-lubricated conveyor bearings in coal mines has been blamed for several potentially dangerous fires. A similar problem is believed to have contributed to the disastrous fire in the Kings Cross Underground Station in London.

There is an obvious second way in which lubricants can cause accidents. Lubricants are by their nature slippery, and when they occur on floors, ladders, roads or ships' decks, they can lead to unpleasant and even serious accidents.

For this reason special care must be used in handling lubricants to avoid spillages and to clean them up rapidly when they occur. This is particularly important in lubricant stores or cellars, or any other place where large quantities of lubricants are used. Small spills which are not cleared up lead both to a sloppy work attitude and to an increased risk of further accidental spills.

Such areas should have floor grills wherever there is likely to be continuing spillage, such as beneath oil tank taps. In time metal grills can become highly polished, and even a thin film of oil on a polished grill can cause a hazard. Grills should therefore be cleaned with non-flammable solvent or chemical cleaners, and roughened or replaced when necessary.

On other floor areas oil spills should immediately be covered with absorbent powder or granules. These generally give high friction and in this way reduce the risk of slipping or falling until the granules can be swept up and the floor properly cleaned.

14.4 Health aspects of lubricants

This brief description of some of the health aspects of lubricants is not intended to be either comprehensive or authoritative. Authoritative data on health hazards for all sorts of chemical materials are published by most

governments and other public bodies, and hazards of particular lubricants are described in the relevant manufacturers' Safety Data Sheets. Further general information is contained in some of the books listed in the Bibliography.

On the whole, lubricants are rather stable, inert materials, and the health problems which arise from their use tend to be long-term rather than immediate. Acute (i.e. rapid or immediate) toxicity is more likely to arise from the more reactive additives than from the base oils, especially where additives are present in high concentrations, such as in soluble oils and some engine lubricating oils.

Some of the longer term health problems include cancer and dermatitis. However, there is strong evidence that these occur only when the victim has been careless and has allowed his skin to be in contact with oil or oil-soaked clothing for very long periods. Nevertheless, the lubricant manufacturers have made great efforts to identify and remove the dangerous components. It is hoped that the risk of cancer has now been completely eliminated, but because it can take 30 years for certain cancers to develop it will be many years before the danger will be known to have disappeared.

It should be emphasized immediately that the health risks associated with lubricants can probably be avoided completely by care in avoiding prolonged

Table 14.2 Health hazards of lubricant materials

Oil type	*Acute toxicity*	*Dermatitis*	*Cancer*
New mineral oil	Very slight	Care required	Believed to be disappearing
Used mineral oil	Some risk	Care required	Care required
Synthetic hydrocarbon	Very slight if any	Care required	None reported
Di-ester and polyol ester	Slight	Care required	None reported
Phosphate ester	Some risk	Care required	None reported
Silicone	Non-toxic	Little risk	None reported
Polyglycol	Believed to be low	Believed to be low	None reported
Fluoroether	Toxic vapour when over-heated	Not known	None reported
Soluble oil	Care required	Care required	As for mineral oil
Grease	Very slight	Care required	Probably very little risk
Additives	Some risk	Little risk	Little if any risk

contact with the skin. Oil on the hands should be cleaned off immediately, and oil-wet clothing changed.

Table 14.2 shows some of the types of health hazard which can arise with specific lubricants. These will be described in more detail in the next few pages, but for authoritative information the manufacturers' product Safety Data Sheets should be consulted.

14.4.1 *Mineral oils*

Acute toxicity of mineral oils is very low, and even with the most dangerous of mineral oils it would probably be necessary to drink many millilitres before there would be severe risk. There would probably be severe vomiting if anything approaching such a quantity was drunk. Absorption through the skin or by inhaling oil mist is also fairly innocuous. An American recommendation limits the concentration of soluble oil mist in the air to less than 5 mg per cubic metre of air, but this is designed for comfort rather than avoiding toxic effects, and concentrations many times higher for 8 hours per day for years have been shown to have no adverse effect.

The most common health problem with mineral oils is certainly dermatitis. This is an unpleasant inflammation of the skin which can be hard to get rid of. Mineral oils will slightly dissolve the natural fats in the skin, and if any part of the skin is wet for a long period with mineral oil it will tend to dry and even crack. Oil can also block the pores in the skin, preventing perspiration, and thus blocking up harmful body waste products. Any of these factors can lead to dermatitis, and the best prevention is cleanliness. Older people and fair-skinned people seem to be more likely to develop dermatitis.

A more serious result of mineral oil contamination is skin cancer, but fortunately this is also very rare. The main cause is believed to be the presence of what are called poly-cyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PCAHs), which are known to be carcinogenic. Solvent extraction of mineral oils removes PCAH, and such refining techniques are now probably universally used for lubricant base oils.

Scrotal cancer has been shown to be caused by very long contact with mineral oils. The cause is again almost certainly PCAH, and improved refining techniques should get rid of the problem. It can certainly be avoided by care in preventing prolonged contact with oil.

When hands become wet with oil or grease they should be cleaned as soon as possible using warm water and soap, mild detergents or proprietary skin-cleaning products. No solvents, white spirit, paraffin or petrol should be used, as they will also tend to remove skin fats; abrasive household cleaners will also damage the skin. Where frequent wetting with oil is likely, barrier creams may be helpful, mainly because they make it easier to remove the oil by mild methods, but they should be chosen to match the sort of oil involved (e.g. neat oils or soluble oils).

If the hands become dry because of frequent contamination and cleaning, a good hand cream should be used. This will help to avoid skin cracking, and more serious infections. Men are often reluctant to use such creams because most proprietary grades are perfumed, but plain creams can be obtained.

If clothing becomes wet with oil it should be changed as quickly as possible. Oil-wet clothing is probably the main cause of skin cancer and particularly scrotal cancer, as it keeps oil in contact with the skin for long periods, and also rubs the skin causing sensitivity and inflammation. For workers in lubricant stores, aprons are recommended which have an impermeable under layer and an absorbent outer layer.

A final preventive procedure is to report any skin complaints immediately they occur, and to cover any cuts or scratches with oil-resistant finger-stalls or plasters. Any skin damage gives an open door for oil and infections to enter, and such damage should be cleared up as quickly as possible, if necessary keeping the victims away from lubricating oils.

14.4.2 *Synthetic oils*

In general synthetic oils have low toxicity and no reported carcinogenic effects. Their mild toxic effects will, however, differ from one class to another, and this again shows the desirability of manufacturers differentiating between them, and not simply labelling products as 'synthetic'.

Synthetic hydrocarbons include several different chemical types, but none are reported to have any acute toxic effects or carcinogenicity. They are in fact similar in some respects to medicinal paraffin, except that there is some risk of dermatitis because of a tendency to dry and crack the skin. Care should therefore be taken to avoid prolonged contact. However, one class which is used in small quantities in arctic engine oils and refrigerator oils is that of the alkylbenzenes; these are likely to have some toxicity associated with the presence of the aromatic (benzene) group.

Di-esters and polyol esters have slight toxicity and no reported carcinogenicity. They can cause dermatitis, and care should be taken to avoid prolonged contact.

Polyglycols are believed to have low toxicity and low risk of dermatitis, but they are irritant on contact with the eyes.

Phosphate esters are toxic and there is a risk of dermatitis, so care should be taken to avoid ingestion or prolonged skin contact.

Fluoroethers and chlorinated diphenyls both produce toxic gaseous products when overheated to decomposition, and dermatitis can arise from prolonged contact with chlorinated diphenyls. For these reasons the use of chlorinated diphenyls is decreasing, and may have virtually disappeared.

Silicones are for practical purposes completely non-toxic.

14.4.3 *Additives*

Additives are more or less reactive chemicals, whereas most base oils are chemically very inert. Additives therefore tend to be more irritant and more toxic than base oils. Additives are usually used in small concentrations and therefore any risk is much reduced, except in lubricants which contain high concentrations of additives, such as soluble oils and engine oils. Nevertheless, all additives are now carefully screened for toxicity, and those with higher toxicity, such as lead naphthenates, chlorinated naphthalenes and orthophosphates, have been largely replaced.

Phosphates are used as EP and anti-wear additives. They can occur in three forms, called ortho-, meta- and para-phosphates. Until about 1965 no particular distinction was made between the three forms in lubricant use. It then became apparent that the ortho form was highly toxic in large amounts, causing damage to the nervous system, resulting in blindness or paralysis. Such serious damage was not found with normal lubricant use, but cases occurred where unscrupulous merchants in undeveloped regions blended hydraulic fluid containing tricresyl phosphate (TCP) into alcoholic drinks, and large numbers of cases of blindness resulted. The concentration of the ortho form has since been restricted to less than 1 percent of the TCP used in lubricants. Since the normal concentration of TCP in a lubricant or hydraulic fluid is less than 1 percent, the concentration of the ortho form is less than 0.01 percent of the oil. This is harmless in any quantity of oil which could reasonably be swallowed.

Lead naphthenate soaps have been used for many years as EP additives in industrial gear oils. It was found that slight increases in lead concentrations occurred in some steel industry workers who handled large quantities of those types of gear oil. Although no harmful results were ever demonstrated, there has been a general move away from lead naphthenate additives to sulphur–phosphorus types.

Additives are likely to be more of a hazard to lubricant manufacturers than to users, because in manufacture large quantities of neat additives will be used. For the user the usual precautions against too much wetting by oil and against accidental swallowing will avoid any risk from additives. If for any particular specialized application it is necessary to use the more toxic types of additive, modern regulations and practice would ensure that clear warnings are given on the package and in Safety Data Sheets, and safety precautions clearly indicated.

14.4.4 *Soluble oils*

There are four special hazards in the use of soluble cutting oils, but none of them is serious if commonsense is used.

Neat soluble oils have high concentrations of additives, but these are very

much reduced once the oil has been dispersed in water. Toxicity problems should therefore be low as far as the machine operator is concerned, but nevertheless several of the more highly toxic additives have been discontinued, including chlorinated paraffins, mercaptobenzothiazoles, sodium nitrate and secondary amines.

Soluble oils are particularly prone to microbiological attack, i.e. growth of bacteria and microscopic fungi, because they contain large amounts of water. These do not in themselves cause a serious hazard to human beings because the organisms present are almost entirely harmless to man. The problem arises from the biocides which are added to prevent microbiological attack. Biocides are materials which have strong toxicity to micro-organisms, and they also have some toxicity to man. For this reason some biocides, including those which are nitro-based, have been discontinued.

As mentioned in Section 4.8, a recent European Union directive will make it more common to add a biocide to cutting oils at the work-site after they have been diluted with water instead of in manufacture. This will obviously reduce any hazards from biocides to machine-tool operators, although this may to some extent be offset by the fact that biocides will have to be separately provisioned. The usual precautions against ingesting the oils or the biocides themselves should prevent problems.

Other water-containing oils, such as invert emulsions, are also sometimes treated with biocides and the same precautions should be taken.

High-speed cutting processes can lead to the formation of a fine mist of cutting oil, especially where the tool or workpiece becomes hot. Care should be taken not to breathe in this mist. A good guide is that if a coolant mist is visible the operator should not hold his face near it or should use a mask. Conversely, if no mist is visible the air is generally considered safe to breathe even when the operator is working full-time at the machine.

Soluble oils contain high concentrations of detergents to enable the oil to form a stable dispersion in water. These detergents, like soap and household detergents, can extract fat from the skin and cause drying and cracking, thus encouraging dermatitis. Care should be taken to avoid long contact with soluble oils, in the same way as described earlier for mineral oils.

One final problem in machining is that fine swarf in the air, in the coolant, or in cleaning rags, can cause fine cuts in the skin and encourage infections and dermatitis. Contaminated hands should preferably be washed rather than wiped clean, using a good quality industrial hand cleaner; this should be supplied by means of a dispenser, not in open containers, to avoid contaminants entering the cleaner.

14.4.5 *Used oils*

There is some evidence that used oils, especially from hot applications such as engines and machining contain increased quantities of carcinogenic

PCAHs. They also contain aldehydes among the oxidation products and these can be toxic, although their concentrations are very low. Used gasoline engine oils also contain PCAHs from combustion products, and in some countries still contain lead from octane improvers, while used machining oils contain fine swarf particles. There is therefore some increase in risk with used oils, although there is no evidence that any harmful effects have occurred.

The increasing re-use of used lubricants causes concern about a possible build-up of PCAHs. Where simple laundering is carried out with industrial hydraulic fluids or gear oils, no problem should arise because such oils do not become very hot in use, and do not have increased PCAH content.

Laundering and topping-up of soluble oils with neat oil will lead to a build-up of some additives, and this is likely to be more of a problem than any increase in PCAHs. Re-use in this way is more common with large automatic machine-tools and integrated production lines, where contact of the operator with cutting oils is very much reduced. In large jobbing shops, where operators are in closer proximity to the machining operations, some guidance or restriction might eventually be desirable on the extent of re-use of cutting oils, but so far the extent of re-use is fairly small, and there is no indication of harmful effects.

The main processes used for re-refining of used lubricants will to some extent remove PCAHs. The solvent processes such as the liquid propane process will almost completely remove them, and the re-refined oil will be as safe as modern solvent-refined oils fresh from the refinery. The acid-clay process results in some removal of PCAHs, but not to the low levels of solvent-refined oils.

Most re-refined oils are used as engine lubricants or blended into fuel oils, so that the degree of human contact is small, but the usual precautions against prolonged contact and accidental swallowing should be taken, and should be completely effective.

14.4.6 *Greases*

Greases are used in smaller quantities than oils and are not easily spilled, so the health risks are much lower than with oils. They will stick more firmly to the skin, and many of them contain soaps, so that frequent contact with greases can cause dermatitis. The risk will arise mainly with those who regularly handle greases, either in filling grease-guns or grease reservoirs, or in packing bearings.

For filling grease-guns or reservoirs, spatulas or paddles should be used to handle the grease, and industrial rubber gloves can be worn to protect the hands. For packing bearings it is common practice to use the fingers, and the best way to avoid contact is to use the lightweight or 'surgical' rubber gloves used in chemical laboratories or in instrument assembly.

In conclusion, to keep the health hazards associated with lubricants in perspective, serious health hazards from lubricant handling are far less common than serious injuries from industrial accidents, and can be avoided completely with reasonable care and commonsense.

14.5 Environmental impact

Almost every aspect of lubricants and lubrication either influences or is influenced by modern environmental concerns, and in a very real sense those concerns relate directly to human health and safety.

Many of these influences have been mentioned in this book in relation to specific aspects of lubrication. Those which have been particularly highlighted are those which involve the greatest quantities of oil, such as conservation of crude oil, formulation and use of engine oils, and laundering and re-refining of used oil.

However, environmental constraints are being increasingly applied to other, and smaller-volume, uses of lubricants. Since many off-road vehicles such as farm tractors and earthmoving equipment have hydraulic systems, there is increasing concern about the environmental impact and biodegradability of hydraulic fluids. (ASTM has published two test methods, D-6006 *Guide for Assessing Biodegradability of Hydraulic Fluids* and D-6046 *Classification of Hydraulic Fluids for Environmental Impact.*)

Limitations on exhaust gases are already being extended from automotive engines to small marine craft, and are therefore influencing the development of lubricants for them. Discussions are also under way with a view to the application of similar restrictions to the very small engines, usually but not always two-strokes, which are used in such equipment as lawnmowers and chain-saws.

In historical terms these environmental concerns are very recent, but they have already brought great changes in automotive engine lubricants. It seems probable that in the next 20 years they will bring equally great changes in many other aspects of lubrication, as well as in many other aspects of human life.

Bibliography

Allinson, J. P., 1973, *Criteria for quality of petroleum p-roducts*, Applied Science Publishers, London, UK.

Annual Book of ASTM standards: Parts 23–25, *Petroleum Products and Lubricants*, American Society for Testing and Materials, Philadelphia, (published annually).

Brown, M., 1995, *Seals and sealing handbook*, Elsevier Science Publishers Ltd, UK.

Barwell, F. T., 1956, *Lubrication of bearings*, Butterworths, London, UK.

Boner, C. J., 1976, *Modern lubricating greases*, Scientific Publications (GB) Ltd, Broseley, Shropshire, UK.

Braithwaite, E. R. (editor), 1967, *Lubrication and lubricants*, Elsevier, London, UK.

Clauss, F. J., 1972, *Solid lubricants and self-lubricating solids*, Academic Press, New York, USA.

Fuller, D., 1984, *Theory and practice of lubrication for engineers*, Second Edition, John Wiley and Sons, New York, USA.

Gunderson, R. C. and **Hart, A. W.,** 1962, *Synthetic lubricants*, Reinbold, New York, USA.

Klamann, D., 1984, *Lubricants and related products*, Verlag Chemie GmbH, Germany.

Ku, P. M. (editor), 1973, *Interdisciplinary approach to liquid lubricant technology* NASA SP–318, National Aeronautics and Space Administration, Washington, DC, USA.

Lansdown, A. R., 1994, *High temperature lubrication*, Mechanical Engineering Publications Limited, London, UK.

Lansdown, A. R., 1999, *Molybdenum disulphide lubrication*, Elsevier, London, UK.

Mortier, R. M. and **Orssulik, S. T.,** (editors), 1992, *Chemistry and technology of lubricants*, Blackie and Son, Ltd, Glasgow and London, UK.

Neale, M. J. (editor), 1992, *The tribology handbook*, Second Edition, Butterworth Heinemann, London, UK.

Nica, A., 1969, *Theory and practice of lubrication systems*, Scientific Publications, Broseley, Shropshire, UK.

O'Connor, J. J., Boyd, J. and **Avallone, E. A.,** 1968, *Standard handbook of lubrication engineering*, McGraw-Hill, New York, USA.

Standard methods for analysis and testing of petroleum and related products, John Wiley and Sons (on behalf of the Institute of Petroleum, London), (published annually).

Summers-Smith, J. D., 1994, *An introductory guide to industrial tribology*, Mechanical Engineering Publications Limited, London, UK.

INDEX

Accidents 268
ACEA 223
  oil categories 223
Acetals 168
Acid number 231
Acidity 101
  tests for 213
Additives:
  anti-wear 39, 63
  depletion of 232
  extreme pressure 39, 40
Adhesion 2
Adsorption 10
Agricultural spray oils 67
Alkalinity, tests for 213
American Petroleum Institute 222
Analytical Ferrograph 242
Animal fats 78
Anti-foam additives 65, 74
Anti-oxidants 42, 74
Anti-scuffing compounds 151
Anti-seize compounds 127, 151
Anti-wear additives 39, 63, 74
Aromatic hydrocarbons 33
Asperities, contact between 5, 7, 9, 39
Asphaltenes 34
ASTM 222
Atomic absorption 237

Backwards compatibility 71
Ball bearings 26, 61
Barium 170, 171
Barrel rack storage 257
Base number 231
Base oil 59
  migration of 139
Bearings:
  plain 26, 90, 177
  porous metal 85
  rolling 178
Biocides 79, 107
Biodegradability 53, 75
Biomass fuels 73
Biphenyls, chlorinated 52, 272
Blotting-paper test 247
Boring 78
Boron nitride 165
Boundary additives, sulphurized 78
Boundary lubrication 5, 9, 39, 62
Brakes 179
Brines 80
Brushes, electrical 158, 161, 179
Burnishing 161
Burn-off chip detector 241

Calcium fluoride 165
Cancer 271
Capillary viscometer 216, 218
Castor oil 53
CCMC 223
Centipoise 55
Centistoke 35, 55
Centralized lubrication 83
Chains 27, 90
Chemical reaction 11
Chemical stability 31
Chemical tests 209
Chemisorption 11
Chevron packings 200
Chip detector 96, 241
  burn-off 241
Circulation 97
Cleaning 116
Clock pivots 27
Clutches 179
Coal, oils from 102
Coal-mining 148
Compatibility 31, 46, 140
Composites 153, 163, 170, 171
Compounded oil 40
Compounds:
  anti-scuffing 151
  anti-seize 151, 170, 171
Compression packings 193, 195
Compressors 66
Condition monitoring, 229
Conductivity:
  electrical 158, 161
  thermal 32, 164, 167
Consistency 216
Contact between asperities 39
Contaminants 83
  solid 105
  test for 216

Contamination 43, 99, 105, 140, 142, 233
  fuel 233
    microbiological 106
Contamination, water 106, 235
Coolants 77, 79
Coolers 94
Cooling 14, 83
Copper 170
Corrosion 14, 31, 46
  inhibitors 47, 74
Corrosive wear 15
Crankshafts 90
Cryogenic liquids 79

Data:
  identification 258
  sheet 218
Debris Tester 245
Deformation 2
  friction 3
Delivery 253
Density 217
Dermatitis 271
Design 17, 19173
Detergents 74
Deterioration 253
Deva metal 172
Dialkyldithio phosphates 74
Diamond-like carbon 173
Dichalcogenides 161
Diesel engines 66
  marine 75
Dieselling 265, 268
Di-esters 49, 50, 67
Differential, limited slip 65
Dimethyl silicones 65
Direct-read Ferrograph 242
Disk 97
  lubrication 89–91
Dispensing 258
Dispersants 74
Dispersions:
  graphite 159
  molybdenum disulphide 161
Draining 114
Drilling 78
Drip feed 84, 97
Drop point 136
Dry bearings 153
Dry friction 2
Duplex Ferrograph 242
Duroid 173

Dynamic viscosity 55

Electrical conductivity 158
Electrode, rotating disc 237
Emission spectrograph 237
Emulsions 47, 53, 120
  disposing of 119
Engine oils 70
  specifications 221
Engine tests 221
Engler viscosity 56
Environmental impact 276
Environmental pollution 72
Epoxy resins 170
Esters:
  phosphate 51, 70
  polyol 49, 50, 51, 67
  polyphenyl 67
Ethers:
  fluorinated 52
  polyphenyl 52
Evaporation 104
Exhaust gas recirculation 73, 74
Explosions 264
Extreme-pressure (EP) additives 64
Extrusion 78

Failures 249
Ferrogram 243
Ferrograph:
  Analytical 242
  Direct-read 242
  Duplex 242
Ferrography 242
Fillers, reinforcing 166
Films:
  bonded 161
  thickness 39, 176
Filters 94
Filtration 105
Fire resistance 70, 264, 265, 266
Fire-resistant oil 112
Flammability 32, 212, 264
  tests 212
Flash point 212, 265
  tests 212, 213
Flinger rings 198
Fluids, hydraulic 63
Fluorocarbons 52
Flushing 111, 114
  oil 114
Foaming 27

Food industry 148
Four-ball machine 208
Friction 1, 2
  adhesive 3
  coefficient of 2
  deformation 3
  dry 2
  dynamic 2
  high-hysteresis 3
  modifiers 65
  static 2
  viscous 4
FTIR 215
Fuel:
  biomass 73
  contamination 233
  injection 73
  oils 67
Furnaces 67

Gas:
  bearings 181
  viscosity of 183
Gasification, of used oil 124
Gearbox, manual 76
Gears 26, 178
  grease lubrication of 146
  helical 90
  hypoid 26, 66
  open 27
  spiral bevel 26, 65, 66
  spur 66, 90
  viscosity selection for 63
  worm 26, 90
Gel 127
Glacier DU 172
Glass:
  liquefied 54, 78
Gold 170, 171
Graphite 157
  dispersions 159
  fluoride 165
Greases 127
  advantages of 141
  applying 150
  aviation 149
  consistency of 133
  disadvantages of 142
  fire-resistant 148
  flow 134
  gun 144, 150, 259
  high temperatures 148
  incompatibility 140
    low temperatures 147
  lubrication of gears 146
  monitoring 249
  multi-purpose 143
  open gears 146
  oxidation of 137
  plain bearings 145
  rolling bearings 143
  selection of 143
Greenhouse gases 72
Grinding 78
Growth, microbiological 45

Health 263, 269
Heat flux recommendations for oil heaters 95
Heat, specific 32
Heaters 94
Helium 184
Hexagonal structure 157, 160
HFAE fluids 70
HFB fluids 70
HFC fluids 70
HFDR fluids 70
Hinges 28
Hoppe An-Oil-Iser 248
Hydraulic fluids 63
Hydrocarbon:
  types of 33
  synthetic 49, 67
Hydrodynamic friction 5
Hydrodynamic lubrication 6
Hydrogen 73
Hypoid gears 26, 65

ICP spectrometer 237
Ignition, spontaneous 266
Infra-red spectroscopy 215, 231
Instrument pivots 27
Intercalation 158
Invert emulsions 70, 112
ISO viscosity classification 81

Journal bearings, plain 61

Kinematic viscosity 35, 55

Labelling 258
Laboratory tests 205
  rigs 206
Latches 28
Laundering 121
Layer-lattice structure 155

Lead 170, 171
  monoxide 165
Legislation 263
Lip seals 193
Load limits for different lubrication classes 24
Locks 28
Lubricant:
  additives, solid 65
  applications of solid 177
  composition test 214
  handling 253
  metalworking 77
  monitoring 229
  rationalization 80
  selection 18
  solid 13, 153
  storage 254
  synthetic 68
  test machines 207
  theory of friction of solid 179
  transmission 76
Lubricating metals 171
Lubricating oil 31
Lubrication:
  boundary 5, 9, 39
  centralized 83
  classes, speed and load limits for 24
  disc 89–91
  dry 13
  elastohydrodynamic 8
  externally pressurized 12
  hydrodynamic 5, 6
  liquid 4
  mixed 5
  of plain journal bearing 4
  oil mist 92
  principles of 1
  ring 89–91
  splash 89

Machine tool slideways 66
Machines, complex 28
Magnetic plugs 236, 240
Mechanical seals 193
Melts 80
Metal rolling 78
Metalcutting 78
  lubricants 78
Metals, lubricating 170
Microbiological attack 79
Microbiological contamination 106
Migration of base oil 139
Milling 78
Mineral oil 32
  composition 34
  oxidation of 42
Mobil Flo-Stick 247
Molybdenite 160
Molybdenum disulphide 160
Molybdic oxide 164
Molybdenum trioxide 165
Monitoring 229
  condition 229
  lubricant 229

Naphthenes 33
Naphthenic oils 66, 67
Niobium diselenide 161
Nitrogen 184
NLGI number 134
Nylons 167

Oil:
  agricultural spray 67
  analysis (spectrometric) 236
  can 84, 97
  castor 53
  change 113
    period 107
  changing 96, 99
  circulation 93
    systems 94
  cleaner, centrifugal 122
  compounded 40
  condition monitoring 96
  conservation 101
  deterioration 41, 99
  feed systems, advantages and disadvantages 97
  film thickness 4, 6
  fire-resistant 112
  fog 97
  from coal 101
  fuel 67
  heaters, heat flux recommendations for 95
  -in-water emulsions 70
  lubricating 31
  mist 97
    lubrication 92
    systems 91
  monitoring 107
  naphthenic 34, 36, 66, 67
  natural 47, 52

paraffinic 34, 36, 67
properties of 31
rapeseed 52
refrigerator 66
reservoir 93
rubber extender 67
seal 193
selection of 59
soluble 78
supply rate 88
supply systems 83
sperm 103
synthetic 47
vegetable 102
viscosity 59
waste 117
water-contaminated 119
Open gears 146
O-rings 193
Outboard motors 76
Ovens 67
Overheating 231
Oxidation 4, 104, 231
of a mineral oil 42
resistance 67, 104
tests 210, 211
Oxygen, liquid 266

Packaging 253
Paraffinic oil 34, 36, 67
Paraffins 33
Particle Quantifier 246
PEEK 169
Penetration 134, 217
Pentane insolubles 231
Perfluoropolyethers 67, 70
Petrol (spark-ignition) engines 66
Phenolic resins 170
Physical tests 209
Piston rings 200
Plain bearings 177
grease 145
viscosity selection for 61
Plain journal bearing, lubrication of 4
Pollution 24
environmental 72
Polyalphaolefines 67
Polyetheretherketones 169
Polyethylene 170
Polyglycols 52, 67
Polyimide 169
Polyol esters 67
Polyphenyl ethers 67
Polyphenylene sulphide 170
Polysulphones 170
Polytetrafluoroethylene 165
Porous metal bearings 85
Pour point 38, 217
depressants 74
Pressure wedge 6, 7
Pretreatments 163
Principles of lubrication 1
Process fluids 79
Properties of oils 31
PTFCE 167
PTFE 165
Pump 94
PV factor 155, 164, 166, 167, 169
PVF2 167

QDM 242

Rapeseed oil 52
Rationalization 80, 112
Raw materials 79
Redwood viscosity 56
Reference temperatures 61
Refilling 116
Refining 125
Refrigerants 79
Refrigerator oils 66
Re-greasing 145
Rehbinder effect 11
Reinforcement 166, 168
Repeatibility 226
Replenishment 177
Re-processing 123
Reproducibility 227
Reynolds equation 7
Ring lubrication 89–91, 97
Roller bearings 26, 61
greases 143
viscosity selection for 62
Rolling emulsions 78
Ropes, wire 27
Rotary Particle Depositor 243
Rotating disc electrode 237
Rotrode 237
RPD 243
Rubber extender oils 67
Rust inhibitors 47

SAE 222
viscosity grades 56, 224
Safety 263

Saybolt viscosity 56
Sealing 189
Seals:
  bearing 195
  floating bush 197
  materials 200
  mechanical 193, 195
  oil 193
  rotary 193
  semi-static 191
  static 189
Selection 18
  of a grease 143
  of solid lubricants 173
Semi-synthetics 78
Service trials 204
Shear: 104
  breakdown 104
  rate 37, 38, 135
Sight glasses 89, 94
Silicones 51, 67
Silver 170, 171
SOAP 236
Sodium sulphonates 79
Solid contaminants 105
Solid lubricants 153
  additives 65
  application 176, 177
  theory of friction of 179
  wear life of 175
Soluble oils 78
Space 179
Spacecraft 161, 170, 171, 191
Specific gravity 217
Specific heat 32
Specific wear rate 175
Specification 218
  requirements 219
Spectrometric oil analysis 233
Spectroscopy, infra-red 215
Speed limits for different lubrication
    classes 24
Sperm oil 103
Spiral bevel gears 26, 65
Splash lubrication 89, 97
Spray ignition 265, 267
Sputtering 161
Squeeze film 7
Stability:
  chemical 31
  thermal 31, 211, 212
Standardization 220
Standards 220
Starting, cold 60
Steam turbines 27, 66
Storage 253
  lubricant 255
  tanks 257
Strainers 94
Stribeck curve 5
Structure, hexagonal 157, 160
Surface finish 8, 163
Surface roughnesses 8, 39
Syncromesh 76
Synthetic hydrocarbons 67
Synthetic oils 47
Syrups 80

Temperature:
  critical 183
  high 67, 183
  reference 61
  variation of viscosity with 64
Test:
  chemical 209
  functional 204
  oxidation 210, 211
  physical 209
  precision 227Testing 203
Theory of friction of solid lubricants 180
Thermal conductivity 127, 164, 167
Thermal deterioration 211
Thermal stability 31, 43, 211, 212
Thickeners 127
Thrust bearings, tilting-pad 61
Torque tests, low-temperature 217
Total loss systems:
  centralized 86, 97
  oil feed systems 84
Toxicity 32, 269
Training 260
Transmissions:
  automated manual 76
  automatic 40, 66, 76
  continuously variable 76
  dual-clutch 77
  fluids, automatic 65
Treatment liquors 80
Triple point 183
Tube drawing 78
Tungsten diselenide 161
Tungsten disulphide 161
Turning 78
Two-stroke engines 76

Type approval tests 226

U-rings 199

Vacuum 148, 164, 170, 171
  high 161
Variation of viscosity with temperature 64
Vegetable oils 102
VI improver 37, 38, 74
Viscosity Classification for Industrial Liquid Lubricants 81
Viscosity 35, 216
  choice of 61
  dynamic 55
  Engler 56
  grades, SAE 56
  index 35, 74
    improvers 37
  kinematic 35, 55
  of a gas 183
  oil 59
  selection:
    for gears 63
    for plain bearings 61
    for rolling bearings 62
    units 55
  Redwood 56
  Saybolt 56

Waste oil 117
Water:
  -contaminated oils 119
  contamination 106, 235
  -polyglycol fluids 70
  separators 96
Waxes, chlorinated 78
Wear 13
  abrasive 13
  adhesive 13
  -life of solid lubricants 175
  mild 39
  monitoring 236
  rate, specific 175
Wick 97
  ignition 265, 267
  lubrication 85
Wire drawing 78
Wire ropes 27
Worm gears 26, 40, 90

Zapper 241